PETITION FOR EXTENSION OF TIME UNDER 37 CFR 1.136(a) (Small Entity)	Docket No. 99843-00011

In Re Application Of: **Fernando J. Muzzio, Lev Tsygan and Semen Dukler**

Application No.	Filing Date	Examiner	Customer No.	Group Art Unit	Confirmation No.
11/267,039	11/04/2005	Miller, Bena B.	27614	3725	8145

Invention: **Uniform Shear Application System and Methods Relating Thereto**

COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS:

This is a request under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a) to extend the period for filing a response to the Office Action of 09/09/2008 (*Date*) in the above-identified application.

The requested extension is as follows (check time period desired):

☐ One month ☐ Two months ☒ Three months ☐ Four months ☐ Five months

from: 12/09/2008 (*Date*) until: 03/09/2009 (*Date*)

☒ Applicant claims small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27

The fee for the extension of time is **$555** and is to be paid as follows:

☐ A check in the amount of the fee is enclosed.

☒ The Director is hereby authorized to charge any fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. **503571**

☒ If an additional extension of time is required, please consider this a petition therefor and charge any additional fees which may be required to Deposit Account No. **503571**

☐ Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

WARNING: Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.

Signature

Dated: 3/9/09

Michael R. Friscia
Registration No. 33,884
McCarter & English, LLP
Four Gateway Center
100 Mulberry Street
Newark, NJ 07102
Tel: (973) 639-8493
Fax: (973) 297-6627

cc:

I certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to the "Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450" [37 CFR 1.8(a)] on

(Date)

Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence

Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Correspondence

P12SMALL/REV09

TRANSMITTAL OF INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT (Under 37 CFR 1.97(b) or 1.97(c))					Docket No. **99879-00026**
In Re Application Of: **Ira Marlowe**					
Application No. **11/475,847**	Filing Date **06/27/2006**	Examiner **Kurr, Jason R.**	Customer No. **27614**	Group Art Unit **2614**	Confirmation No. **9001**
Title: **Multimedia Device Integration System**					

Address to:

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

37 CFR 1.97(b)

1. ☒ The Information Disclosure Statement submitted herewith is being filed within three months of the filing of a national application other than a continued prosecution application under 37 CFR 1.53(d); within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in 37 CFR 1.491 in an international application; before the mailing of a first Office Action on the merits, or before the mailing of a first Office Action after the filing of a request for continued examination under 37 CFR 1.114.

37 CFR 1.97(c)

2. ☐ The Information Disclosure Statement submitted herewith is being filed after the period specified in 37 CFR 1.97(b), provided that the Information Disclosure Statement is filed before the mailing date of a Final Action under 37 CFR 1.113, a Notice of Allowance under 37 CFR 1.311, or an Action that otherwise closes prosecution in the application, and is accompanied by one of:

   ☐ the statement specified in 37 CFR 1.97(e);

   OR

   ☐ the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(p).

P10A/REV06

TRANSMITTAL OF INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT (Under 37 CFR 1.97(b) or 1.97(c))	Docket No. 99879-00026

In Re Application of: **Ira Marlowe**

Application No.	Filing Date	Examiner	Customer No.	Group Art Unit	Confirmation No.
11/475,847	06/27/2006	Kurr, Jason R.	27614	2614	9001

Title: **Multimedia Device Integration System**

Payment of Fee

(Only complete if Applicant elects to pay the fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(p))

☐ A check in the amount of is attached.

☒ The Director is hereby authorized to charge and credit Deposit Account No. 503571 as described below.

- ☐ Charge the amount of
- ☒ Credit any overpayment.
- ☒ Charge any additional fee required.

☐ Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

WARNING: Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.

Certificate of Transmission by Facsimile*

I certify that this document and authorization to charge deposit account is being facsimile transmitted to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (Fa

(Date)

Signature

Typed or Printed Name of Person Signing Certificate

Certificate of Mailing by First Class Mail

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail in an envelope addressed to "Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450" [37 CFR 1.8(a)] on

(Date)

Signature of Person Mailing Correspondence

Typed or Printed Name of Person Mailing Certificate

***This certificate may only be used if paying by deposit account.**

Mark Ellis

Signature

Dated: 3/9/2009

Mark E. Nikolsky
Registration No. 48,319
McCarter & English, LLP
Four Gateway Center
100 Mulberry Street
Newark, NJ 07102
Tel: (973) 639-6987
Fax: (973) 297-6624

cc:

P10A/REV06

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 1 of 7

Complete if Known	
Application Number	11/475,847
Filing Date	06/27/2006
First Named Inventor	Ira Marlowe
Art Unit	2614
Examiner Name	Kurr, Jason R.
Attorney Docket Number	99879-00026

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Document Number Number-Kind Code[2] *(if known)*	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	1	US-6,608,399	08/19/2003	McConnell, et al.	
	2	US-6,629,197	09/30/2003	Bhogal, et al.	
	3	US-6,529,804	03/04/2003	Draggon, et al.	
	4	US-6,175,789	01/16/2001	Beckert, et al.	
	5	US-2007/0293183	12/20/2007	Marlowe	
	6	US-2004/0145457	07/29/2004	Schofield, et al.	
	7	US-2004/0266336	12/30/2004	Patsiokas, et al.	
	8	US-2003/0026440	02/03/2003	Lazzeroni, et al.	
	9	US-2002/0084910	07/04/2002	Owens, et al.	
	10	US-7,489,786	02/10/2009	Marlowe	
	11	US-7,288,918	10/30/2007	DiStefano	
	12	US-6,622,083	09/16/2003	Knockeart, et al.	
	13	US-6,389,560	05/14/2002	Chew	
	14	US-5,859,628	01/12/1999	Ross, et al.	
	15	US-5,808,373	09/15/1998	Hamanishi, et al.	
	16	US-2008/0125031 A1	05/29/2008	Fadell, et al.	
	17	US-2008/0123285 A1	05/29/2008	Fadell, et al.	
	18	US-2005/0172001 A1	08/04/2005	Zaner, et al.	
	19	US-2003/0156200 A1	08/21/2003	Romano, et al.	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Foreign Patent Document Country Code[3] -Number[4] -Kind Code[5] *(if known)*	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T[6]
	20	WO 2008/002954	01/03/2008	Ira Marlowe		
	21	WO 2006/094281	09/08/2006	Ira Marlowe		
	22	WO 2004/053722	06/24/2004	BlitzSafe of America, Inc		
	23	KR 1020010035788 English Abstract	05/07/2001	Gyu Jin Park		
	24	KR 1020010059192 English Abstract	07/06/2001	Hyundai Motor Company		
	25	JP 2000-286874 with English translation	10/13/2000	Suzuki Motor Corp.		

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. [1] Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). [2] See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. [3] Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). [4] For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. [5] Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. [6] Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 2 of 7

Complete if Known	
Application Number	11/475,847
Filing Date	06/27/2006
First Named Inventor	Ira M. Marlowe
Art Unit	2614
Examiner Name	Kurr, Jason R.
Attorney Docket Number	99879-00026

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Document Number Number-Kind Code[2] (if known)	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear
	26	US- 6,539,358	03/25/2003	Coon, et al.	
	27	US- 5,897,155	04/27/1999	Kerner, et al.	
	28	US- 6,397,086	05/28/2002	Chen	
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			
		US-			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Foreign Patent Document Country Code[3]-Number[4]-Kind Code[5] (if known)	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	T[6]
	29	JP 11-273321 with English Translation	10/08/1999	Clarion Co. Ltd.		

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant. [1] Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). [2] See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at www.uspto.gov or MPEP 901.04. [3] Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). [4] For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. [5] Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. [6] Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

PTO/SB/08B (10-07)
Approved for use through 10/31/2007. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 3 of 7

Complete if Known	
Application Number	11/475,847
Filing Date	06/27/2006
First Named Inventor	Ira Marlowe
Art Unit	2614
Examiner Name	Kurr, Jason R.
Attorney Docket Number	99879-00026

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T[2]
	30	Gilroy, Amy, "Blitz Safe Bows New SkyLink," This Week in Consumer Electronics (TWICE), November 24, 2003 (1 page)	
	31	Gilroy, Amy, "XM Exceeds Forecasts," This Week in Consumer Electronics (TWICE), November 24, 2003 (2 pages)	
	32	"BlitzSafe News," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news031124/body_news031124.html, November 24, 2003 (1 page)	
	33	"XM Satellite Radio Introduces XM Direct," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news031117/body_news031117.html, November 17, 2003 (3 pages)	
	34	"Digital Audio Radio," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news052003a/body_news052003a.html, 2003 (4 pages)	
	35	"BlitzSafe Winner of 2003 Autosound Grand Prix Accessories Supplier of the Year," Audiovideo Magazine, March 3, 2003 (1 page)	
	36	"BlitzSafe Releases World's First XM Satellite Radio, Auxiliary and CD Interfaces for Landrover Freelander 2003," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news092002b/body_news09002b.html, September 16, 2002 (1 page)	
	37	"BlitzSafe Releases World's First XM Satellite Radio, Auxiliary and CD Interfaces for Lexus," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news092002a/body_news09002a.html, September 14, 2002 (1 page)	
	38	Pohlmann, et al. "Satellite Radio A to Z," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news072002a/body_news072002a.html, 2002 (7 pages)	
	39	"BlitzSafe Launches XM and Six Interfaces for the 'Mini Cooper'," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news062002a/body_news062002a.html, June 25, 2002 (1 page)	

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.
1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.
This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 2 hours to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 (1-800-786-9199) and select option 2.

PTO/SB/08B (10-07)
Approved for use through 10/31/2007. OMB 0651-0031
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO	Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT	**Application Number**	11/475,847
	Filing Date	06/27/2006
	First Named Inventor	Ira Marlowe
	Art Unit	2614
(Use as many sheets as necessary)	Examiner Name	Kurr, Jason R.
Sheet 4 of 7	Attorney Docket Number	99879-00026

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T^2
	40	"Digital Connect," Mobile Electronics, May, 2002 (1 page)	
	41	Solomon, Brett, "Selling 12V: OEM Integration," Dealerscope, May, 2002 (1 page)	
	42	"XM Xtra:," Mobile Entertainment, April/May, 2002 (1 page)	
	43	"Blitzsafe Introduces New Line of XM Digital Connect Cables," The 12 Volt News, February 20, 2002 (2 pages)	
	44	"XM Radio Losses Mount As Do Subscribers," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news012002d/body_news012002d.html, January 24, 2002 (3 pages)	
	45	"Blitzsafe Expects 3 Mil. XM Subscribers Within Three Years," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/news012002c/body_news012002c.html., January, 2002 (1 page)	
	46	"XM Signs Over 30,000 Subscribers in First 8 Weeks," XM Radio, January 7, 2002 (4 pages)	
	47	"BlitzSafe Unveils the First DVD Interface," Automedia, February, 1999 (1 page)	
	48	"MBALP V.2A2 CD Changer Converter Mercedes Benz Model for 1997 and 1996," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/pr02111996/body_pr02111996.html, June 11, 1996 (1 page)	
	49	"CD Changer Converter - Porsche Model Year 1996," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/pr02071996/body_pr02071996.html, February 7, 1996 (1 page)	

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.
1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.
This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 2 hours to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 (1-800-786-9199) and select option 2.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 5 of 7

Complete if Known	
Application Number	11/475,847
Filing Date	06/27/2006
First Named Inventor	Ira Marlowe
Art Unit	2614
Examiner Name	Kurr, Jason R.
Attorney Docket Number	99879-00026

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T[2]
	50	"CD Changer Converter - Mercedes Benz 1996 MY," http://www.blitzsafe.com/blitz_news/pr08231995/body_pr08231995.html, August 23, 1995 (1 page)	
	51	Copy of Office Action dated June 5, 2006, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/316,961 (40 pages)	
	52	Copy of Office Action dated November 14, 2006, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/316,961 (51 pages)	
	53	Copy of Office Action dated April 19, 2007, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/316,961 (69 pages)	
	54	Copy of Office Action dated July 12, 2007, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/316,961 (71 pages)	
	55	Copy of Office Action dated February 20, 2008, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/316,961 (52 pages)	
	56	Copy of Interview Summary dated April 9, 2008, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/316,961 (4 pages)	
	57	Copy of Interview Summary dated April 21, 2008, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/316,961 (4 pages)	
	58	Copy of Office Action dated August 8, 2006, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/732,909 (29 pages)	
	59	Copy of Interview Summary dated December 15, 2006, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/732,909 (3 pages)	

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

(Use as many sheets as necessary)

Sheet 6 of 7

Complete if Known	
Application Number	11/475,847
Filing Date	06/27/2006
First Named Inventor	Ira Marlowe
Art Unit	2614
Examiner Name	Kurr, Jason R.
Attorney Docket Number	99879-00026

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T[2]
	60	Copy of Interview Summary dated January 3, 2007, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/732,909 (3 pages)	
	61	Copy of Office Action dated April 20, 2007, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/732,909 (20 pages)	
	62	Copy of Office Action dated October 3, 2007, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/732,909 (28 pages)	
	63	Copy of Interview Summary dated October 26, 2007, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/732,909 (3 pages)	
	64	International Search Report of the International Searching Authority mailed May 12, 2004, issued in connection with International Patent Appln. No. PCT/US03/39493 (4 pages)	
	65	International Search Report of the International Searching Authority mailed Sept. 24, 2007, issued in connection with International Patent Appln. No. PCT/US06/008043 (4 pages)	
	66	Written Opinion of the International Searching Authority mailed Sept. 24, 2007, issued in connection with International Patent Appln. No. PCT/US06/008043 (5 pages)	
	67	International Preliminary Report on Patentability issued Oct. 16, 2007, issued in connection with International Patent Appln. No. PCT/US06/008043 (1 page)	
	68	Russian Official Action with translation, issued by the Patent Office of the Russian Federation on Dec. 24, 2007, in connection with Russian App. No. 2006101060 (21 pages)	
	69	Written Opinion, mailed by the Australian Patent Office on Aug. 28, 2007, in connection with Singapore App. No. 200601303-1 (6 pages)	

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Substitute for form 1449/PTO			Complete if Known	
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT			**Application Number**	11/475,847
			Filing Date	06/27/2006
			First Named Inventor	Ira Marlowe
(Use as many sheets as necessary)			Art Unit	2614
			Examiner Name	Kurr, Jason R.
Sheet	7	of 7	Attorney Docket Number	99879-00026

NON PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

Examiner Initials*	Cite No.[1]	Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published.	T[2]
	70	International Search Report of the International Searching Authority mailed September 25, 2008, issued in connection with International Patent Appln. No. PCT/US07/72182 (3 pages)	
	71	Written Opinion of the International Searching Authority mailed September 25, 2008, issued in connection with International Patent Appln. No. PCT/US07/72182 (7 pages)	
	72	Copy of Office Action dated July 9, 2008, from co-pending Application Serial No.: 10/732,909 (33 pages)	
	73	Notice of Allowance mailed July 31, 2008, issued in connection with co-pending Application Serial No. 10/316,961 (12 pages)	
	74	Notice of Allowance mailed December 29, 2008, issued in connection with co-pending Application Serial No. 10/316,961 (8 pages)	
	75	Copy of Office Action dated February 24, 2009, from co-pending Application Serial No. 10/732,909 (20 pages)	

Examiner Signature		Date Considered	

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.
1 Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 2 Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau

(43) International Publication Date
3 January 2008 (03.01.2008)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2008/002954 A2

(51) International Patent Classification:
H05K 11/02 (2006.01) *H04B 1/06* (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US2007/072182

(22) International Filing Date: 27 June 2007 (27.06.2007)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
11/475,847 27 June 2006 (27.06.2006) US
11/805,799 24 May 2007 (24.05.2007) US

(71) Applicant and
(72) Inventor: MARLOWE, Ira [US/US]; 6403 Hilltop Court, Fort Lee, NJ 07102 (US).

(74) Agent: FRISCIA, Michael, R.; Mccarter & English, LLP, Four Gateway Center, 100 Mulberry Street, Newark, NJ 07102 (US).

(81) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available)*: AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SV, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available)*: ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MT, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:
— *without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report*

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

WO 2008/002954 A2

(54) Title: MULTIMEDIA DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM

(57) Abstract: A multimedia device integration system is provided. One or more after-market audio or video devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, digital media device, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, video device, digital camera, cellular telephone, portable navigation device, or any other device or combinations thereof, is integrated for use with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo or video system, wherein control commands can be issued at the car stereo or video system and data from the after-market device can be displayed on the car stereo or video system. Instructions generated at the car stereo or video system are received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the after- market device, and dispatched to the after-market device for execution. Information from the after-market device is converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo or video system, and dispatched to the car stereo or video system for display thereon. The integration subsystem could be provided as an integrated circuit that can be installed in a car audiovisual system or a portable audiovisual device. A wireless or inductive battery charging circuit could be provided for wirelessly or inductively charging a battery of a portable after-market device.

MULTIMEDIA DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM

SPECIFICATION

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. More specifically, the present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system for integrating after-market components such as satellite receivers, CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (*e.g.*, MP3 players, MP4 players, WMV players, Apple iPod devices, portable media centers, and other devices), Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receivers, auxiliary audio sources, video devices (*e.g.*, DVD players), cellular telephones, and other devices for use with factory-installed (OEM) or after-market car stereo and video systems.

RELATED ART

Automobile audio systems have continued to advance in complexity and the number of options available to automobile purchasers. Early audio systems offered a simple AM and/or FM tuner, and perhaps an analog tape deck for allowing cassettes, 8-tracks, and other types of tapes to be played while driving. Such early systems were closed, in that external devices could not be easily integrated therewith.

With advances in digital technology, CD players have been included with automobile audio systems. Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs) often produce car stereos having CD players and/or changers for allowing CDs to be played while driving. However, such systems often include proprietary buses and protocols that do not allow after-market audio systems, such as satellite receivers (e.g., XM satellite tuners), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receivers, digital media players (*e.g.*, Apple iPod, MP3, MP4, WMV, etc.), CD changers, auxiliary input sources, video devices (*e.g.*, DVD players), cellular telephones, and the like, to be easily integrated therewith. Thus, automobile purchasers are frequently forced to either entirely replace the OEM audio system, or use same throughout the life of the vehicle or the duration of ownership. Even if the OEM radio is replaced with an after-market radio, the after-market radio also frequently is not operable with an external device.

A particular problem with integrating after-market audio and video systems with existing car stereo and video systems is that signals generated by both systems are in proprietary formats, and are not capable of being processed by the after-market system. Additionally, signals generated by the after-market system are also in a proprietary format that is not recognizable by the car stereo or video system. Thus, in order to integrate after-market systems with existing car stereo and video systems, it is necessary to convert signals between such systems.

It known in the art to provide one or more expansion modules for OEM and after-market car stereos for allowing external audio products to be integrated with the car stereo. However, such expansion modules only operate with and allow integration of external audio products manufactured by the same manufacturer as the OEM / after-market car stereo. For example, a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc., cannot be integrated with an OEM car radio manufactured by TOYOTA or an after-market car radio manufactured by CLARION, Inc. Thus, existing expansion modules only serve the limited purpose of integrating equipment by the same manufacturer as the car stereo. Thus, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that allows any audio device of any manufacture to be integrated with any OEM or after-market radio system. Further, radio-frequency (RF) transmitters and cassette tape adapters have been developed for allowing music from a device external to a car radio, such as a portable CD player, to be played through the car radio using the FM receiver or the cassette deck of the radio. However, such systems are often prone to interference, and do not provide high fidelity.

Moreover, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that not only achieves integration of various audio and video devices that are alien to a given OEM or after-market car stereo or video system, but also allows for information to be exchanged between the after-market device and the car stereo or video system. For example, it would be desirable to provide a system wherein station, track, time, and song information can be retrieved from the after-market device, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo or video system for display thereby, such as at an LCD panel of the car stereo or on one or more display panels of a car video system. Such information could be transmitted and displayed on both hardwired car stereo and video systems (*e.g.*, radios installed in dashboards or at other locations within the car), or integrated for display on one or more software or graphically-driven radio systems operable with graphical display panels.

Additionally, it would be desirable to provide a multimedia device integration system that allows a user to control more than one device, such as a CD or satellite receiver and one or more auxiliary sources, and to quickly and conveniently switch between same using the existing controls of the car stereo or video system. Still further, it would be desirable to provide a multimedia device integration system that allows for wireless integration of portable devices for use with car audio and/or video systems, wherein full remote control of the portable device is provided at the controls of the car system.

Accordingly, the present invention addresses these needs by providing a multimedia device integration system that allows a plurality of after-market devices, such as CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (*e.g.*, MP3 players, MP4 players, Apple iPod, WMV players, portable media centers, and other devices), satellite receivers, DAB receivers, auxiliary input sources, video devices (*e.g.*, DVD players), cellular telephones, digital cameras, portable navigation devices, or any combination thereof, to be integrated into existing car stereo and video systems while allowing information to be displayed on, and control to be provided from, the car stereo or video system.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. One or more after-market audio devices, such as CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (*e.g.*, MP3 players, MP4 players, WMV players, Apple iPod devices, portable media centers), digital cameras, satellite receivers (*e.g.*, XM or Sirius receivers), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receivers, portable navigation devices, or auxiliary input sources, can be connected to and operate with an existing stereo system in an automobile, such as an OEM car stereo system or an after-market car stereo system installed in the automobile. The integration system connects to and interacts with the car stereo at any available port of the car stereo, such as a CD input port, a satellite input, or other known type of connection. If the car stereo system is an after-market car stereo system, the present invention generates a signal that is sent to the car stereo to keep same in an operational state and responsive to external data and signals. Commands generated at the control panel are received by the present invention and converted into a format recognizable by the after-market device. The formatted commands are executed by the after-market device, and audio therefrom is channeled to the car stereo. Information from the after-market device is received by the present invention, converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo, and forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby. The formatted information could include information relating to a CD or MP3 track being played, channel, song, and artist information from a satellite receiver or DAB receiver, or video information from one or more external devices connected to the present invention. The information can be presented as one or more menus, textual, or graphical prompts for display on an LCD display of the radio, allowing interaction with the user at the radio. A docking port may be provided for allowing portable external audio devices to be connected to the interface of the present invention.

In an embodiment of the present invention, a dual-input device is provided for integrating both an external audio device and an auxiliary input with an OEM or after-market car stereo. The user can select between the external audio device and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. The invention can automatically detect the type of device connected to the auxiliary input, and integrate same with the car stereo.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with an existing car stereo system. A user can select between the auxiliary sources using the control panel of the car stereo. One or more after-market audio devices can be integrated with the auxiliary input sources, and a user can switch between the audio device and the auxiliary input sources using the car stereo. Devices connected to the auxiliary input sources are inter-operable with the car stereo, and are capable of exchanging commands and data via the interface.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating an external device for use with a car stereo or video system, wherein the interface is positioned within the car stereo or video system. The system comprises a car stereo or video system; an after-market device external to the car stereo or video system; an interface positioned within the car stereo or video system and connected between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device for exchanging data and audio or video signals between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market device from the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the after-market device; and means for processing and displaying data from the after-market device on a display of the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the car stereo or video system. The after-market device could comprise one or more of a CD changer, CD player, satellite receiver (*e.g.*, XM or Sirius), digital media device (*e.g.*, MP3, MP4, WMV, or Apple iPod device), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or any combination thereof.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system. The system comprises a car stereo or video system; a cellular telephone external to the car stereo or video system; an interface connected between the car stereo or video system and the cellular telephone for exchanging data and audio or video signals between the car stereo or video system and the cellular telephone; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the cellular telephone from the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the cellular telephone; and means for processing and displaying data from the cellular telephone on a display of the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the car stereo or video system.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating an external video system for use with a car video system. The system comprises a car video system; an after-market video device external to the car video system; an interface connected between the car video system and the after-market video device for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car video system and the after-market video device; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market video device from the car video system in a format compatible with the after-market video device; and means for processing and displaying data from the after-market video device on a display of the car video system in a format compatible with the car video system.

The present invention also provides an interface for integrating a plurality of after-market devices for use with a car stereo or video system using a single interface. In one embodiment, the system comprises an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo or video system and an after-market device; a plurality of configuration jumpers in the interface for specifying a first device type corresponding to the car stereo or video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; and a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo or video system and for converting signals from the car stereo or video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using settings of the plurality of configuration jumpers. In another embodiment, the system comprises an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo or video system and an after-market device; first and second wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the first wiring harness includes a first electrical configuration corresponding to the car stereo or video system and the second wiring harness includes a second electrical configuration corresponding to the after-market device; and a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo or video system and for converting signals from the car stereo or video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using the first and second electrical configurations of the first and second wiring harnesses. A plurality of wiring harnesses can be provided for integrating a plurality of devices.

The present invention also provides a method for integrating an after-market device for use with a car stereo or video system, comprising the steps of interconnecting the car stereo or video system and the after-market device with an interface; determining a first device type corresponding to the car stereo or video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; loading a protocol conversion software block from memory in the interface using the first and second device types; converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo or video system using the protocol conversion software block; and converting signals from the car stereo or video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device using the protocol conversion software block.

The present invention further provides a multimedia device integration system that allows for the wireless integration of a portable audio and/or video device with a car audio and/or video system. The portable device could comprise a CD changer, CD player, satellite receiver (*e.g.*, XM or Sirius), digital media device (*e.g.*, MP3, MP4, WMV, or Apple iPod device), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), or a cellular telephone. The portable device includes a wireless interface and an integration subsystem positioned within the portable device. The wireless interface establishes a wireless communications channel between the portable device and the car system, and allows for the wireless exchange of control commands, data, video, and audio signals between the portable device and the car system. The integration module receives control commands issued at the car system and transmitted over the wireless channel, processes same into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches same to the portable device for execution thereby. The integration module also receives data from the portable device (including, but not limited to, track information, song information, artist information, time information, and other related information), processes the data into a format compatible with the car system, and transmits same over the wireless channel to the car system for display thereon. Optionally, the integration module could be positioned within the car system.

The integration module could also include a voice recognition subsystem for acquiring spoken commands from a user, converting same into control commands compatible with the portable device, and dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby. The voice commands could be received at the car audio and/or video system (i.e., using a microphone connected to the car audio and/or video system or some other vehicle component), or at the portable device (i.e., using a microphone connected to or forming a part of the portable device). Additionally, the integration module could include a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech for conveying data generated by the portable device to a user. The synthesized speech could be channeled to the car audio and/or video system by the integration module to be played through the car audio and/or video system.

The present invention further provides a multimedia device integration system that allows for the integration of a portable audio and/or video device with a car audio and/or video system using a docking slot provided in the car system. The portable device includes an integration module positioned within the portable device and an external interface for allowing electrical communication with the car system via the docking slot. Optionally, the integration module could be positioned within the car audio or video system. The integration module could also include a voice recognition subsystem for acquiring spoken commands from a user, converting same into control commands compatible with the portable device, and dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby. Additionally, the integration module could include a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech for conveying data generated by the portable device to a user.

The present invention also provides a multimedia device integration system which allows a digital camera, such as a still digital camera or a digital video camera, to be integrated for use with an existing car audiovisual system. Data, video, and/or audio from the digital camera is received by the interface, processed into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmitted thereto for display on and/or playing through the car audiovisual system. Control commands for controlling the digital camera, which can be issued at the car audiovisual system, are received by the interface, processed into a format compatible with the digital camera, and transmitted thereto for execution by the digital camera.

The present invention also provides a multimedia device integration system which allows a portable navigation device, such as a portable GPS receiver, to be integrated for use with an existing car audiovisual system. Data, video, and/or audio from the portable navigation device is received by the interface, processed into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmitted thereto for display on and/or playing through the car audiovisual system. Control commands for controlling the portable navigation device, which can be issued at the car audiovisual system, are received by the interface, processed into a format compatible with the portable navigation device, and transmitted thereto for execution by the portable navigation device.

The present invention also provides an interface integrated circuit that allows for the integration of an external portable audio and/or video device with a car audiovisual system, and which can be installed within the car audiovisual system. The interface integrated circuit could communicate with the portable audio and/or video device using one or more communications ports or a wireless transceiver. A manufacturer of a car audiovisual system could be provided with the interface integrated circuit and an electrical schematic for installing same. The interface integrated circuit could be provided with pre-installed firmware for converting data, audio, and/or video signals generated by the portable audio and/or video device into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and for converting control commands issued by the car audiovisual system into a format compatible with the portable audio and/or video device for execution thereby. The integrated circuit could also be installed in the portable audio and/or video device, or it could be embodied as a software product which is functionally equivalent to the integrated circuit and which is executed by an existing microprocessor of either the car audiovisual system or the portable audio and/or video device.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

These and other important features of the present invention will be apparent from the following Detailed Description of the Invention, taken in connection with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the multimedia device integration system of the present invention.

FIG. 2A is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2B is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2C is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2D is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2E is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2F is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver and a plurality of auxiliary input source are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2G is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2H is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces and an audio device are integrated with a car stereo.

FIG. 3A is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with a car radio.

FIG. 3B is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating both a CD player and an auxiliary input source with a car radio, wherein the CD player and the auxiliary input are switchable by a user.

FIG. 3C is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 3D is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4A is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player with a car radio.

FIG. 4B is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player with a car radio.

FIG. 4C is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a satellite receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4D is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4E is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4F is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4G is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device and one or more auxiliary input sources.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention.

FIG. 7A is a perspective view of a docking station according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car.

FIG. 7B is an end view of the docking station of **FIG. 7A**.

FIGS. 8A-8B are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, which includes the multimedia device integration system of the present invention incorporated therewith.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8A-8B**.

FIG. 10 is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein the interface is incorporated within a car stereo or car video system.

FIG. 11A is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system; **FIG. 11b** is a flowchart showing processing logic for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 12A is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating an after-market video device for use with a car video system; **FIG. 12B** is a flowchart showing processing logic for integrating an after-market video device for use with a car video system.

FIG. 13A is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein configuration jumpers and protocol conversion software blocks are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

FIG. 13B is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein wiring harnesses and protocol conversion software blocks are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

FIG. 14 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

FIG. 15 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to specify one or more after-market device types for integration using a single interface.

FIG. 16 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to quickly navigate through a list of songs on one or more after-market devices using the controls of a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 17 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of external devices are integrated using a single interface.

FIG. 18 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system and a portable audio and/or video device using a wireless transceiver and an integration module positioned within the portable device.

FIG. 19 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system and a portable audio and/or video device using a wireless transceiver and an integration module positioned within the car audio and/or video system.

FIG. 20 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein a docking slot is provided in a car audio and/or video system for receiving a portable audio and/or video device, and an integration module is positioned within the portable device.

FIG. 21 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein a docking slot is provided in a car audio and/or video system for receiving a portable audio and/or video device, and an integration module is positioned within the car audio and/or video system.

FIG. 22 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system and a portable audio and/or video device, and the portable device includes an integration module having speech synthesis and recognition capabilities.

FIG. 23 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system and a portable audio and/or video device, and the car audio and/or video system includes an integration module having speech synthesis and recognition capabilities.

FIG. 24 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for wirelessly integrating a portable audio and/or video device for use with a car audio or video system.

FIG. 25A is a diagram showing another embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating a digital camera for use with a car audiovisual system; **FIG. 25B** is a flowchart showing processing logic for integrating the digital camera for use with the car audiovisual system.

FIG. 26A is a diagram showing another embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating a portable navigation device for use with a car audiovisual system; **FIG. 26B** is a flowchart showing processing logic for integrating the portable navigation device for use with the car audiovisual system.

FIG. 27 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein the integration system is provided as an integrated circuit installed within a car audiovisual system.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. One or more after-market devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, portable media center, or other device), satellite receiver, digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or the like, can be integrated with an existing car radio or car video device, such as an OEM or after-market car stereo or video system. Control of the after-market device is enabled using the car stereo or car video system, and information from the after-market device, such as channel, artist, track, time, song, and other information, is retrieved form the after-market device, processed, and forwarded to the car stereo or car video system for display thereon. The information channeled to the car stereo or video system can include video from the external device, as well as graphical and menu-based information. A user can review and interact with information via the car stereo. Commands from the car stereo or video system are received, processed by the present invention into a format recognizable by the after-market device, and transmitted thereto for execution. One or more auxiliary input channels can be integrated by the present invention with the car stereo or video system. The user can switch between one or more after-market devices and one or more auxiliary input channels using the control panel buttons of the car stereo or video system.

As used herein, the term "integration" or "integrated" is intended to mean connecting one or more external devices or inputs to an existing car stereo or video system via an interface, processing and handling signals, audio, and/or video information, allowing a user to control the devices via the car stereo or video system, and displaying data from the devices on the car stereo or video system. Thus, for example, integration of a CD player with a car stereo system allows for the CD player to be remotely controlled via the control panel of the stereo system, and data from the CD player to be sent to the display of the stereo. Of course, control of after-market devices can be provided at locations other than the control panel of the car stereo or video system without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Further, as used herein, the term "inter-operable" is intended to mean allowing the external audio or video device to receive and process commands that have been formatted by the interface of the present invention, as well as allowing a car stereo or video system to display information that is generated by the external audio or video device and processed by the present invention. Additionally, by the term "inter-operable," it is meant allowing a device that is alien to the environment of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo or video system to be utilized thereby.

Also, as used herein, the terms "car stereo" and "car radio" are used interchangeably and are intended to include all presently existing car stereos, radios, video systems, such as physical devices that are present at any location within a vehicle, in addition to software and/or graphically- or display-driven receivers. An example of such a receiver is a software-driven receiver that operates on a universal LCD panel within a vehicle and is operable by a user via a graphical user interface displayed on the universal LCD panel. Further, any future receiver, whether a hardwired or a software/graphical receiver operable on one or more displays, is considered within the definition of the terms "car stereo" and "car radio," as used herein, and is within the spirit and scope of the present invention. Moreover, the term "car" is not limited to any specific type of automobile, but rather, includes all automobiles. Additionally, by the term "after-market," it is meant any device not installed by a manufacturer at the time of sale of the car.

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the multimedia device integration (or interface) system of the present invention, generally indicated at **20**. A plurality of devices and auxiliary inputs can be connected to the interface **20**, and integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. A CD player or changer **15** can be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. A satellite radio or DAB receiver **25**, such as an XM or Sirius radio satellite receiver or DAB receiver known in the art, could be integrated with the radio **10**, via the interface **20**. Further, an MP3 player **30** could also be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. The MP3 player **30** could be any known digital media device, such as an Apple iPod or any other digital media device. Moreover, a plurality of auxiliary input sources, illustratively indicated as auxiliary input sources **35** (comprising input sources 1 through *n*, *n* being any number), could also be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**. Optionally, a control head **12**, such as that commonly used with after-market CD changers and other similar devices, could be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**, for controlling any of the car radio **10**, CD player/changer **15**, satellite/DAB receiver **25**, MP3 player **30**, and auxiliary input sources **35**. Thus, as can be readily appreciated, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for the integration of a multitude of devices and inputs with an OEM or after-market car radio or stereo.

FIG. 2A is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device interface system of the present invention, wherein a CD player/changer **15** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The CD player **15** is electrically connected with the interface **20**, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. The interface **20** is electrically connected with the car radio **10**, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the car radio **10** includes a display **13** (such as an alphanumeric, electroluminescent display) for displaying information, and a plurality of control panel buttons **14** that normally operate to control the radio **10**. The interface **20** allows the CD player **15** to be controlled by the control buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Further, the interface **20** allows information from the CD player **15**, such as track, disc, time, and song information, to be retrieved therefrom, processed and formatted by the interface **20**, sent to the display **13** of the radio **10**.

Importantly, the interface **20** allows for the remote control of the CD player **15** from the radio **10** (e.g., the CD player **15** could be located in the trunk of a car, while the radio **10** is mounted on the dashboard of the car). Thus, for example, one or more discs stored within the CD player **15** can be remotely selected by a user from the radio **10**, and tracks on one or more of the discs can be selected therefrom. Moreover, standard CD operational commands, such as pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track forward, and track reverse (among other commands) can be remotely entered at the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10** for remotely controlling the CD player **15**.

FIG. 2B is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an MP3 player **30** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via interface **20**. As mentioned earlier, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for a plurality of disparate audio devices to be integrated with an existing car radio for use therewith. Thus, as shown in **FIG. 2B**, remote control of the MP3 player **30** via radio **10** is provided for via interface **20**. The MP3 player **30** is electronically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The interface **20** allows data and audio signals to be exchanged between the MP3 player **30** and the car radio **10**, and processes and formats signals accordingly so that instructions and data from the radio **10** are processable by the MP3 player **30**, and vice versa. Operational commands, such as track selection, pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, and other commands, are entered via the control panel buttons **14** of car radio **10**, processed by the interface **20**, and formatted for execution by the MP3 player **30**. Data from the MP3 player, such as track, time, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and sent to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Audio from the MP3 player **30** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** to the radio **10** for playing.

FIG. 2C is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver **25** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via the interface **20**. Satellite/DAB receiver **25** can be any satellite radio receiver known in the art, such as XM or Sirius, or any DAB receiver known in the art. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is remotely operable by the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Commands from the radio **10** are received by the interface **20**, processed and formatted thereby, and dispatched to the satellite/DAB receiver **25** for execution thereby. Information from the satellite/DAB receiver **25**, including time, station, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed, and transmitted to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Further, audio from the satellite/DAB receiver **25** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** for playing by the radio **10**.

FIG. 2D is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The auxiliary inputs **35** can be connected to analog sources, or can be digitally coupled with one or more audio devices, such as after-market CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, satellite receivers, DAB receivers, and the like, and integrated with an existing car stereo. Preferably, four auxiliary input sources are connectable with the interface **20**, but any number of auxiliary input sources could be included. Audio from the auxiliary input sources **35** is selectively forwarded to the radio **10** under command of the user. As will be discussed herein in greater detail, a user can select a desired input source from the auxiliary input sources **35** by depressing one or more of the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** receives the command initiated from the control panel, processes same, and connects the corresponding input source from the auxiliary input sources **35** to allow audio therefrom to be forwarded to the radio **10** for playing. Further, the interface **20** determines the type of audio devices connected to the auxiliary input ports **35**, and integrates same with the car stereo **10**.

As mentioned previously, the present invention allows one or more external audio devices to be integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo, along with one or more auxiliary input sources, and the user can select between these sources using the controls of the car stereo. Such "dual input" capability allows operation with devices connected to either of the inputs of the device, or both. Importantly, the device can operate in "plug and play" mode, wherein any device connected to one of the inputs is automatically detected by the present invention, its device type determined, and the device automatically integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. Thus, the present invention is not dependent any specific device type to be connected therewith to operate. For example, a user can first purchase a CD changer, plug same into a dual interface, and use same with the car stereo. At a point later in time, the user could purchase an XM tuner, plug same into the device, and the tuner will automatically be detected and integrated with the car stereo, allowing the user to select from and operate both devices from the car stereo. It should be noted that such plug and play capability is not limited to a dual input device, but is provided for in every embodiment of the present invention. The dual-input configuration of the preset invention is illustrated in **FIGS. 2E-2H** and described below.

FIG. 2E is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an external CD player/changer **15** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Both the CD player **15** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** are electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which, in turn, is electrically interconnected to the radio **10**. Using the controls **14** of the radio **10**, a user can select between the CD player **15** and one or more of the inputs **35** to selectively channel audio from these sources to the radio. The command to select from one of these sources is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and the corresponding source is channeled to the radio **10** by the interface **20**. As will be discussed later in greater detail, the interface **20** contains internal processing logic for selecting between these sources.

FIG. 2F is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. Similar to the embodiment of the present invention illustrated in **FIG. 2E** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, described in greater detail below, for allowing switching between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2G is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player **30** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. Similar to the embodiments of the present invention illustrated in **FIGS. 2E** and **2F** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, as will be discussed later in greater detail, for allowing switching between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2H is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces **40** and **44** and an audio device **17** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Importantly, the present invention can be expanded to allow a plurality of auxiliary inputs to be connected to the car stereo **10** in a tree-like fashion. Thus, as can be seen in **FIG. 2H**, a first auxiliary interface **40** is connected to the interface **20**, and allows data and audio from the ports **42** to be exchanged with the car radio **10**. Connected to one of the ports **42** is another auxiliary interface **44**, which, in turn, provides a plurality of input ports **46**. Any device connected to any of the ports **42** or **46** can be integrated with the car radio **10**. Further, any device connected to the ports **42** or **46** can be inter-operable with the car radio **10**, allowing commands to be entered from the car radio **10** (*e.g.*, such as via the control panel **14**) for commanding the device, and information from the device to be displayed by the car radio **10**. Conceivably, by configuring the interfaces **40**, **44**, and successive interfaces in a tree configuration, any number of devices can be integrated using the present invention.

The various embodiments of the present invention described above and shown in **FIGS. 1** through **2H** are illustrative in nature and are not intended to limit the spirit or scope of the present invention. Indeed, any conceivable audio device or input source, in any desired combination, can be integrated by the present invention into existing car stereo systems. Further, it is conceivable that not only can data and audio signals be exchanged between the car stereo and any external device, but also video information that can be captured by the present invention, processed thereby, and transmitted to the car stereo for display thereby and interaction with a user thereat.

Various circuit configurations can be employed to carry out the present invention. Examples of such configurations are described below and shown in **FIGS. 3A-3D**.

FIG. 3A is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with an existing car stereo system. A plurality of ports **J1C1, J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH** are provided for allowing connection of the interface system of the present invention between an existing car radio, an after-market CD player or changer, or an auxiliary input source. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J1C1** connects to the input port of an OEM car radio, such as that manufactured by TOYOTA, Inc. Conceivably, port **J1C1** could be modified to allow connection to the input port of an after-market car radio. Ports **J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH** connect to an after-market CD changer, such as that manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc., or to an auxiliary input source.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1C1**, **J2A1**, and **X2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player or auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J1C1**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J1C1** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **J2A1, X2, RCH** and **LCH** is selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J1C1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F628 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F628 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having an internal, 4 MHz internal oscillator, 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, a capture/compare/PWM, a USART, 2 comparators, and a programmable voltage reference. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R13**, diodes **D1** through **D4**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1C1, J2A1, X2, RCH**, and **LCH**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3A** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3B is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration according to the present invention, wherein one or more after-market CD changers / players and an auxiliary input source are integrated with an existing car stereo, and wherein the user can select between the CD changer/player and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1,** and **J2**. Ports **J4A, J4B,** and **J3** allow the audio device interface system of the present invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos, such as an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, ports **J4A** and **J4B** can be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by BMW, Inc. Port **J3** can be connected to a car stereo manufactured by LANDROVER, Inc. Of course, any number of car stereos, by any manufacturer, could be provided. Ports **J1** and **J2** allow connection to an after-market CD changer or player, such as that manufactured by ALPINE, Inc., and an auxiliary input source. Optionally, ports **J5L1** and **J5R1** allow integration of a standard analog (line-level) source. Of course, a single standalone CD player or auxiliary input source could be connected to either of ports **J1** or **J2**.

Microcontroller **DD1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1, J5R1, J1,** and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player and auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J1** and **J2** with the car stereo connected to the ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**. For example, microcontroller **DD1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **DD1** receives information provided by the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** for display on the display of the car stereo. Further, the microcontroller **DD1** controls multiplexer **DA3** to allow selection between the CD player/changer and the auxiliary input. Audio signals provided at the ports **J1, J2, J5L1** and **J5R1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **DD1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **DD1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F872 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 64 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, capture/compare/PWM functions, a USART, and a synchronous serial port configurable as either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **DD1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexer **DA3** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer manufactured by FAIRCHILD SEMICONDUCTOR, Inc. Any other suitable multiplexer can be substituted for **DA3** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R18**, diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C11,** and **G1-G3**, transistors **Q1-Q3,** transformers **T1** and **T2**, amplifiers **LCH:A** and **LCH:B,** oscillator **XTAL1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **DD1** and the multiplexer **DA3** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J4A, J4B, J3, J5L1, J5R1, J1,** and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3B** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3C is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration for integrating a plurality of auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4**. Port **J1** allows the multimedia device integration system of the present invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, port **J1** could be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by HONDA, Inc., or any other manufacturer. Ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4** allow connection with the left and right channels of four auxiliary input sources. Of course, any number of auxiliary input sources and ports/connectors could be provided.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4**, and provides functionality for integrating one or more auxiliary input sources connected to the ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4** with the car stereo connected to the port **J1**. Further, the microcontroller **U1** controls multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** to allow selection amongst any of the auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4** are selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller discussed earlier. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer, discussed earlier. Any other suitable microcontroller and multiplexers can be substituted for **U1, DA3,** and **DA4** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R15**, diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C5,** transistors **Q1-Q2,** amplifiers **DA1:A** and **DA1:B,** and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller

U1 and the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** with the hardware connected to the ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3C** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3D is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a satellite receiver with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Ports **J1** and **J2** are provided for allowing connection of the integration system of the present invention between an existing car radio and a satellite receiver. These ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J2** connects to the input port of an existing car radio, such as that manufactured by KENWOOD, Inc. Port **1** connects to an after-market satellite receiver, such as that manufactured by PIONEER, Inc.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1** and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the satellite receiver connected to the port **J1** with the car stereo connected to the port **J2**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J2**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the satellite receiver via connector **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the satellite receiver via connector **J1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J2** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the port **J1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J2** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F873 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F873 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, 2 capture/compare/PWM functions, a synchronous serial port that can be configured as a either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus, and a USART. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R7**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and amplifier **A1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1** and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3D** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIGS. 4A through **6** are flowcharts showing processing logic according to the present invention. Such logic can be embodied as software and/or instructions stored in a read-only memory circuit (*e.g.*, and EEPROM circuit), or other similar device. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the processing logic described herein is stored in one or more microcontrollers, such as the microcontrollers discussed earlier with reference to **FIGS. 3A-3D**. Of course, any other suitable means for storing the processing logic of the present invention can be employed.

FIG. 4A is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **100**, for integrating a CD player or changer with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Beginning in step **100**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **104** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **106** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **106** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **106**, a CD handling process, indicated as block **108**, is invoked, allowing the CD player/changer to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **110**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a CD player/changer is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. Further, the signal need not be limited to a CD player device presence signal, but rather, could be any type of device presence signal (*e.g.*, MP3 player device presence signal, satellite receiver presence signal, video device presence signal, cellular telephone presence signal, or any other type of device presence signal). Concurrently with step **110**, or within a short period of time before or after the execution of step **110**, steps **112** and **114** are invoked. In step **112**, the audio channels of the CD player/changer are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the CD player/changer to be played through the car stereo. In step **114**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the CD player/changer, including track and time information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the external CD player/changer can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **110**, **112**, and **114** have been executed, control passes to step **116**.

In steps **116**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for CD operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step **118**, if a command is not detected, step **116** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **118** invokes step **120**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the CD player/changer connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a GM car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a CD player/changer manufactured by ALPINE, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by a CD player/changer of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **122** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the CD player/changer and executed. Step **110** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4B is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **130**, for integrating an MP3 player with an existing car stereo system. Examples of MP3 players that can be integrated by the present invention include, but are not limited to, the Apple iPod and other types of digital media devices. Beginning in step **132**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **134** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **136** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **136** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **136**, an MP3 handling process, indicated as block **138**, is invoked, allowing the MP3 player to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **140**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an MP3 player is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **142**, the audio channels of the MP3 player are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the MP3 player to be played through the car stereo. In step **144**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the MP3 player, including track, time, title, and song information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the MP3 player can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **140**, **142**, and **144** have been executed, control passes to step **146**.

In steps **146**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for MP3 operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step **148**, if a command is not detected, step **146** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **148** invokes step **150**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the MP3 player connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a HONDA car radio is converted into a format recognizable by an MP3 player manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by an MP3 player of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **152** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the

MP3 player and executed. Step **140** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4C is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **160**, for integrating a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver with an existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **162**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **164** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **166** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **166** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **166**, a satellite/DAB receiver handling process, indicated as block **168**, is invoked, allowing the satellite/DAB receiver to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **170**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a satellite or DAB receiver is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **172**, the audio channels of the satellite/DAB receiver are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the satellite receiver or DAB receiver to be played through the car stereo. In step **174**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the satellite/DAB receiver, including channel number, channel name, artist name, song time, and song title, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. The information could be presented in one or more menus, or via a graphical interface viewable and manipulable by the user at the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the receiver can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **170**, **172**, and **174** have been executed, control passes to step **176**.

In steps **176**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for satellite/DAB receiver operational commands. Examples of such commands include station up, station down, station memory program, and other similar commands. In step **178**, if a command is not detected, step **176** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **178** invokes step **180**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the satellite/DAB receiver connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a FORD car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by a satellite/DAB receiver of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **182** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the satellite/DAB receiver and executed. Step **170** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4D is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **190**, for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **192**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **194** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **196** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **196** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **196**, an auxiliary input handling process, indicated as block **198**, is invoked, allowing one or more auxiliary inputs to be connected (channeled) to the car stereo. Further, if a plurality of auxiliary inputs exist, the logic of block **198** allows a user to select a desired input from the plurality of inputs. Beginning in step **200**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step **202**, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, each of the one or more auxiliary input sources are selectable by selecting a CD disc number on the control panel of the car radio. Thus, in step **204**, a determination is made as to whether the first disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **206** is invoked, wherein the first auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **208** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the second disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **210** is invoked, wherein the second auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **212** is invoked, wherein a third determination is made as to whether the third disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **214** is invoked, wherein the third auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **216** is invoked, wherein a fourth determination is made as to whether the fourth disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **218** is invoked, wherein the fourth auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **200** is re-invoked, and the process disclosed for block **198** repeated. Further, if any of steps **206**, **210**, **214**, or **218** are executed, then step **200** is re-invoked and block **198** repeated.

The process disclosed in block **198** allows a user to select from one of four auxiliary input sources using the control buttons of the car stereo. Of course, the number of auxiliary input sources connectable with and selectable by the present invention can be expanded to any desired number. Thus, for example, 6 auxiliary input sources could be provided and switched using corresponding selection key(s) or keystroke(s) on the control panel of the radio. Moreover, any desired keystroke, selection sequence, or button(s) on the control panel of the radio, or elsewhere, can be utilized to select from the auxiliary input sources without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

FIG. 4E is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **220**, for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **222**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **224** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **226** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the cars stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **226** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **226**, then step **228** is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step **230**, a determination is made as to whether a CD player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external CD player or changer is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **231** and **232** are invoked. In step **231**, the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4A** (the CD handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **232**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **234** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **234** re-invokes step **228**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external CD player/changer to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **236** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the CD player/changer are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **238** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4D** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **230** (no external CD player/changer is connected to the present invention), then step **238** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4F is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **240**, for integrating a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **242**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **244** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **246** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **246** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **246**, then step **248** is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step **250**, a determination is made as to whether a satellite receiver or DAB receiver is present (*i.e.*, whether an external satellite receiver or DAB receiver is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **251** and **252** are invoked. In step **251**, the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4C** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the satellite receiver can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **252**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external satellite receiver to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **254** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **254** re-invokes step **258**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external satellite/DAB receiver to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **256** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the satellite receiver are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **258** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4D** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **250** (no external satellite/DAB receiver is connected to the present invention), then step **258** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4G is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating an MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo. Beginning in step **262**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **264** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **266** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **266** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **266**, then step **268** is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step **270**, a determination is made as to whether an MP3 player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external MP3 player is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **271** and **272** are invoked. In step **271**, the logic of block **138** of **FIG. 4B** (the MP3 handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **272**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **274** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **274** re-invokes step **278**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external MP3 player to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **276** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the MP3 player are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **278** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4D** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **270** (no external MP3 player is connected to the present invention), then step **278** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

As mentioned previously, to enable integration, the present invention contains logic for converting command signals issued from an after-market or OEM car stereo into a format compatible with one or more external audio devices connected to the present invention. Such logic can be applied to convert any car stereo signal for use with any external device. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 1**, below, for converting control signals from a BMW car stereo into a format understandable by a CD changer:

Table 1

```
;       ===============================================
;       Radio requests changer to STOP (exit PLAY mode)
;       Decoding 6805183801004C message
;       ===============================================

Encode_RD_stop_msg:

        movlw 0x68
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x05
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+1,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x18
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+2,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x38
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+3,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x01
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+4,W
        skpz
        return

        tstf  BMW_Recv_buff+5
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x4C
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+6,W
```

```
skpz
return

bsf   BMW_Recv_STOP_msg
return
```

The code portion shown in **Table 1** receives a STOP command issued by a BMW stereo, in a format proprietary to BMW stereos. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Recv_buff. The procedure "Encode_RD_stop_msg" repetitively applies an XOR function to the STOP command, resulting in a new command that is in a format compatible with the after-market CD player. The command is then stored in an output buffer for dispatching to the CD player.

Additionally, the present invention contains logic for retrieving information from an after-market audio device, and converting same into a format compatible with the car stereo for display thereby. Such logic can be applied to convert any data from the external device for display on the car stereo. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 2**, below, for converting data from a CD changer into a format understandable by a BMW car stereo:

Table 2

```
;      =========================================
;      Changer replies with STOP confirmation
;      Encoding 180A68390002003F0001027D message
;      =========================================

Load_CD_stop_msg:
      movlw 0x18
      movwf BMW_Send_buff

      movlw 0x0A
      movwf BMW_Send_buff+1

      movlw 0x68
      movwf BMW_Send_buff+2

      movlw 0x39
      movwf BMW_Send_buff+3

      movlw 0x00             ;current status_XX=00, power off
      movwf BMW_Send_buff+4

      movlw 0x02             ;current status_YY=02, power off
      movwf BMW_Send_buff+5

      clrf  BMW_Send_buff+6  ;separate field, always =0

      movfw BMW_MM_stat      ;current status_MM , magazine config
      movwf BMW_Send_buff+7

      clrf  BMW_Send_buff+8  ;separate field, always =0

      movfw BMW_DD_stat      ;current status_DD , current disc
      movwf BMW_Send_buff+9

      movfw BMW_TT_stat      ;current status_TT , current track
      movwf BMW_Send_buff+10

      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+9,W ;calculate check sum
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+8,W
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+7,W
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+6,W
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+5,W
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+4,W
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+3,W
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+2,W
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff+1,W
      xorwf BMW_Send_buff,W

      movwf BMW_Send_buff+11  ;store check sum
      movlw D'12'             ;12 bytes total
      movwf BMW_Send_cnt
      bsf   BMW_Send_on       ;ready to send
      return
```

The code portion shown in **Table 2** receives a STOP confirmation message from the CD player, in a format proprietary to the CD player. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Send_buff. The procedure "Load_CD_stop_msg" retrieves status information, magazine information, current disc, and current track information from the CD changer, and constructs a response containing this information. Then, a checksum is calculated and stored in another buffer. The response and checksum are in a format compatible with the BMW stereo, and are ready for dispatching to the car stereo.

The present invention also includes logic for converting signals from an OEM car stereo system for use with a digital media device such as an MP3, MP4, or Apple iPod player. Shown below are code samples for allowing commands and data to be exchanged between a Ford car stereo and an Apple iPod device:

Table 3

```
//decoding Ford "play" command :41-C0-80-CA-01+

        if ( ACP_rx_ready == ON ) {
                ACP_rx_ready = OFF;
                ACP_rx_taddr = ACP_rx_buff[1];
                ACP_rx_saddr = ACP_rx_buff[2];
                ACP_rx_data1 = ACP_rx_buff[3];
                ACP_rx_data2 = ACP_rx_buff[4];
                ACP_rx_data3 = ACP_rx_buff[5];
                if ( (ACP_rx_saddr == 0x80) ) {
                        switch ( ACP_rx_taddr ) {
                                case 0xC0:
                                        if ( ACP_rx_data1 == 0xCA) {
                                                if ( ACP_rx_data2 ==
0x01 ) {
                                                      flags.ACP_play_req
= 1;
                                                }
                                                break;
                                        }
                                        break;
                        }
                }
```

In the code portion shown in **Table 3**, a "Play" command selected by a user at the controls of a Ford OEM car stereo is received, and portions of the command are stored in one or more buffer arrays. Then, as shown below in **Table 4**, the decoded portions of the command stored in the one or more buffer arrays are used to construct a “Play/Pause” command in a format compatible with the Apple iPod device, and the command is sent to the Apple iPod for execution thereby:

Table 4

```
// encoding iPod "play/pause" command 0xFF 0x55 0x03 0x02 0x00 0x01 0xFA

        if ( iPod_play_req == ON ) {
                iPod_play_req = OFF;
                iPod_tx_data[0] = 0x55;
                iPod_tx_data[1] = 0x03;
                iPod_tx_data[2] = 0x02;
                iPod_tx_data[3] = 0x00;
                iPod_tx_data[4] = 0x01;
                iPod_tx_counter = 5;
                iPod_tx_ready = ON;
        }
```

While the code portions shown in **Tables 1**-**2** are implemented using assembler language, and the code portions shown in **Tables 3**-**4** are implemented using the C programming language, it is to be expressly understood that any low or high level language known in the art could be utilized without departing from the spirit or scope of the invention. It will be appreciated that various other code portions can be developed for converting signals from any after-market or OEM car stereo for use by an after-market external audio device, and vice versa.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **300** for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device, and one or more auxiliary input sources. As was discussed earlier, the present invention allows a user to switch from one or more connected audio devices, such as an external CD player/changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, or the like, and activate one or more auxiliary input sources. A selection sequence, initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo, allows such switching. Beginning in step **302**, the buttons of the control panel are monitored. In step **304**, a determination is made as to whether a “Track Up” button or sequence has been initiated by the user. The “Track Up” button or sequence can for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step **306** is invoked, wherein the sensed button or sequence is processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the external audio device for execution. Then, step **302** is re-invoked, so that additional buttons or sequences can be monitored.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step **304**, step **308** is invoked, wherein the present invention waits for a predetermined period of time while monitoring the control panel buttons for additional buttons or sequences. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the predetermined period of time is 750 milliseconds, but of course, other time durations are considered within the spirit and scope of the present invention. In step **310**, a determination is made as to whether the user has initiated a "Track Down" button or sequence at the control panel of the car stereo within the predetermined time period. These sequences can be used for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step **312** is invoked. In step **312**, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, whether the predetermined period of time has expired). If a negative determination is made, step **308** is re-invoked. Otherwise, is a positive determination is made, step **312** invokes step **306**, so that any buttons or key sequences initiated by the user that are not a "Track Down" command are processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the audio device for execution.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step **310** (a "Track Down" button or sequence has been initiated within the predetermined time period), then step **314** is invoked. In step **314**, the audio channels of the audio device are disconnected, and then step **316** is invoked. In step **316**, the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4D** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is invoked, so that the user can select from one of the auxiliary input sources in accordance with the present invention. Thus, at this point in time, the system has switched, under user control, from the audio device to a desired auxiliary input. Although the foregoing description of the process **300** has been described with reference to "Track Up" and "Track Down" buttons or commands initiated by the user, it is to be expressly understood that any desired key sequence, keystroke, button depress, or any other action, can be sensed in accordance with the present invention and utilized for switching modes.

When operating in auxiliary mode, the present invention provides an indication on the display of the car stereo corresponding to such mode. For example, the CD number could be displayed as "1", and the track number displayed as "99," thus indicating to the user that the system is operating in auxiliary mode and that audio and data is being supplied from an auxiliary input source. Of course, any other indication could be generated and displayed on the display of the car stereo, such as a graphical display (*e.g.*, an icon) or textual prompt.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **320**, for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention. The present invention can sense device types connected to the auxiliary input ports, and can integrate same with the car stereo using the procedures discussed earlier. Beginning in step **322**, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored for a button or sequence initiated by the user corresponding to an auxiliary input selection (such as the disc number method discussed earlier with reference to **FIG. 4D**). In response to an auxiliary input selection, step **324** is invoked, wherein the type of device connected to the selected auxiliary input is sensed by the present invention. Then, step **326** is invoked.

In step **326**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a CD player/changer. If a positive determination is made, step **328** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4A** (the CD handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the CD player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **326**, then step **330** is invoked. In step **330**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is an MP3 player. If a positive determination is made, step **334** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **138** if **FIG. 4B** (the MP3 handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the MP3 player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **330**, then step **336** is invoked. In step **336**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver. If a positive determination is made, step **338** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4C** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the satellite receiver is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **336**, step **322** is re-invoked, so that additional auxiliary input selections can be monitored and processed accordingly. Of course, process **320** can be expanded to allow other types of devices connected to the auxiliary inputs of the present invention to be integrated with the car stereo.

The present invention can be expanded for allowing video information generated by an external device to be integrated with the display of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. In such a mode, the invention accepts RGB (red/green/blue) input signals from the external device, and converts same to composite signals. The composite signals are then forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby, such as on an LCD panel of the stereo. Additionally, the present invention can accept composite input signals from an external device, and convert same to RGB signals for display on the car stereo. Further, information from the external device can be formatted and presented to the user in one or more graphical user interfaces or menus capable of being viewed and manipulated on the car stereo.

FIG. 7A is a perspective view of a docking station **400** according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car. Importantly, the present invention can be adapted to allow portable audio devices to be integrated with an existing car stereo. The docking station **400** allows such portable devices to be conveniently docked and integrated with the car stereo. The docking station **400** includes a top portion **402** hingedly connected at a rear portion **408** to a bottom portion **404**, preferably in a clam-like configuration. A portable audio device **410**, such as the SKYFI radio distributed by DELPHI, Inc., is physically and electrically connected with the docking portion **412**, and contained within the station **100**. A clasp **406** can be provided for holding the top and bottom portions in a closed position to retain the device **410**. Optionally, a video device could also be docked using the docking station **400**, and tabs **413** can be provided for holding the docking station **400** in place against a portion of a car. Conceivably, the docking station **400** could take any form, such as a sleeve-like device for receiving and retaining a portable audio device and having a docking portion for electrically and mechanically mating with the audio device. It should be noted that the docking station **400** could be formed without the top portion **402.**

FIG. 7B is an end view showing the rear portion **408** of the docking station **400** of **FIG. 7A**. A hinge **414** connects the top portion and the bottom portions of the docking station **400**. A data port **416** is provided for interfacing with the audio device docked within the station **400**, and is in electrical communication therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the data port **416** is an RS-232 serial or USB data port that allows for the transmission of data with the audio device, and which connects with the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating the audio device with an OEM or after-market car stereo. Any known bus technology can be utilized to interface with any portable audio or video device contained within the docking station **400**, such as FIREWIRE, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or any other bus technology known in the art. It should be noted that the present invention can be operated without a docking station, *i.e.*, a portable audio or video device can be plugged directly into the present invention for integration with a car stereo or video system.

FIGS. 8A-8B are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, indicated generally at **500**, which includes the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **540**, incorporated therewith. As shown in **FIG. 8A**, the docking station **500** includes a base portion **530**, a bottom member **515** interconnected with the base portion **530** at an edge thereof, and a top member **510** hingedly interconnected at an edge to the base portion **530**. The top member **510** and the bottom member **515** define a cavity for docking and storing a portable audio device **520**, which could be a portable CD player, MP3 player, satellite (*e.g.*, XM, SIRIUS, or other type) tuner, or any other portable audio device. The docking station **500** would be configured to accommodate a specific device, such as an IPOD from Apple Computer, Inc., or any other portable device.

The multimedia device integration system **540**, in the form of a circuit board, is housed within the base portion **530** and performs the integration functions discussed herein for integrating the portable device **520** with an existing car stereo or car video system. The integration system **540** is in communication with the portable device **520** via a connector **550**, which is connected to a port on the device **520**, and a cable **555** interconnected between the connector **550** and the integration system **540**. The connector **550** could be any suitable connector and can vary according to the device type. For example, a MOLEX, USB, or any other connector could be used, depending on the portable device. The integration system **540** is electrically connected with a car stereo or car video system by cable **560**. Alternatively, the integration system could wirelessly communicate with the car stereo or car video system. A transmitter could be used at the integration system to communicate with a receiver at the car stereo or car video system. Where automobiles include Bluetooth systems, such systems can be used to communicate with the integration system. As can be readily appreciated, the docking station **500** provides a convenient device for docking, storing, and integrating a portable device for use with a car stereo. Further, the docking station **500** could be positioned at any desired location within a vehicle, including, but not limited to, the vehicle trunk.

As shown in **FIG. 8B**, the top member **510** can be opened in the general direction indicated by arrow **A** to allow for access to the portable audio device **520**. In this fashion, the device **520** can be quickly accessed for any desired purpose, such as for inserting and removing the device **520** from the docking station **500**, as well as for providing access to the controls of the device **520**.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8A-8B**. The docking station **500** houses both a portable audio or video device **520** and a multimedia device integration system (or interface) **540**. The shape and configuration of the docking station **500** can be varied as desired without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

The integration system of the present invention provides for control of a portable audio or video device, or other device, through the controls of the car stereo or video system system. As such, controls on the steering wheel, where present, may also be used to control the portable audio device or other device. Further, in all embodiments of the present invention, communication between the after-market device and a car stereo or video system can be accomplished using known wireless technologies, such as Bluetooth.

FIG. 10 is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **600**, wherein the interface **630** is incorporated within a car stereo or car video system **610**. The interface **630** is in electrical communication with the control panel buttons **620**, display **615**, and associated control circuitry **625** of the car stereo or video system **610**. The interface **630** could be manufactured on a separate printed circuit board positioned within the stereo or video system **610**, or on one or more existing circuit boards of the stereo or video system **610**. An after-market device **635** can be put into electrical communication with the interface **630** via a port or connection on the car stereo or video system **610**, and integrated for use with the car stereo or video system **610**.

The device **635** can be controlled using the control panel buttons **620** of the car stereo or video system **610**, and information from the device **635** is formatted by the interface **630** and displayed in the display **615** of the car stereo or video system **610**. Additionally, control commands generated at the car stereo or car video device **610** are converted by the interface **630** into a format (protocol) compatible with the multimedia device **635**, and are dispatched thereto for execution. A plurality of multimedia devices could be integrated using the interface **630**, as well as one or more auxiliary input sources **640**. The after-market device **635** could comprise any audio, video, or telecommunications device, including, but not limited to, a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, or any other player), satellite radio (*e.g.*, XM, Sirius, Delphi, etc.), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or any other type of device or combinations thereof. Additionally, one or more interfaces could be connected to the interface **630** ("daisy-chained") to allow multiple products to be integrated. The device **600** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3A-3D** and modified depending upon the type of the after-market device **635**.

FIG. 11A is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **645**, wherein a cellular telephone **670** is integrated for use with a car stereo. The telephone **670** is in electrical communication with the interface **665**, which receives data from the cellular telephone and formats same for displaying on the display **650** of the car stereo or video system **660**. Commands for controlling the telephone **670** can be entered using the control panel buttons **655** of the car stereo or video system **660**. The commands are processed by the interface **665**, converted into a format (protocol) compatible with the telephone **670**, and transmitted to the telephone **670** for processing thereby.

Additionally, audio and video from the telephone **670** can be channeled to the car stereo or video system **660** via the interface **665** and played through the speakers and/or display **650** of the car stereo or video system **660**. For example, if the telephone **670** is provided with the ability to download songs or music, such songs or music can be selected using the car stereo or video system **660** and played therethrough using the interface **665**. Further, the telephone **670** could be provided with the ability to receive live and/or streamed audio and/or video signals (*e.g.*, via QuickTime or RealSystem streaming files, or a live radio signal received by the telephone), satellite audio (*e.g.*, XM or SIRIUS satellite radio signals, received by a satellite-capable cellular telephone), mobile television (*e.g.*, "amp'd" mobile), or navigational information (*e.g.*, via the Global Positioning System (GPS)), which can be selected using the car stereo or video system **660** and played thereon (both audio and video) using the interface **665**. For example, if the telephone **670** is equipped to receive SIRIUS satellite digital audio signals, a user could be presented with a menu of available channels that can be displayed and selected using the car stereo or video system **660**, which causes corresponding audio signals to be played through speakers of the car stereo or video system **660.** It is also noted that navigational and map data received by the telephone **670**, including, but not limited to, Global Positioning System (GPS) maps and road / driving maps (e.g., Google driving / road maps, Telnav maps, etc.), can be displayed on the car stereo or video system **660**. Additionally, other types of data, such as restaurant menus accessed by the telephone **670**, could be displayed on the car stereo or video system **660**.

It should be noted that control of the cellular telephone could be provided using one or more displays (*e.g.*, LCD) of a car video system. Moreover, control of the cellular telephone **670** is not limited to the use of buttons on the car stereo or video system **660**, and indeed, a software or graphically-driven menu or interface can be used to control the cellular telephone. The device **645** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3A-3D** and modified for use with the cellular telephone **670**.

FIG. 11b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **647**, for integrating a cellular telephone with a car radio. Beginning in step **649**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **651** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **653** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **649** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **653**, a cellular telephone handling process, indicated as block **661**, is invoked. Beginning in step **654**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a cellular telephone is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **657**, the audio channels of the cellular telephone are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the cellular telephone to be played through the car stereo. Video signals from the cellular telephone could also be processed in accordance with the present invention (e.g., RGB to composite signal conversion, or vice-versa), and the processed video could be sent by the interface to the car stereo system for display thereby. In step **659**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the cellular telephone, such as song information corresponding to one or more songs downloaded onto the cellular telephone, satellite radio channel, artist name, genre, etc. After steps **654**, **657**, and **659** have been executed, control passes to step **663**.

In steps **663**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for cellular telephone operational commands. In step **664**, if a command is not detected, step **663** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **663** invokes step **667**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the cellular telephone connected to the present invention. Once the command has been formatted, step **669** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the cellular telephone and executed. Step **654** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 12A is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **675**, wherein an after-market video device **695** is integrated for use with a car video system **685**. In particular, the interface **675** allows a non-native video device **695** (i.e., a device which is alien to a car video system) to be used interchangeably with a car video system **685**. The after-market video device **695** could comprise a portable DVD player, digital video (DV) camera, digital camera, rear-view camera, or any other video device. The interface **690** receives output video signals from the device **695**, and converts same for display on one or more displays **680** (*e.g.*, LCD seat-back displays in a minivan, fold-down displays mounted on the roof of a vehicle, vehicle navigation displays, etc.) of the car video system **685**. The output signals could be transmitted via a wired or a wireless connection to the interface **690**. The interface **690** could convert between composite and red/green/blue (RGB) video signals, and vice versa, using commercially-available video format conversion chips such as the TDA8315, TDA4570, TDA3567, TDA3566A, and TDA3569A video conversion chips manufactured by Philips Corp., and the AL251 and AL250 video conversion chips manufactured by Averlogic Technologies, Inc., or any other suitable video conversion chips. Commands issued by a user using the car video system **685** or display(s) **680** for controlling the device **695** are received by the interface **690**, converted into a format compatible with the device **695**, and transmitted thereto for processing. The device **675** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3A-3D** and modified for use with the video device **695**.

FIG. 12B is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **671**, for integrating an after-market video device with a car video system. Beginning in step **673**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car video system is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **674** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car video system to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **677** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car video system is in a state responsive to signals external to the car video system. If a negative determination is made, step **673** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **677**, an after-market video device handling process, indicated as block **687**, is invoked. Beginning in step **679**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car video system. Importantly, this signal prevents the car video system from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **681**, the audio and video channels of the after-market device are connected (channeled) to the car video system, allowing audio and video from the after-market device to be played through the car video system. In step **684**, the display(s) of the car video system are updated with data from the after-market device. After steps **679**, **681**, and **684** have been executed, control passes to step **683**.

In step **683**, the present invention monitors the car video system for after-market video device operational commands. In step **689**, if a command is not detected, step **683** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **689** invokes step **691**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the after-market video device connected to the present invention. Once the command has been formatted, step **693** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the after-market video device and executed. Step **679** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 13A is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system **710** of the present invention, wherein configuration jumpers **720** and protocol conversion software blocks **724** are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface. The jumpers **720** can be set to a plurality of different settings, each of which corresponds to an after-market device of a specific type (*e.g.*, CD changer, CD player, digital media player, satellite radio, video device, cellular telephone, etc.) or from a specific manufacturer. Additionally, the jumpers **720** can be used to specify one or more device or manufacturer types for the car stereo or video system **705**. The settings of the configuration jumpers **720** correspond to one or more protocol conversion software blocks **724** stored in memory (*e.g.*, programmable flash memory, ROM, EEPROM, etc.) **725** of the interface **710**. Each of the software blocks **724** controls the interface circuitry **715** and contains instructions for converting data from the device **707** into a format compatible with the car stereo or video system **705**, and vice versa. For example, a first block could contain software for allowing communication between an Apple iPod and an in-dash car stereo manufactured by Sony, and a second block could contain software for allowing communication between a DVD player and a car video system. Any desired number of blocks could be stored in the memory **725** and can be selected as desired by the user via configuration jumpers **720**. As such, a single interface **710** can be used for integrating numerous devices of various types and manufactures for use with one or more car stereo or video systems. The device **710** could include one or more of the circuits shown in **FIGS. 3A-3D**, with modifications depending upon the device types of the devices **705** and **707.**

FIG. 13B is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein wiring harnesses **727** and **728** and protocol conversion software blocks **729** are provided for integrating multimedia devices of various types using a single interface **726**. In this embodiment, the electrical configurations (pinouts) of each of the harnesses **727** and **728** correspond to car stereo / video systems and after-market devices of specific types and made by specific manufacturers (*e.g.*, harness **727** could correspond to a BMW car stereo, and harness **728** could correspond to an ALPINE satellite tuner). The electrical configurations (pinouts) of the harnesses are utilized by the interface **726** to retrieve a specific protocol conversion software block **729** that allows communication between the devices. The interface **726** could be provided with a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks pre-loaded into memory in the interface, and could be provided with any desired harnesses. The interface **726** could include one or more of the circuits shown in **FIGS. 3A-3D**, with modification depending upon the device types of the devices attached to the wiring harnesses **727** and **728**.

FIG. 14 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **730**, of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface. In step **735**, the interface determines types of devices that are connected thereto, including the car stereo or video system and one or more after-market devices to be integrated therewith. This could be achieved by the configuration jumper settings or the harness types connected to the interface and discussed with respect to **FIGS. 13A** and **13B**. Then, in step **740**, a protocol conversion software block is selected from blocks of conversion software (*e.g.*, from the blocks **725** and **729** shown in **FIGS. 13A** and **13B**). In step **745**, instructions are converted using the selected conversion block to allow the car stereo or video system to operate with the multimedia device.

FIG. 15 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **750**, of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to specify one or more after-market device types for integration using a single interface. In step **770**, a user is provided with one or more lists of devices to be integrated, which are displayed on the display **760** of the car stereo or video device **755**. Then, in step **775**, using the buttons **765** of the car video device, the user can specify the type of multimedia device to be integrated (*e.g.*, by scrolling through the lists). Additionally, the device type could be specified using a graphical or software menu displayed on the car stereo or car video system. In step **780**, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, the user has not selected a device type within a predetermined period of time). If a positive determination is made, step **785** occurs, wherein a protocol conversion software block is selected from memory corresponding to the last device type displayed by the car stereo or video system. If a negative determination is made, step **790** is invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether the user has specified a device type. If a negative determination is made, step **775** is re-invoked so that the user can specify a device type. If a positive determination is made, step **795** is invoked, wherein a protocol conversion software block is selected from memory corresponding to the device specified by the user. In step **800**, the protocol conversion software block is mapped to a logical address in memory. Then, in step **805**, instructions to be exchanged between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device are converted using the software block to allow communication between the devices using compatible formats. Accordingly, the logic of **FIG. 15** allows a single interface having multiple protocol conversion software blocks to be used integrate a plurality of after-market devices with a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 16 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **810**, for allowing a user to quickly navigate through a list of songs on one or more after-market devices using the controls of a car stereo or video system (fast navigation technique). This method allows a user to quickly select a song from a list of songs available on an after-market device for playing on the car stereo or video system, and could be applied for use with any type of after-market device, including, but not limited to, a digital media player such as an MP3 player or Apple iPod player. Beginning in step **812**, a user is provided with a list of alphanumeric characters on a display of the car stereo or video system. This list could include the letters A through Z, as well as the numbers 0 through 9. In step **814**, the user can specify a desired alphanumeric character, which can be specified by scrolling through the list using one or more controls of the car stereo or video system and pressing a button once the desired character has been highlighted, or optionally, if an alphanumeric keypad (or touchscreen interface) is provided on the car stereo or video system, the user can directly enter the desired alphanumeric character.

When the desired alphanumeric character has been specified, in step **816** a remote database is queried using the alphanumeric character. The remote database could comprise a list of songs stored in one or more after-market devices integrated by the present invention for use with the car stereo or video system. In step **818**, a list of potentially matching songs is retrieved from the database and presented on the display of the car stereo or video system for perusal by the user. For example, if the user specified the letter "A," the list could include all songs in the remote database having titles (or artists) beginning with the letter "A." In step **820**, a determination is made as to whether a desired song appears in the list and is immediately viewable by the user, without requiring the user to scroll through the list. If a positive determination is made, step **822** is invoked, wherein the desired song is selected by the user and retrieved from the after-market device for playing on the car stereo or video system.

In the event that a negative determination is made in step **820**, step **824** is invoked, wherein the user can specify an additional alphanumeric character using the car stereo or video system. For example, if the user initially specified the letter "A" and the desired song is not visible in the list of songs without scrolling, the user can refine the query by adding an additional alphanumeric character. Thus, for example, the user can specify the letters "AN" to search for songs having titles (or artists) beginning with the letters "AN." In step **826**, the remote database of the after-market device is queried using the specified letters. In step **828**, a list of potential matches is presented to the user at the car stereo or video system. In step **830**, a determination is made as to whether the desired song appears in the list and is immediately viewable without requiring the user to scroll through the list. If a positive determination is made, step **822** is invoked, wherein the user can select the desired song for retrieval from the after-market device and playing on the car stereo or video system. If a negative determination is made, step **832** is invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether a threshold number of alphanumeric characters has been specified by the user. For example, a maximum threshold of 3 alphanumeric characters could be specified, or any other desired number. If a negative determination is made, steps **824-832** are re-invoked in the manner disclosed herein to allow the user to specify additional alphanumeric characters for querying the remote database. If a positive determination is made (threshold met), then processing terminates and the user must scroll through the list of retrieved songs or repeat the processing disclosed in **FIG. 16** to begin a new query.

FIG. 17 is a diagram showing an another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **850**, wherein a plurality of external devices are integrated using a single interface **852**. Any desired number or combination of devices can be integrated for use with a car stereo or video system using the interface **852**. The interface **852** houses a plurality of ports **858** for connecting any desired number of external devices, and a port **856** for connection with a car stereo or video system. The ports **858** and **856** could be any suitable type of input port, and could vary depending upon the types of devices to be integrated. Additionally, the interface **852** includes integration electronics **854**, which could include any desired electronics disclosed herein for integrating a plurality of external devices.

As shown in **FIG. 17**, a CD player **860**, a digital media device **862**, a satellite tuner **864**, a video device **866**, a cellular phone **868**, and an auxiliary input **870** are connected to the interface **852** and integrated for use with a car stereo or video system. The CD player **860** could comprise any desired CD player or changer. The digital media device **862** could comprise any portable digital media device, such as an Apple iPod, MP3 player, MP4, player, WMV player, portable music center, or any other desired device. The satellite tuner **864** could comprise any desired satellite tuner, such as an XM or Sirius tuner. The video device **866** could comprise any desired video device, such as a DVD player. The cellular phone **868** could comprise any cellular telephone capable of downloading and storing music or video files. The auxiliary input **870** could comprise any desired external device. Any desired number of interfaces **852** could be interconnected ("daisy-chained"). Further, the interface **852** could form part of an existing car stereo or video system. Control of the external devices connected to the interface **852** is provided through the car stereo or video system.

FIG. 18 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **900**, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system **910** and a portable audio and/or video device **924**. The car system **910** could be any OEM or after-market car audio and/or video system. The portable device **924** could comprise a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, Apple video iPod), portable media center, portable media player, satellite receiver, digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver (also commonly referred to as a high-definition (HD) radio receiver), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player or digital media player, such as the SONY PSP digital media player), cellular telephone, or any other portable device.

The car system **910** includes system electronics **912** (e.g., circuitry and components provided by an OEM or after-market car audio and/or video system manufacturer), a display **918**, a control panel **920** (e.g., buttons, touch screen display, etc.) for allowing user interaction and control, and a wireless interface or transceiver **916**. The wireless interface **916** could comprise an AT76C551 Bluetooth transceiver manufactured by Atmel, Inc., which includes a Bluetooth baseband controller with an integrated digital signal processor (DSP), and an AT7024 2.4 - 2.5 GHz band RF front end transceiver manufactured by Atmel, Inc., which includes a low-noise amplifier and transmit / receive switch driver. Any other suitable wireless transceiver (e.g., IEEE 802.11a, 802.11b, or 802.11g) could also be substituted. The display **918** could comprise any display associated with the car system **910**, including, but not limited to, a display panel, a seat-back display, a dashboard display, an LCD or plasma display, or any other display in a car or associated with a car audio and/or video system, positioned anywhere within a vehicle.

The portable device **924** includes device electronics **934** (e.g., circuitry and components provided by the portable device manufacturer), a wireless interface or transceiver **926**, and an integration subsystem or module **932** positioned within the portable device **924**. Optionally, the wireless interface **926** could be positioned external to the portable device **924**. The wireless interface **926** is identical to the wireless interface **916**, and both interfaces **916** and **926** establish a wireless communications channel or link **922** between the car system **910** and the portable device **924**.

The integration subsystem **932** receives control commands that are issued at the car system **910** and wirelessly transmitted to the portable device **924** via the wireless communications link **922**, processes the commands into a format compatible with the device electronics **934** of the portable device **924**, and dispatches same to the device electronics **934** for execution thereby, so as to provide remote, wireless control of the portable device **924** using the car system **910**. For example, a "Play" command could be entered at the car system **910** (which could be a BMW car stereo), wirelessly transmitted to the portable device **924** (which could be an Apple iPod), converted by the integration subsystem **932** into a format recognizable by the device electronics **934**, and executed thereby. The integration subsystem **932** also receives data generated by the device electronics **934** (including, but not limited to, track information, artist information, song title, time information, etc.), processes same into a format compatible with the car system **910**, and transmits the processed data to the car system **910** using the wireless link **922** for display thereon using the display **918**. For example, playlists or other data generated by the portable device **924** could be processed by the integration subsystem **932** into a format compatible with the car system **910**, and wirelessly transmitted thereto for display on the display **918**.

Audio and video information generated by the portable device **924** can be transmitted digitally to the car system **910** using the wireless link **922**. This information could also be transmitted via one or more analog RF carrier signals, using suitable digital-to-analog and analog-to-digital conversion circuitry known in the art. The integration subsystem **932** could also include conversion circuitry (*e.g.*, using the video format conversion chips discussed above with respect to **FIG. 12A**) for converting video information generated by the portable device **924** for display on the display **918** of the car system **910** (e.g., by converting composite video signals to red, green, and blue (RGB) video signals, or vice versa). It should be noted that the integration subsystem **932** could also be utilized to process data, video, and audio information provided by the portable device **924** where the portable device **924** is connected to the Internet (*e.g.*, via a wireless Internet connection established by a cellular telephone). In such circumstances, the display **918** of the car system **910** would function as an Internet browser, and the controls **920** of the car system **910** could be utilized to navigate the Internet.

The integration subsystem **932** contains circuitry similar to the circuitry disclosed in the various embodiments of the present invention discussed herein, and could include a PIC16F872 or PIC16F873 microcontroller manufactured by Microchip, Inc. and programmed in accordance with the flowchart discussed below with respect to **FIG. 24**. Additionally, the integration subsystem **932** generates a device presence signal for maintaining the car system **910** in a state responsive to the portable device **924**. It should be noted that a non-wireless connection **930** could be provided between optional external interfaces ports **914** and **928** of the car system **910** and the portable device **924**, respectively, using any suitable wired connection type such as serial, FIREWIRE, CAN/CAN2, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or any other connection, to allow for wired integration between the car system **910** and the portable device **924**. Additionally, the non-wireless connection **930** could include a fiber-optic connection, such as a D2B or MOST fiber-optic connection. The device presence can be transmitted to the car system **910** using the wireless link **922** or, optionally, the non-wireless connection **930**.

FIG. 19 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1000**, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system **1010** and a portable audio and/or video device **1024**. The components shown in **FIG. 19** are identical to the components shown in **FIG. 18**, and reference numerals of corresponding components have been increased by 100. In this embodiment, the integration subsystem **1032** is positioned internally within the car system **1010**, which also includes system electronics **1012**, wireless interface **1016**, display **1018**, control panel **1020**, and, optionally, external interface port **1014**. The portable device **1024** includes a wireless interface **1026** in communication with device electronics **1034**, and optionally, an external interface port **1028** for communicating with the external interface port **1014** of the car system **1010** via non-wireless connection **1030**.

FIG. 20 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1100**, wherein a docking slot **1140** is provided in a car audio and/or video system **1110** for receiving a portable audio and/or video device **1124**. The car system **1110** includes system electronics **1112** (e.g., circuitry and components provided by an OEM or after-market car audio or video system manufacturer), a display **1118**, and a control panel **1120**. The portable device **1124** includes an integration subsystem or module **1132**, device electronics **1134** (e.g., circuitry and components provided by the manufacturer of the portable device **1124**) and an external interface port **1142** that interfaces with the docking slot **1140** to allow electrical communication between the integration subsystem **1132** of the car system **1110** and the device electronics **1134** of the portable device **1124**. The electrical connection formed by the external interface port **1142** and the docking slot **1140** could include a FIREWIRE, CAN/CAN2, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, or I Bus connection, or any other suitable connection type. Additionally, a fiber-optic connection could be formed between the external interface port **1142** and the docking slot **1140**, using a D2B, MOST, or other suitable fiber-optic connection.

The portable device **1124** is inserted into the docking slot **1140** in the general direction indicated by arrow **A**. Once docked, the integration subsystem **1132** processes control commands issued at the car system **1110** into a format compatible with the portable device **1124**, and processes data generated by the portable device **1124** into a format compatible with the car system **1110** in the manner described herein. Audio and video signals generated by the portable device **1124** are channeled by the integration subsystem **1132** to the system electronics **1112**, for playing through the car system **1110**. The portable device **1124** could comprise a digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, Apple video iPod, or other device), a portable media center, a portable media player, a satellite receiver, a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver or high-definition (HD) radio receiver, a portable video device, a cellular telephone, or any other portable device.

FIG. 21 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1200**, wherein a docking slot **1240** is provided in a car audio and/or video system **1210** for receiving a portable audio and/or video device **1224**. The components shown in **FIG. 21** are identical to those disclosed in **FIG. 20**, and reference numerals of corresponding components have been increased by 100. In this embodiment, the integration subsystem **1232** is positioned within the car system **1210**, which also includes system electronics **1212**, display **1218**, and control panel **1220**. The portable device **1224** includes device electronics **1234** and an external interface port **1242** for interfacing with the docking slot **1240** and providing electrical (and/or optical) communication with the integration subsystem **1232**.

FIG. 22 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1300**, wherein wireless integration is provided between a car audio and/or video system **1310** and a portable audio and/or video device **1324**, and voice synthesis and speech recognition capabilities are provided. More particularly, the portable device **1324** includes an integration subsystem or module **1332** having a voice recognition subsystem **1336** and a speech synthesizer **1338**. As with the embodiments discussed earlier with respect to **FIGS. 18-19**, the car system **1310** includes system electronics **1312** (*e.g.*, circuitry and components provided by an OEM or after-market car audio or video system manufacturer), an optional external interface port **1314**, a wireless interface or transceiver **1316** (which could be a Bluetooth or other suitable wireless transceiver), a display **1318**, and a control panel **1320**.

The portable device **1324** could comprise a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, Apple video iPod, or other device), portable media center, portable media player, satellite receiver, digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, high-definition (HD) radio receiver, video device (*e.g.*, DVD player or digital media player, such as the SONY PSP digital media player), cellular telephone, or any other portable device. The portable device **1324** includes a wireless interface **1326** which communicates with the wireless interface **1316** to provide a wireless communications channel or link **1322**, an optional external interface port **1328** for providing a non-wireless connection **1330** with the external interface port **1314** (which could include any suitable wired connection, such as FIREWIRE, CAN/CAN2, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, etc., or any suitable optical connection, such as D2B or

MOST), device electronics **1334**, and optional external audio output **1340** and optional external audio input **1342**.

The voice recognition subsystem **1336** of the integration subsystem **1332** could comprise the HM2007 speech recognition processor manufactured by Hualon Microelectric Corporation, the VRP6679 speech recognition processor manufactured by Oki, Inc., or any other suitable speech recognition processor. The voice recognition subsystem **1336** receives control commands that are spoken by a user and are transmitted to the portable device **1324** via the wireless link **1322** or the non-wireless connection **1330** (where the car system **1310** another vehicle component connected to the car system **1310** includes a microphone for receiving voice commands). Optionally, a microphone could be connected to the external audio input **1342** of the portable device **1324** for receiving voice commands. Any desired, spoken commands could be received by the integration subsystem **1332** and processed by the voice recognition subsystem **1336** into a format compatible with the device electronics **1334** of the portable device **1324** for execution thereby. For example, a user could speak a desired artist name, whereupon the voice recognition subsystem **1336** processes the spoken artist name into a digital format, passes the processed artist name to the integration subsystem **1332**, and the integration subsystem **1332** constructs a query command and passes the query command to the device electronics **1334** along with the processed artist name to the device electronics **1334**. The device electronics **1334** then queries the portable device **1324** for all songs (e.g., by searching ID3 tags associated with each song and stored in the portable device **1324**) having a matching artist name. The resulting list is then passed to the integration subsystem **1332**, whereupon the information is processed into a format compatible with the car system **1310**. Then, the information is transmitted to the car system **1310** via the wireless link **1322** or the non-wireless connection **1330** for display on the display **1318** of the car system **1310**.

Voice recognition could also be used to retrieve other media files, such as video clips that are stored on the portable device **1324.** Such files, one retrieved, could then be processed by the integration subsystem **1332** in the manner described herein, transmitted to the car system **1310** (via the wireless link **1322** or the non-wireless connection **1330**), and displayed on the display **1318** of the car system **1310**. An index of such files could also be generated by the integration subsystem **1332** for quick browsing and retrieval using car system **1310** or voice commands.

The speech synthesizer **1338** provides synthesized speech corresponding to data produced by the portable device **1324**. For example, track lists, artist names, song titles, and other information (e.g., video clip titles, movie titles, etc.) could be retrieved from the portable device **1324** by the integration subsystem **1332** (e.g., in response to a command issued by the user at the car system **1310** or a spoken command processed by the voice recognition subsystem **1336**), and synthesized speech corresponding to the retrieved information could be generated by the speech synthesizer **1338** using known text-to-speech software. The speech synthesizer **1338** could include the RC 8650 or RC 8660 speech synthesis chipsets manufactured by RC Systems, Inc., or any other suitable speech synthesizers. Synthesized speech could be transmitted to the car system **1310** via the wireless link **1322** or the non-wireless connection **1330** and played through the car system **1310**, or optionally, the speech could be channeled to an external device via the optional external audio output **1340**. It should be noted that the voice recognition subsystem **1336** and the speech synthesizer **1338** could be formed on a single integrated circuit forming part of the integration subsystem **1332**. Additionally, the integration subsystem **1332** provides full control of the portable device **1324** using the car system **1310** and exchange of data, audio, and video signals between the portable device **1324** and the car system **1310**, in the manner described herein.

FIG. 23 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1400**, wherein wireless integration is provide between a car audio and/or video system **1410** and a portable audio and/or video device **1424** and voice recognition and speech synthesis capabilities are provided. The components shown in **FIG. 23** are functionally identical to the components shown in **FIG. 22**, and reference numerals of corresponding components have been increased by 100. In this embodiment, the integration subsystem **1432** is positioned in the car system **1410**, which includes system electronics **1412**, an optional external interface port **1414**, a wireless interface **1416**, a display **1418**, and a control panel **1420**. The integration subsystem **1432** includes a voice recognition subsystem **1436** and a speech synthesizer **1438**, which provide the voice recognition and speech synthesis capabilities described above with reference to **FIG. 22**. The portable device **1424** includes a wireless interface **1426**, and optional external interface port **1428**, device electronics **1434**, an optional external audio output port **1440**, and an optional external audio input port **1442**.

FIG. 24 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention, indicated generally at **1450**, for wirelessly integrating a portable audio and/or video device for use with a car audio and/or video system. In step **1452**, a wireless link is established between the portable device and the car audio and/or video system. As discussed above, the wireless link could be any suitable wireless communications link, such as a Bluetooth wireless link, an IEEE 802.11 link, or any other suitable link. In step **1454**, the car audio and/or video system type is determined, such as the manufacturer name and/or model identifier. In step **1456**, the portable audio and/or video device type is identified, such as the manufacturer name and/or model identifier. In step **1458**, a protocol conversion software block is loaded from memory, based upon the corresponding device types of the car audio and/or video system and the portable audio and/or video device. The protocol conversion software block includes code for converting commands issued at the car audio and/or video system into a format compatible with the portable audio and/or video device, as well as code for converting data generated by the portable audio and/or video device into a format compatible with the car audio and/or video system.

In step **1460**, data generated by the portable audio and/or video device is processed by the protocol conversion software block. Then, in step **1466**, the processed data is transmitted to the car audio and/or video system for display thereon, using the wireless link. In step **1462**, audio and/or video signal generated by the portable audio and/or video device are channeled to the car audio and/or video system using the wireless link. In step **1464**, a determination is made as to whether commands from the car audio and/or video system are to be processed. If a negative determination is made, step **1458** is re-invoked. Otherwise, step **1468** is invoked, wherein the commands are processed using the protocol conversion software block. Then, in step **1470**, the processed commands are transmitted to the car audio and/or video system using the wireless link. Step **1458** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

Importantly, the present invention allows video files in any format (including video clips, movies, pictures, etc.) that are stored on a portable device to be displayed on one or more displays of a car audio and/or video system, and playback of such files to be controlled using the car audio and/or video system. Examples of such files include, but are not limited to, MPEG, WMV, AVI, JPEG, GIF, TIFF, MP4, or any other suitable video format. Such files could be stored on a cell phone, a portable media center, a portable media player, or any other portable device which is integrated by the present invention (through a wired or wireless connection) for use with a car audio and/or video system. Thus, for example, a video clip downloaded to a cellular telephone or a video clip stored on a portable device (e.g., an Apple video iPod) can be displayed on one or more displays of a car audio and/or video system. Further, the present invention allows for live video streams, such as live television video received by a cellular telephone or other portable device, to be displayed on one or more displays of the car audio and/or video system.

FIG. 25A is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1500**, wherein a digital camera **1515** is integrated for use with a car audiovisual system **1505**. The digital camera **1515** could comprise any commercially-available digital still or video camera, such as a point-and-shoot or single-lens-reflex (SLR) digital camera. The digital camera **1515** is in electrical communication with the interface **1510** via any suitable electrical connection, such as USB, USB2, Firewire (IEEE 1394), etc., or any suitable wireless connection, such as BLUETOOTH, IEEE 802.11 (WiFi), etc. The interface **1510** receives data from the digital camera **1515** (such photographs or video clips) and formats same for displaying on a display **1520** of the car audiovisual system **1505**. Instructions for controlling the digital camera **1515** can be entered using the control panel buttons **1525** of the car audiovisual system **1505**. The instructions are processed by the interface **1510**, converted into a format (protocol) compatible with the digital camera **1515**, and transmitted to the digital camera **1515** for processing thereby. Output signals from the digital camera **1515** containing still images, full motion video, or multimedia data can be channeled to the car audiovisual system **1505** via the interface **1510** and played through the display **1520** and/or speakers of the car audiovisual system **1505**. For example, a video file stored in the digital camera **1515** can be selected using the control panel buttons **1525**, which causes the digital camera **1515** to produce corresponding output signals that are processed by the interface **1510,** transmitted to the car audiovisual system **1505,** and displayed on the display **1520**. It should be noted that control of the digital camera **1515** can be performed using buttons on the car audiovisual system **1505**, or a software or graphically-driven menu or interface, such as a touch screen, as well as controls on the digital camera **1515** itself. The interface **1510** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed herein and modified for use with the digital camera **1515**, including, but not limited to a microcontroller programmed in accordance with the present invention as well as a video processing integrated circuit for converting video signals from the camera **1515** into video signals compatible with the car audiovisual system **1505**.

FIG. 25B is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **1530**, for integrating a digital camera with a car audiovisual system. Beginning at step **1535**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car audiovisual system is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **1540** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car audiovisual system to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **1545** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car audiovisual system is in a state responsive to signals external to the car audiovisual system. If a negative determination is made, step **1535** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **1545**, a digital camera handling process, indicated as block **1565**, is invoked. Beginning in step **1550**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a digital camera is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car audiovisual system. Importantly, this signal prevents the car audiovisual system from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **1555**, video and/or audio channels of the digital camera are connected (channeled) to the car audiovisual system. In step **1560**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the digital camera, such as title information corresponding to one or more files stored in the digital camera. For example, a list of files stored on the digital camera is presented on the display of the car audiovisual system for selection by a user. The user can then select a file, which could include a picture (.jpg, .gif, .tiff, etc.) or a video file (.wmv, .mpg, etc.), using the controls of the car audiovisual system, and display same on the display of the car audiovisual system. If conversion of the video signal is required, the present invention could convert the signal using any suitable video conversion circuitry (e.g., composite-to-RGB signal conversion, and/or vice versa) prior to displaying the signal on a display of the car audiovisual system. After steps **1550**, **1555**, and **1560** have been executed, control passes to step **1570**.

In step **1570**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car audiovisual system for digital camera operational instructions. In step **1575**, if an instruction is not detected, step **1570** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if an instruction is received, step **1580** is invoked, wherein the received instruction is converted into a format recognizable by the digital camera connected to the present invention. For example, after a user selects a particular file name presented on the display, an instruction to output video signals that correspond to the selected file is generated. Once the instruction has been formatted, step **1585** is invoked, wherein the formatted instruction is transmitted to the digital camera and executed thereby. Step **1550** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 26A is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1600**, wherein a portable navigation device **1615** (*e.g.*, a Garmin or Tom Tom GPS receiver, etc.) is integrated for use with a car audiovisual system **1605**. The portable navigation device **1615** is in electrical communication (e.g., wired or wireless communication, as discussed hereinabove using any suitable wired or wireless connection methodology) with the interface **1610**, which receives data from the portable navigation device **1615** and formats same for displaying on a display **1620** of the car audiovisual system **1605**. Instructions for controlling the portable navigation device **1615** can be entered using control panel buttons **1625** of the car audiovisual system **1605**. The instructions are processed by the interface **1610**, converted into a format (protocol) compatible with the portable navigation device **1615**, and transmitted to the portable navigation device **1615** for processing thereby. Maps and audio cues from the portable navigation device **1615** can be channeled to the car audiovisual system **1605** via the interface **1610** and played through the display **1620** and/or speakers of the car audiovisual system **1605**. For example, a driving destination may be specified using the control panel buttons **1625**, which causes a digital map file (or a portion thereof) stored in the portable navigation device **1615** to be presented on the display **1620,** and speech-synthesized driving instructions (generated by the portable navigation device **1615**) to be played through speakers of the car audiovisual system **1605**. It should be noted that control of the portable navigation device **1615** can be performed using buttons on the car audiovisual system **1605**, or a software or graphically-driven menu or interface, such as a touch screen, as well as controls on the portable navigation device **1615** itself. One or more interfaces could be connected to the interface **1610** ("daisy-chained") to allow multiple products to be integrated. The device **1600** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed herein and modified for use with the portable navigation device **1615**.

FIG. 26B is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **1630**, for integrating a portable navigation device with a car audiovisual system. Beginning in step **1635**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car audiovisual system is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **1640** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car audiovisual system to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **1645** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car audiovisual system is in a state responsive to signals external to the car audiovisual system. If a negative determination is made, step **1635** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **1645**, a portable navigation device handling process, indicated as block **1665**, is invoked. Beginning in step **1650**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a portable navigation device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car audiovisual system. Importantly, this signal prevents the car audiovisual system from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source.

In step **1655**, video and/or audio channels of the portable navigation device are connected (channeled) to the car audiovisual system. In step **1660**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the portable navigation device, such as a menu for specifying a driving destination, and presented on the display of the car audiovisual system. After steps **1650**, **1655**, and **1660** have been executed, control passes to step **1670**.

In step **1670**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car audiovisual system for portable navigation device operational instructions. In step **1675**, if an instruction is not detected, step **1670** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if an instruction is received, step **1680** is invoked, wherein the received instruction is converted into a format recognizable by the portable navigation device connected to the present invention. For example, an instruction for displaying driving directions to a driving destination could be issued from the car audiovisual system and converted into a format compatible with the portable navigation device. Once the instruction has been formatted, step **1685** is invoked, wherein the formatted instruction is transmitted to the portable navigation device and executed thereby. Step **1650** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 27 is a diagram showing another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **1700**, wherein the integration system of the present is embodied as an interface integrated circuit **1725** (e.g., a microcontroller) that could be supplied to a manufacturer of a car audiovisual system **1705** and installed within the car audiovisual system **1705**, at the time of manufacture of the car audiovisual system **1705** or thereafter. The integrated circuit **1725** could be fabricated as a single microchip, or a collection of associated microchips (e.g., a chipset). The integrated circuit **1725** is in electrical communication with the car audiovisual system electronics **1710** and an associated display **1715** and control panel buttons **1720**. The interface integrated circuit **1725** is also in electrical communication with a communications port **1730** (*e.g.*, FIREWIRE, CAN/CAN2, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, MOST, or D2B) which could be formed integrally with the car audiovisual system **1705**, e.g., accessible as a port on the front panel of the car audiovisual system **1705** (such as a USB port), or at some other location in a vehicle external to the car audiovisual system **1705** but in electrical communication therewith. Optionally, the interface integrated circuit **1725** could be in electrical communication with a wireless transceiver **1735** (*e.g.*, Bluetooth, IEEE 802.11, WiFi, WiMAX, EVDO, Wireless USB, or HyperLAN) and or one or more auxiliary communications ports **1740**, which could support the same or a different type of communications protocol as communications port **1730**. The wireless transceiver **1735** allows wireless communication of data, audio, and/or video between the interface integrated circuit **1725** and the portable music player **1745**.

A portable music player **1745** could be plugged directly into the communications port **1730** (e.g., using a USB or firewire connection) thereby placing the portable music player **1745** in electrical communication with the interface integrated circuit **1725**. The interface integrated circuit **1725** receives data, audio, and/or video from the portable music player **1745** through the communications port **1730** and formats the data for display on and/or playing through the car audiovisual system **1705**. Instructions for controlling the portable music player **1745** can be entered using the control panel buttons **1720** of the car audiovisual system **1705**. The instructions are processed by the interface integrated circuit **1725**, converted into a format (protocol) compatible with the portable music player **1745**, and transmitted through the communications port **1730** to the portable music player **1745** for processing thereby. Audio from the portable music player **1745** can be channeled to the car audiovisual system **1705** via the interface integrated circuit **1725** and played through the display **1715** and/or speakers of the car audiovisual system **1705**.

A music file stored in the portable music player **1745** may be selected using the control panel buttons **1720**, which causes corresponding audio signals from the portable music player **1745** to be played through speakers of the car audiovisual system **1705**. It should be noted that control of the portable music player **1745** is not limited to the use of buttons on the car stereo or video system **1720**, and indeed, a software or graphically-driven menu or interface can be used to control the portable music player **1745**. The car audiovisual system **1705** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed herein and modified for use with the portable music player **1740**.

It should also be noted that a manufacturer of audiovisual system **1705** could be provided with protocol conversion software built into the interface integrated circuit **1725** and a schematic diagram with instructions for installing the interface integrated circuit **1725** into existing car audiovisual **1705** systems. Alternatively, a functional equivalent of the interface integrated circuit **1725** could be provided in the form of a protocol conversion software product or a firmware upgrade, which is loaded into an existing car audiovisual system and used by a microprocessor therein to allow integration with third-party devices. In this case, the existing car audiovisual system would include a data port or a wireless transceiver for communicating with third-party devices. Optionally, the interface integrated circuit **1725** could be sold to portable device manufacturers and implemented within portable audio and/or video devices. Alternatively, a functional equivalent of the interface integrated circuit **1725** could be provided in the form of a protocol conversion software product or a firmware upgrade, which is loaded into an existing portable and/or video device and used by a microprocessor therein to allow integration with third-party devices, such as an existing car audiovisual system.

In all embodiments of the present invention, the interface could allow audio and/or video signals generated by a car audiovisual system (whether from a live signal received by the car audiovisual system or from a stored medium) to be ported from the car audiovisual system to a portable audio and/or video device for recording same in the portable device. For example, a live radio signal received by the car audiovisual system (e.g., a live FM station or a live satellite station) could be ported by the interface of the present invention to the portable device (via a wired or wireless connection) and recorded ("ripped") on the portable audio and/or video device in a suitable format, such as one or more MP3 files. Further, the interface allows audio and/or video signals generated by a portable audio and/or video device (whether from a live signal received by the portable device or from a stored medium) to be ported from the portable device to the car audiovisual system for recording same using the car audiovisual system.

The interface of the present invention could include circuitry for wirelessly charging a battery of a portable audio or video device. For example, the interface could include an inductive battery charging circuit which transmits electrical power to the portable device using induction, when the device is located near the interface. In such circumstances, the portable device would also include a corresponding inductive circuit which receives the transmitted electrical power and applies same to the battery of the portable device. Such a circuit could operate in a "trickle charge" mode, wherein a low voltage and amperage electrical current is delivered to the battery of the portable device over time to charge a battery. Also, transmission of power from the interface to the portable device could be accomplished through the use of radio frequency (RF) transmissions between the interface and the portable device. In situations where the interface is installed in a car audio or video system (as discussed herein), a wireless battery charging circuit could also be installed in the car audio or video system.

Having thus described the invention in detail, it is to be understood that the foregoing description is not intended to limit the spirit and scope thereof.

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audio system having a display associated therewith;

a portable device external to the car audio system;

a first wireless interface in communication with the car audio system;

a second wireless interface in communication with the portable device, the first and second wireless interfaces establishing a wireless communications link between the car audio system and the portable device; and

an integration subsystem for generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device, wherein the integration subsystem transmits the device presence signal to the car audio system, channels audio from the portable device to the car audio system using the wireless communications link, processes video information generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system, and transmits the processed video information to the car audio system using the wireless communications link for displaying the processed video information on the display of the car audio system.

2. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem processes data generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system and displays the processed data on the display of the car audio system.

3. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem receives control commands issued at the car audio system and transmitted over the wireless communications link, processes the commands into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches the processed commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

4. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a voice recognition subsystem for processing spoken control commands issued by a user.

5. The system of Claim 4, wherein the integration subsystem retrieves an audio file or a video file from the portable device in response to a spoken command.

6. The system of Claim 4, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

7. The system of Claim 1, wherein the car audio system comprises an OEM car audio system.

8. The system of Claim 1, wherein the car audio system comprises an after-market car audio system.

9. The system of Claim 1, wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver.

10. The system of Claim 10, wherein the portable receiver comprises a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, a high-definition (HD) radio receiver, or a satellite receiver.

11. The system of Claim 1, wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player.

12. The system of Claim 11, wherein the portable digital media player comprises a video device, a portable media center, a portable media player, an MP3 player, an MP4 player, a WMV player, an Apple iPod, or an Apple video iPod.

13. The system of Claim 1, wherein the portable device comprises a cellular telephone.

14. The system of Claim 1, further comprising a non-wireless connection established between the car audio system and the portable device for exchanging data, commands, audio and video signals between the car audio system and the portable device.

15. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the portable device.

16. The system of Claim 1, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the car audio system.

17. The system of Claim 1, wherein the video information comprises a video file stored on the portable device.

18. The system of Claim 1, wherein the video information comprises a picture stored on the portable device.

19. The system of Claim 1, wherein the video information comprises a television signal received by the portable device.

20. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car video system having a display associated therewith;

a portable device external to the car video system;

a first wireless interface in communication with the car video system;

a second wireless interface in communication with the portable device, the first and second wireless interfaces establishing a wireless communications link between the car video system and the portable device; and

an integration subsystem for generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car video system in a state responsive to the portable device, wherein the integration subsystem transmits the device presence signal to the car video system, channels audio from the portable device to the car video system using the wireless communications link, processes video information generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system, and transmits the processed video information to the car video system using the wireless communications link for displaying the processed video information on the display of the car video system.

21. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem processes data generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system and displays the processed data on the display of the car video system.

22. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem receives control commands issued at the car video system and transmitted over the wireless communications link, processes the commands into a format compatible with the portable

device, and dispatches the processed commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

23. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a voice recognition subsystem for processing spoken control commands issued by a user.

24. The system of Claim 23, wherein the integration subsystem retrieves an audio file or a video file from the portable device in response to a spoken command.

25. The system of Claim 23, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

26. The system of Claim 20, wherein the car video system comprises an OEM car video system.

27. The system of Claim 20, wherein the car video system comprises an after-market car video system.

28. The system of Claim 20, wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver.

29. The system of Claim 28, wherein the portable receiver comprises a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, a high-definition (HD) radio receiver, or a satellite receiver.

30. The system of Claim 20, wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player.

31. The system of Claim 30, wherein the portable digital media player comprises a video device, a portable media center, a portable media player, an MP3 player, an MP4 player, a WMV player, an Apple iPod, or an Apple video iPod.

32. The system of Claim 20, wherein the portable device comprises a cellular telephone.

33. The system of Claim 20, further comprising a non-wireless connection established between the car video system and the portable device for exchanging data, commands, audio and video signals between the car video system and the portable device.

34. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the portable device.

35. The system of Claim 20, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the car video system.

36. The system of Claim 20, wherein the video information comprises a video file stored on the portable device.

37. The system of Claim 20, wherein the video information comprises a picture stored on the portable device.

38. The system of Claim 20, wherein the video information comprises a television signal received by the portable device.

39. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audio system;

a portable device external to the car audio system;

a docking slot formed in the car audio system for receiving the portable device and establishing electrical communication between the car audio system and the portable device; and

an integration subsystem for generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device, wherein the integration subsystem receives data generated by the portable device, processes the data into a format compatible with the car audio system, and transmits the processed data, the device presence signal, and audio signals to the car audio system.

40. The system of Claim 39, wherein the processed data is displayed on a display of the car audio system.

41. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem processes a video file stored on the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system and transmits the video file to the car audio system for displaying the video file on a display of the car audio system.

42. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem receives control commands issued at the car audio system, processes the commands into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches the processed commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

43. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a voice recognition subsystem for processing spoken control commands issued by a user.

44. The system of Claim 43, wherein the integration subsystem retrieves an audio file or a video file from the portable device in response to a spoken command.

45. The system of Claim 43, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

46. The system of Claim 39, wherein the car audio system comprises an OEM car audio system.

47. The system of Claim 39, wherein the car audio system comprises an after-market car audio system.

48. The system of Claim 39, wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver.

49. The system of Claim 48, wherein the portable receiver comprises a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, a high-definition (HD) radio receiver, or a satellite receiver.

50. The system of Claim 39, wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player.

51. The system of Claim 50, wherein the portable digital media player comprises a video device, a portable media center, a portable media player, an MP3 player, an MP4 player, a WMV player, an Apple iPod, or an Apple video iPod.

52. The system of Claim 39, wherein the portable device comprises a cellular telephone.

53. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the portable device.

54. The system of Claim 39, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the car audio system.

55. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car video system;

a portable device external to the car video system;

a docking slot formed in the car video system for receiving the portable device and establishing electrical communication between the car video system and the portable device; and

an integration subsystem for generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car video system in a state responsive to the portable device, wherein the integration subsystem receives data generated by the portable device, processes the data into a format compatible with the car video system, and transmits the processed data, the device presence signal, audio signals, and video signals to the car video system.

56. The system of Claim 55, wherein the processed data is displayed on a display of the car video system.

57. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem processes a video file stored on the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system and transmits the video file to the car video system for displaying the video file on a display of the car video system.

58. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem receives control commands issued at the car video system, processes the commands into a format compatible with the portable device, and dispatches the processed commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

59. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a voice recognition subsystem for processing spoken control commands issued by a user.

60. The system of Claim 59, wherein the integration subsystem retrieves an audio file or a video file from the portable device in response to a spoken command.

61. The system of Claim 59, wherein the integration subsystem further comprises a speech synthesizer for generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

62. The system of Claim 55, wherein the car video system comprises an OEM car video system.

63. The system of Claim 55, wherein the car video system comprises an after-market car video system.

64. The system of Claim 55, wherein the portable device comprises a portable receiver.

65. The system of Claim 64, wherein the portable receiver comprises a digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, a high-definition (HD) radio receiver, or a satellite receiver.

66. The system of Claim 55, wherein the portable device comprises a portable digital media player.

67. The system of Claim 66, wherein the portable digital media player comprises a video device, a portable media center, a portable media player, an MP3 player, an MP4 player, a WMV player, an Apple iPod, or an Apple video iPod.

68. The system of Claim 55, wherein the portable device comprises a cellular telephone.

69. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the portable device.

70. The system of Claim 55, wherein the integration subsystem is positioned within the car video system.

71. A method for wirelessly integrating a portable device for use with a car audio system comprising:

establishing a wireless communications link between the car audio system and the portable device;

generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car audio system in a state responsive to the portable device;

transmitting the device presence signal to the car audio system over the wireless communications link;

processing video information generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system;

transmitting the processed video information and audio signals generated by the portable device to the car audio system over the wireless communications link;

displaying the processed video information on a display of the car audio system; and

playing the audio signals over the car audio system.

72. The method of Claim 71, further comprising processing data generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car audio system.

73. The method of Claim 72, further comprising transmitting the processed data over the wireless communications link to the car audio system.

74. The method of Claim 73, further comprising displaying the processed data on a display of the car audio system.

75. The method of Claim 71, further comprising transmitting control commands issued by a user at the car audio system over the wireless communications link.

76. The method of Claim 75, further comprising receiving the control commands at the portable device and processing the control commands into a format compatible with the portable device.

77. The method of Claim 76, further comprising dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

78. The method of Claim 71, further comprising receiving spoken control commands with a voice recognition subsystem and processing the spoken control commands into a format compatible with the portable device.

79. The method of Claim 78, further comprising dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

80. The method of Claim 71, further comprising generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

81. A method for wirelessly integrating a portable device for use with a car video system comprising:

establishing a wireless communications link between the car video system and the portable device;

generating a device presence signal for maintaining the car video system in a state responsive to the portable device;

transmitting the device presence signal to the car video system over the wireless communications link;

processing video information generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system;

transmitting the processed video information and audio signals generated by the portable device to the car video system over the wireless communications link;

displaying the processed video information on a display of the car video system; and

playing the audio signals over the car video system.

82. The method of Claim 81, further comprising processing data generated by the portable device into a format compatible with the car video system.

83. The method of Claim 82, further comprising transmitting the processed data over the wireless communications link to the car video system.

84. The method of Claim 83, further comprising displaying the processed data on a display of the car video system.

85. The method of Claim 81, further comprising transmitting control commands issued by a user at the car video system over the wireless communications link.

86. The method of Claim 85, further comprising receiving the control commands at the portable device and processing the control commands into a format compatible with the portable device.

87. The method of Claim 86, further comprising dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

88. The method of Claim 81, further comprising receiving spoken control commands with a voice recognition subsystem and processing the spoken control commands into a format compatible with the portable device.

89. The method of Claim 88, further comprising dispatching the processed control commands to the portable device for execution thereby.

90. The method of Claim 81, further comprising generating synthesized speech corresponding to data generated by the portable device.

91. A docking station for docking and integrating a portable device for use with a car stereo, comprising:

a base portion;

a bottom member connected to the base portion;

a top member removably connected to the base portion, the base portion, bottom member, and top member defining a cavity for receiving a portable device; and an integration device connected to the base portion for integrating the portable device with a car stereo.

92. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audiovisual system having a display associated therewith;

a cellular telephone external to the car audiovisual system, the cellular telephone including a receiver for receiving a broadcast radio transmission transmitted to the cellular telephone; and

an interface in communication with the car audiovisual system and the cellular telephone, wherein the interface generates and transmits a device presence signal to the car audiovisual system to maintain same in a state responsive to the cellular telephone, processes the broadcast radio transmission received by the cellular telephone into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmits the processed broadcast radio transmission to the car audiovisual system for playing thereby.

93. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 92, wherein the broadcast radio transmission comprises a satellite radio transmission received by the cellular telephone.

94. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 92, wherein the broadcast radio transmission comprises a live radio transmission from a radio station.

95. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 92, wherein the broadcast radio transmission comprises a streamed audio transmission received by the cellular telephone.

96. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 92, wherein the broadcast radio transmission comprises a video transmission received by the cellular telephone.

97. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 96, wherein the video transmission comprises a live video transmission.

98. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 96, wherein the video transmission comprises a streamed video transmission.

99. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 96, wherein the interface processes the video transmission into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system and transmits the processed video transmission to the car audiovisual system for display thereon.

100. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 92, wherein the interface receives control commands issued at the car audiovisual system, processes the control commands into a format compatible with the cellular telephone, and transmit processed control commands to the cellular telephone for execution thereby.

101. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 92, wherein the interface processes navigational information received by the cellular telephone into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmits processed navigational information to the car audiovisual system for display thereon.

102. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 101, wherein the navigational information comprises a road map.

103. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 101, wherein the navigational information comprises a Global Positioning System (GPS) map.

104. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audiovisual system;

a digital camera external to the car audiovisual system; and

an interface in electrical communication with the car audiovisual system and the digital camera, wherein the interface generates and transmits a device presence signal to the car audiovisual system to maintain same in a state responsive to the digital camera, processes output signals generated by the digital camera into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmits the processed output signals to the car audiovisual system for display thereby.

105. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 104, wherein the interface transmits audio signals generated by the digital camera device to the car audiovisual system for playing thereby.

106. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 104, wherein the interface receives control commands issued at the car audiovisual system, processes the control commands into a format compatible with the digital camera, and transmits processed control commands to the digital camera for execution thereby.

107. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 104, wherein the output signal comprises a still video image.

108. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 104, wherein the output signal comprises a full motion video clip.

109. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 104, wherein the output signal comprises a live video signal.

110. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 104, wherein the output signal comprises a streaming video signal.

111. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audiovisual system;

a portable navigation device external to the car audiovisual system;

an interface in electrical communication with the car audiovisual system and the portable navigation device, wherein the interface processes video and data signals generated by the portable navigation device into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmits the processed video and data signals to the car audiovisual system for display thereby.

112. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 111, wherein the interface receives control commands issued at the car audiovisual system, processes the control commands into a format compatible with the portable navigation device, and transmits processed control commands to the portable navigation device for execution thereby.

113. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 111, wherein the portable navigation system comprises a portable Global Positioning System (GPS) device.

114. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 111, wherein the video signals comprise a map generated by the portable navigation device and displayed on the car audiovisual system.

115. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 111, wherein the interface transmits audio signals generated by the portable navigation device to the car audiovisual system for playing thereby.

116. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 115, wherein the audio signals comprise synthesized speech generated by the portable navigation device.

117. A multimedia device integration system, comprising:

a car audiovisual system;

an after-market, portable audiovisual device external to the car audiovisual system; and

an interface integrated circuit installed in the portable audiovisual device and in communication with the car audiovisual system and the portable audiovisual device, the interface integrated circuit generating and transmitting a device presence signal for maintaining the car audiovisual signal in a state responsive to the portable audiovisual device and transmitting audio signals from the portable audiovisual device to the car audiovisual system for playing thereon.

118. The system of Claim 117, wherein the interface integrated circuit receives control commands issued at the car audiovisual system, processes the control commands into a format compatible with the portable audiovisual device, and transmits processed control commands to the portable audiovisual device for execution thereby.

119. The system of Claim 117, wherein the interface integrated circuit receives data generated by the portable audiovisual device, processes the data into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmits processed data to the portable audiovisual device for display thereby.

120. The system of Claim 117, wherein the interface integrated circuit receives video signals generated by the portable audiovisual device, processes the video signals into a

format compatible with the car audiovisual device, and transmits processed video signals to the car audiovisual device for display thereby.

121. The system of Claim 117, further comprising a communications port operatively associated with the interface integrated circuit and allowing communications between the interface integrated circuit and the portable audiovisual device.

122. The system of Claim 121, wherein the communications port comprises a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port.

123. The system of Claim 117, further comprising a wireless transceiver operatively associated with the interface integrated circuit and allowing wireless communications between the interface integrated circuit and the portable audiovisual device.

124. The system of Claim 123, wherein the wireless transceiver comprises a WiFi, Bluetooth, or IEEE 802.11 transceiver.

125. The system of Claim 117, wherein the integrated circuit transmits audio signals generated by the portable audiovisual device to the car audiovisual system for recording by the car audiovisual system.

126. The system of Claim 117, wherein the integrated circuit transmits audio signals generated by the car audiovisual system to the portable audiovisual device for recording by the portable audiovisual device.

127. The system of Claim 117, wherein the integrated circuit transmits video signals generated by the portable audiovisual device to the car audiovisual system for recording by the car audiovisual system.

128. The system of Claim 117, wherein the integrated circuit transmits video signals generated by the car audiovisual system to the portable audiovisual device for recording by the portable audiovisual device.

129. The system of Claim 117, wherein the integrated circuit comprises a single microchip.

130. The system of Claim 117, wherein the integrated circuit comprises a chipset.

131. The system of Claim 117, wherein the integrated circuit comprises a microprocessor of the car audiovisual system.

132. A multimedia device integration system, comprising:

a car audiovisual system;

an after-market, portable audiovisual device external to the car audiovisual system; and

an interface integrated circuit installed in the car audiovisual system and in communication with the car audiovisual system and the portable audiovisual device, the interface integrated circuit generating and transmitting a device presence signal for maintaining the car audiovisual system in a state responsive to the portable audiovisual device and transmitting audio signals from the portable audiovisual device to the car audiovisual system for playing thereby.

133. The system of Claim 132, wherein the interface integrated circuit receives control commands issued at the car audiovisual system, processes the control commands into a format compatible with the portable audiovisual device, and transmits processed control commands to the portable audiovisual device for execution thereby.

134. The system of Claim 132, wherein the interface integrated circuit receives data generated by the portable audiovisual device, processes the data into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmits processed data to the portable audiovisual device for display thereby.

135. The system of Claim 132, wherein the interface integrated circuit receives video signals generated by the portable audiovisual device, processes the video signals into a format compatible with the car audiovisual device, and transmits processed video signals to the car audiovisual device for display thereby.

136. The system of Claim 132, further comprising a communications port operatively associated with the interface integrated circuit and allowing communications between the interface integrated circuit and the portable audiovisual device.

137. The system of Claim 136, wherein the communications port comprises a Universal Serial Bus (USB) port.

138. The system of Claim 132, further comprising a wireless transceiver operatively associated with the interface integrated circuit and allowing wireless communications between the interface integrated circuit and the portable audiovisual device.

139. The system of Claim 138, wherein the wireless transceiver comprises a WiFi, Bluetooth, or IEEE 802.11 transceiver.

140. The system of Claim 132, wherein the integrated circuit transmits audio signals generated by the portable audiovisual device to the car audiovisual system for recording by the car audiovisual system.

141. The system of Claim 132, wherein the integrated circuit transmits audio signals generated by the car audiovisual system to the portable audiovisual device for recording by the portable audiovisual device.

142. The system of Claim 132, wherein the integrated circuit transmits video signals generated by the portable audiovisual device to the car audiovisual system for recording by the car audiovisual system.

143. The system of Claim 132, wherein the integrated circuit transmits video signals generated by the car audiovisual system to the portable audiovisual device for recording by the portable audiovisual device.

144. The system of Claim 142, wherein the integrated circuit comprises a single microchip.

145. The system of Claim 142, wherein the integrated circuit comprises a chipset.

146. The system of Claim 132, wherein the integrated circuit comprises a microprocessor of the car audiovisual system.

147. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audiovisual system;

a portable audio device external to the car audiovisual system;

an interface in communication with the car audiovisual system and the portable audio device, the interface generating and transmitting a device presence signal to the car audiovisual system to maintain the car audiovisual system in a state responsive to the portable audio device, the interface transmitting audio signals from the portable audio device to the car audiovisual system; and

a charging circuit for inductively charging a battery of the portable audio device

148. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 147, wherein the charging circuit comprises a first inductive charging circuit operatively associated with the interface and a second inductive charging circuit operatively associated with the portable audio device, the first and second inductive charging circuits inductively coupled to each other to transmit electrical power therebetween.

149. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 147, wherein the interface receives video signals from the portable audio device, processes same into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmits processed video signals to the car audiovisual system for display thereby.

150. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 147, wherein the interface receives control commands issued at the car audiovisual system, processes same into a format compatible with the portable audio device, and transmits processed control commands to the portable audio device for execution thereby.

151. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audiovisual system;

a portable audio device external to the car audiovisual system;

an interface in communication with the car audiovisual system and the portable audio device, the interface generating and transmitting a device presence signal to the car audiovisual system to maintain the car audiovisual system in a state responsive to the portable audio device, the interface transmitting audio signals from the portable audio device to the car audiovisual system; and a charging circuit for wirelessly charging a battery of the portable audio device

152. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 151, wherein the charging circuit comprises a first wireless charging circuit operatively associated with the interface and a second wireless charging circuit operatively associated with the portable audio device, the first and second wireless charging circuits wirelessly coupled to each other to transmit electrical power therebetween.

153. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 151, wherein the interface receives video signals from the portable audio device, processes same into a format compatible with the car audiovisual system, and transmits processed video signals to the car audiovisual system for display thereby.

154. The multimedia device integration system of Claim 151, wherein the interface receives control commands issued at the car audiovisual system, processes same into a format compatible with the portable audio device, and transmits processed control commands to the portable audio device for execution thereby.

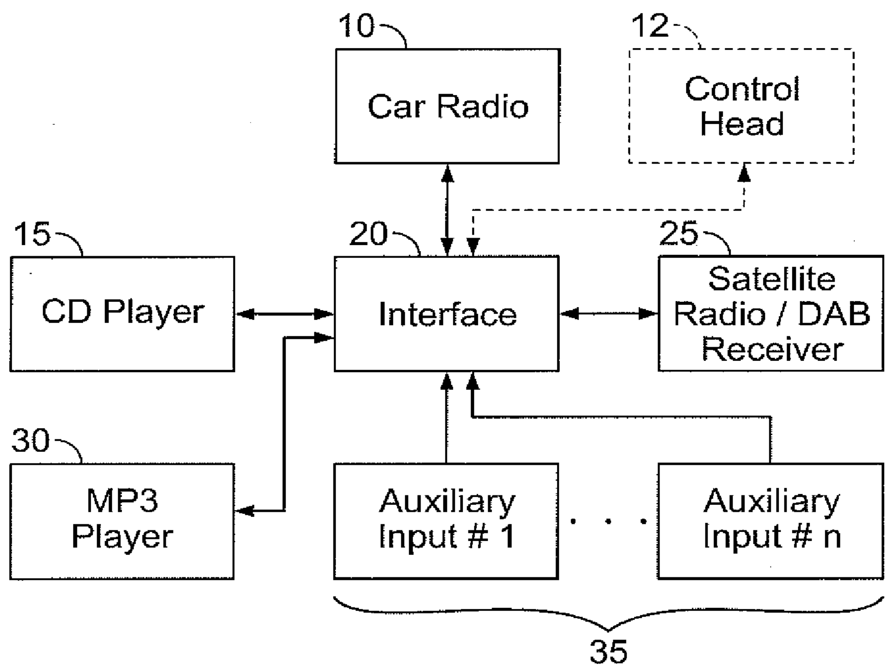

10
Car Radio
12
Control Head
15
CD Player
20
Interface
25
Satellite Radio / DAB Receiver
30
MP3 Player
Auxiliary Input # 1
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 1

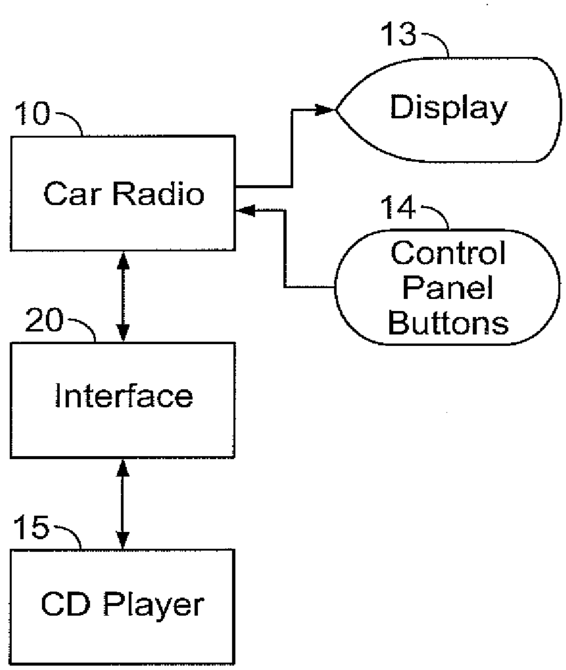

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
15
CD Player

FIG. 2A

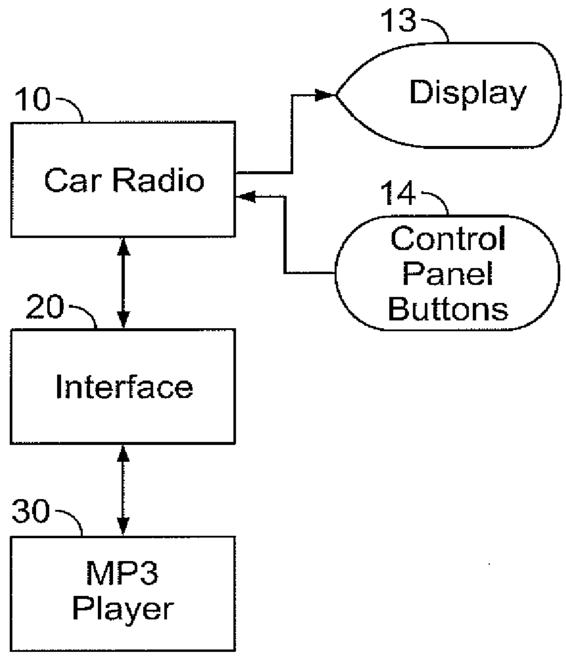

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
30
MP3 Player

FIG. 2B

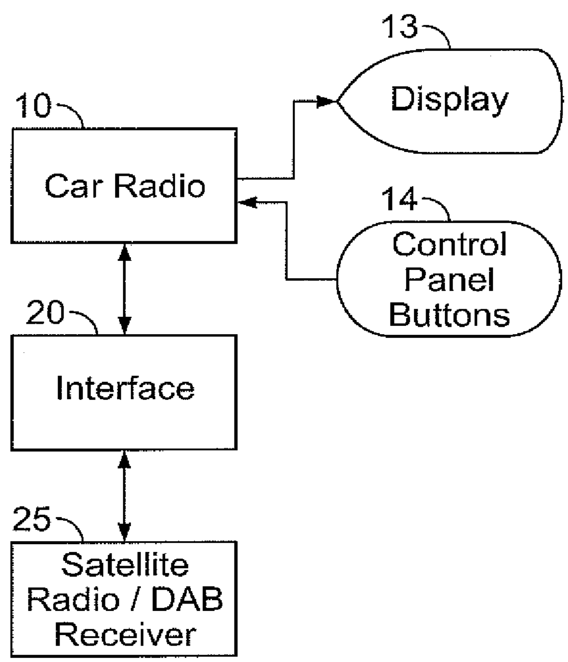

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
25
Satellite Radio / DAB Receiver

FIG. 2C

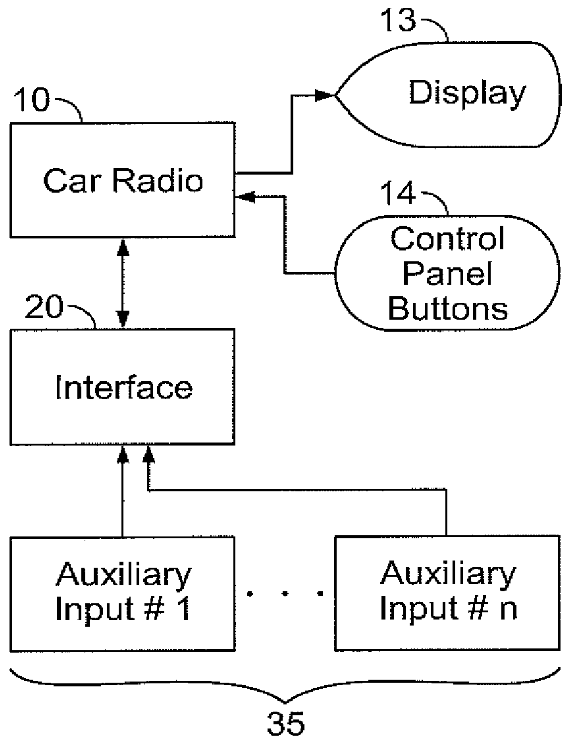

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
Auxiliary Input # 1
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 2D

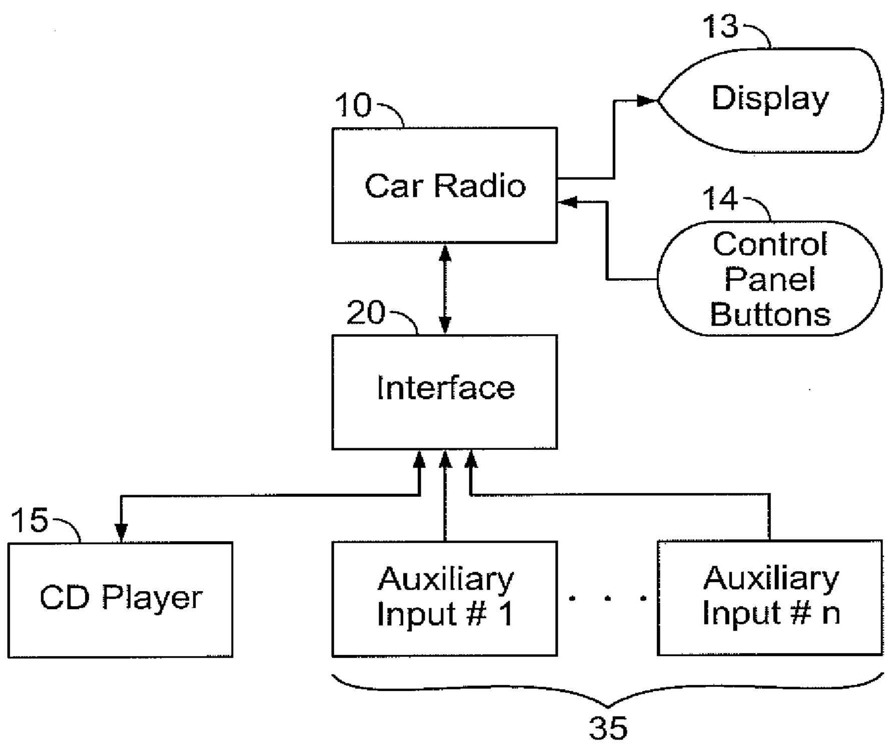

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
15
CD Player
Auxiliary Input # 1
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 2E

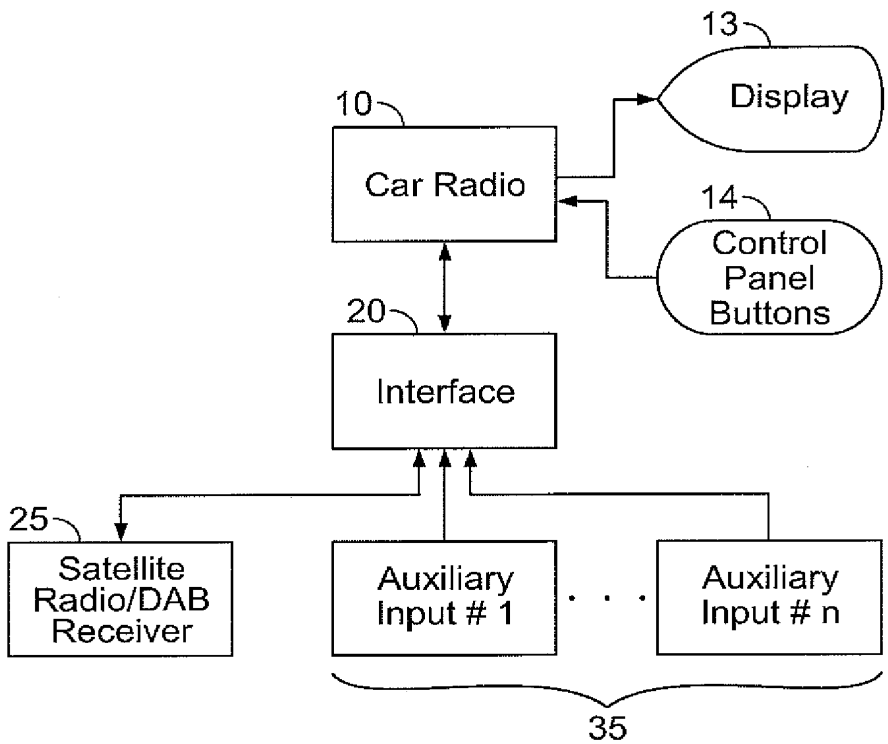

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
25
Satellite Radio/DAB Receiver
Auxiliary Input # 1
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 2F

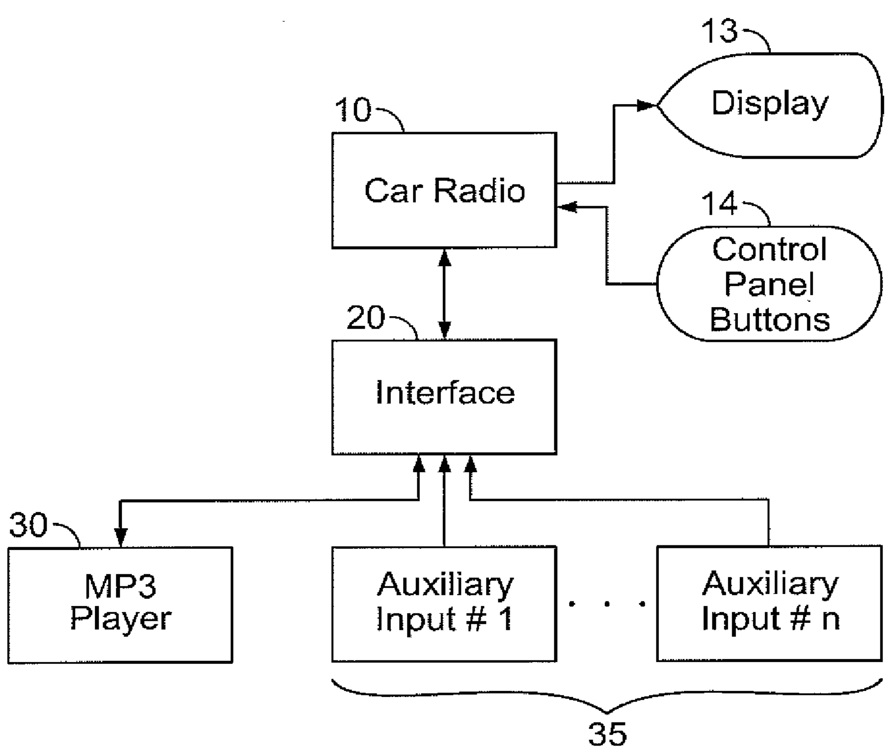

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
30
MP3 Player
Auxiliary Input # 1
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 2G

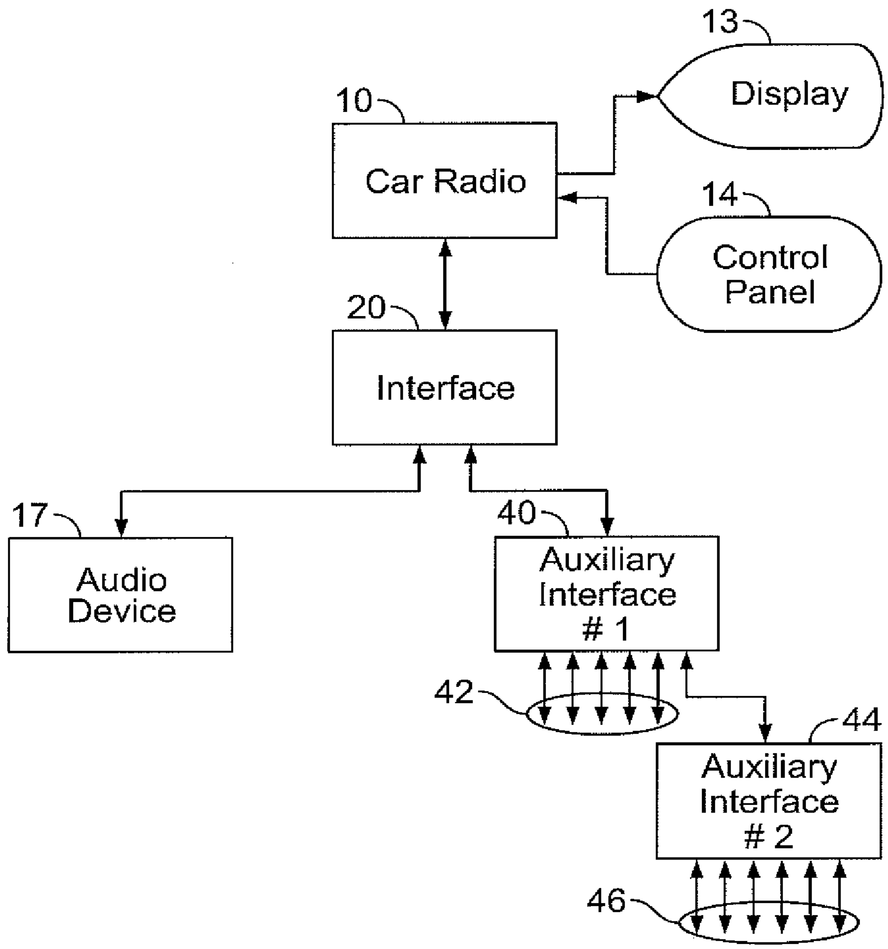
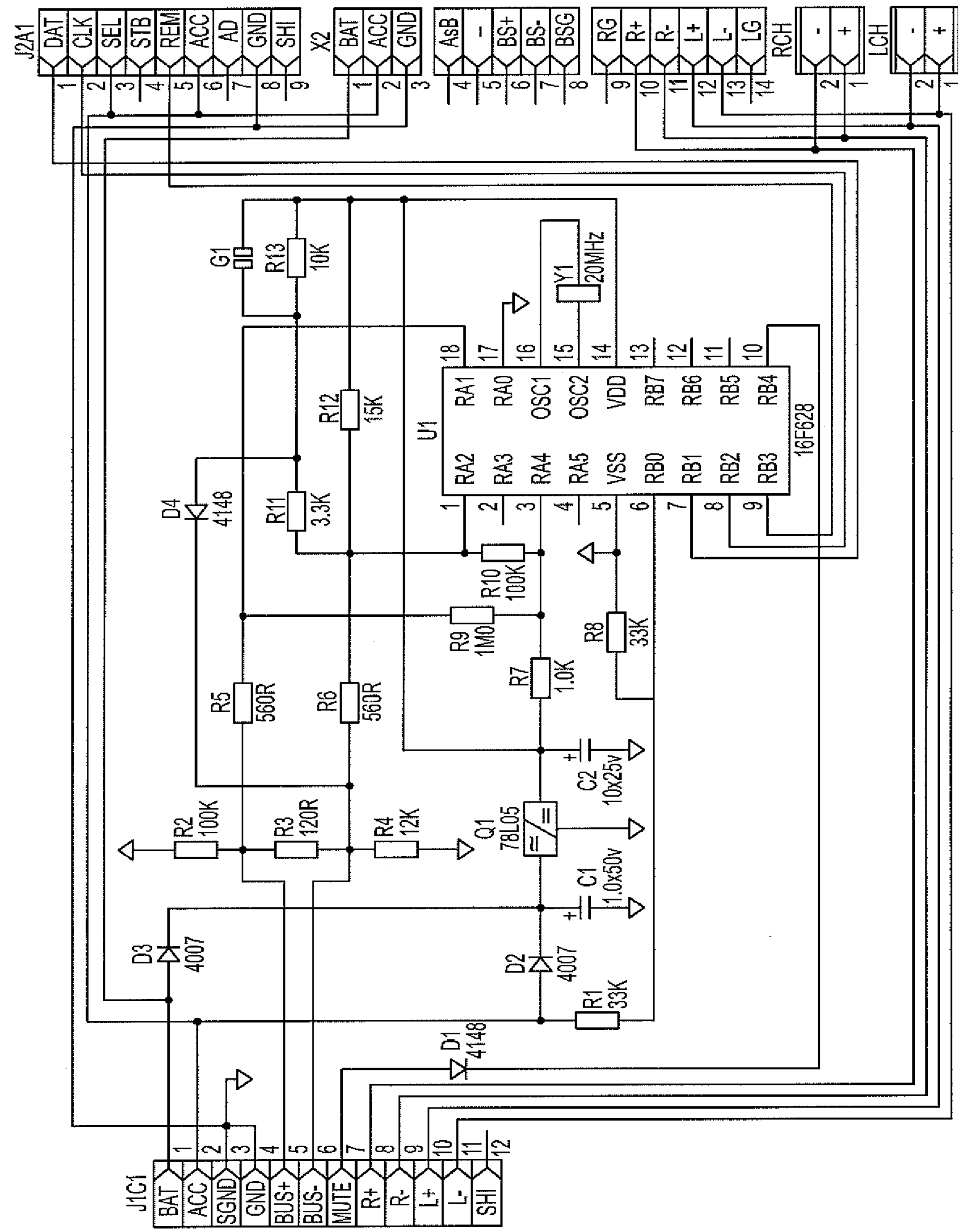

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel
20
Interface
17
Audio Device
40
Auxiliary Interface # 1
42
44
Auxiliary Interface # 2
46

FIG. 2H

6/41


J2A1
DAT
CLK
SEL
STB
REM
ACC
AD
GND
SHI
X2
BAT
ACC
GND
AsB
-
BS+
BS-
BSG
RG
R+
R-
L+
L-
LG
RCH
LCH
G1
R13
10K
R12
15K
R11
3.3K
D4
4148
U1
16F628
RA1
RA0
OSC1
OSC2
VDD
RB7
RB6
RB5
RB4
RA2
RA3
RA4
RA5
VSS
RB0
RB1
RB2
RB3
Y1
20MHz
R10
100K
R9
1M0
R8
33K
R7
1.0K
R5
560R
R6
560R
C2
10x25v
R2
100K
R3
120R
R4
12K
Q1
78L05
C1
1.0x50v
D3
4007
D2
4007
R1
33K
D1
4148
J1C1
BAT
ACC
SGND
GND
BUS+
BUS-
MUTE
R+
R-
L+
L-
SHI

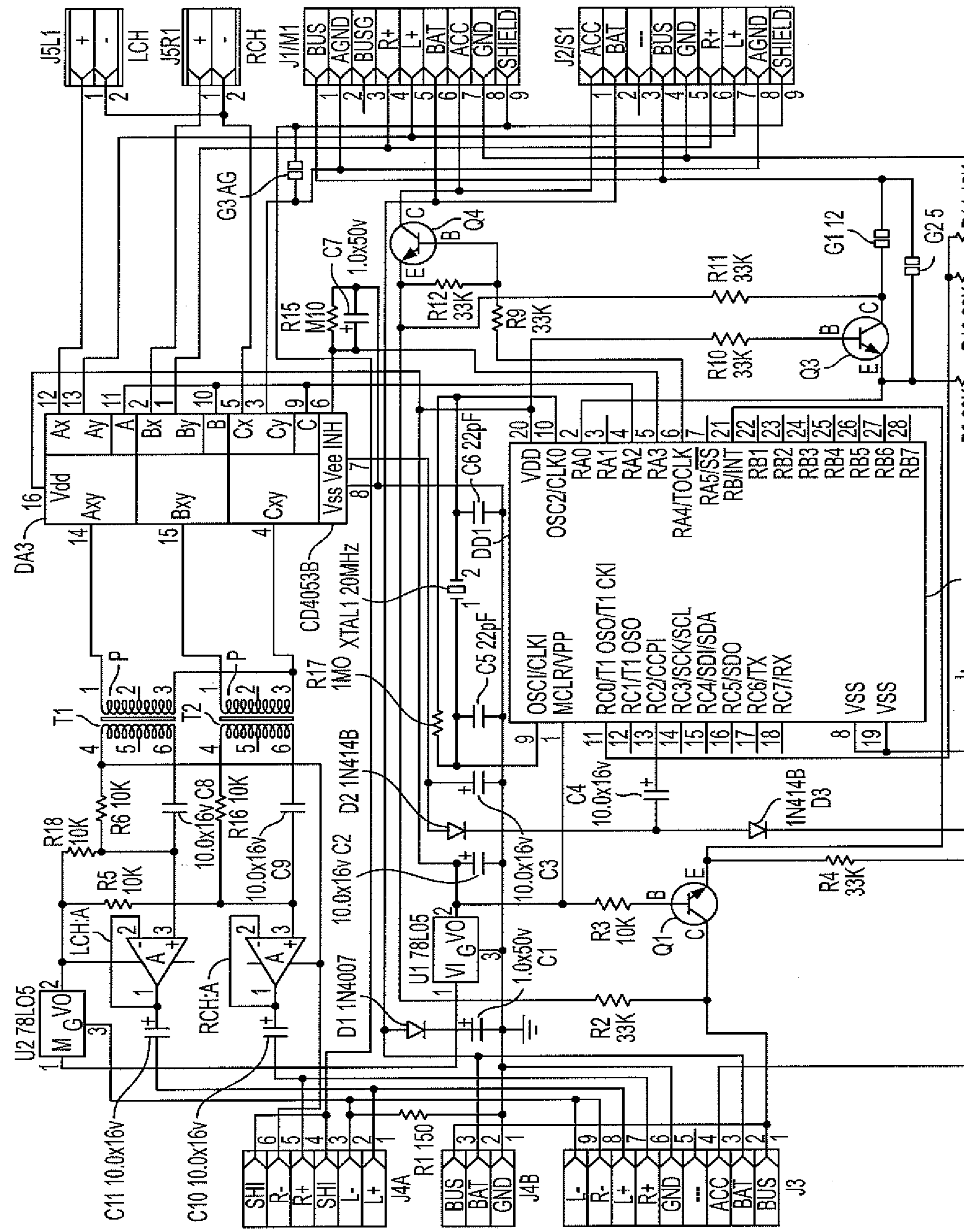
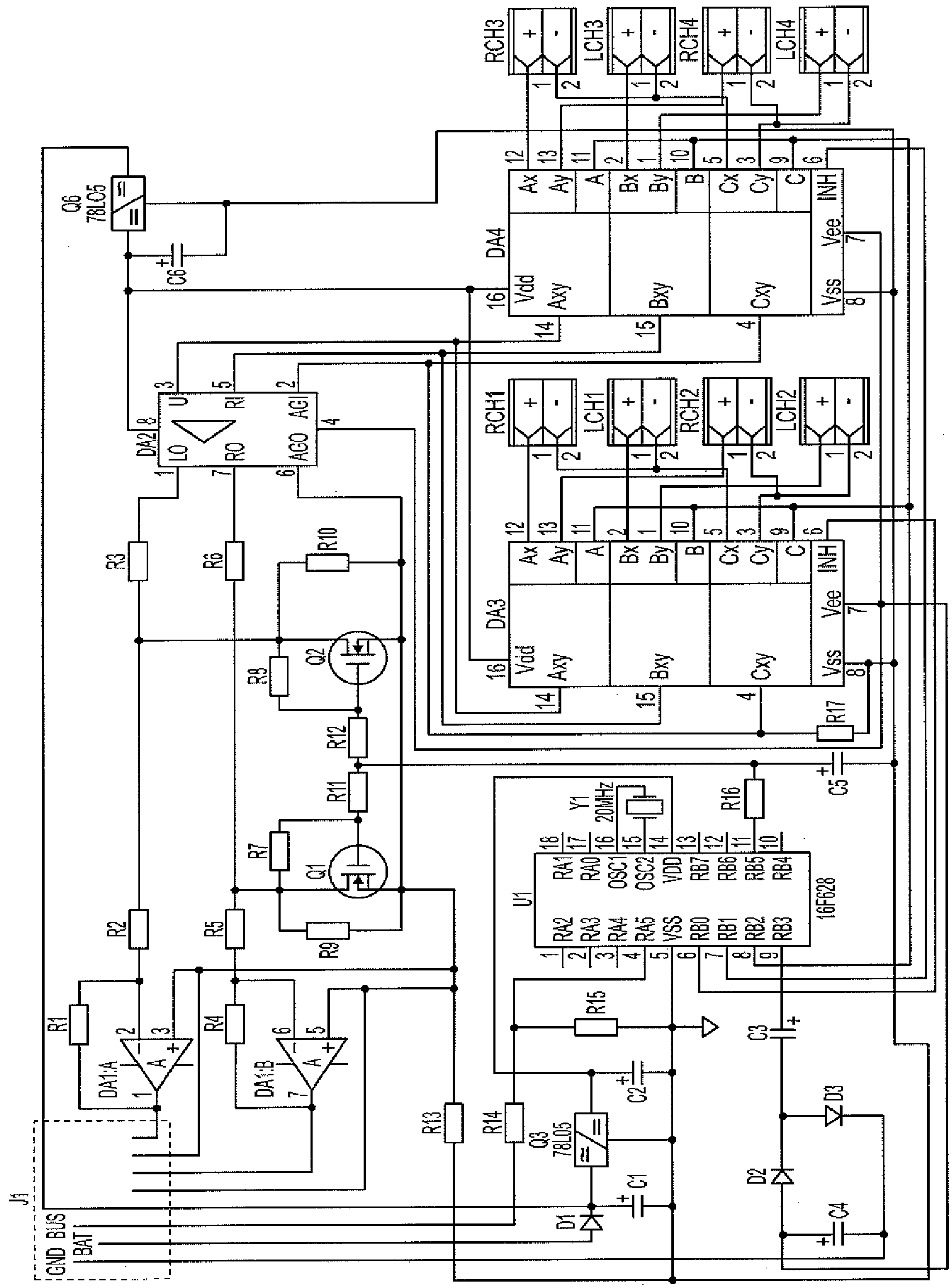


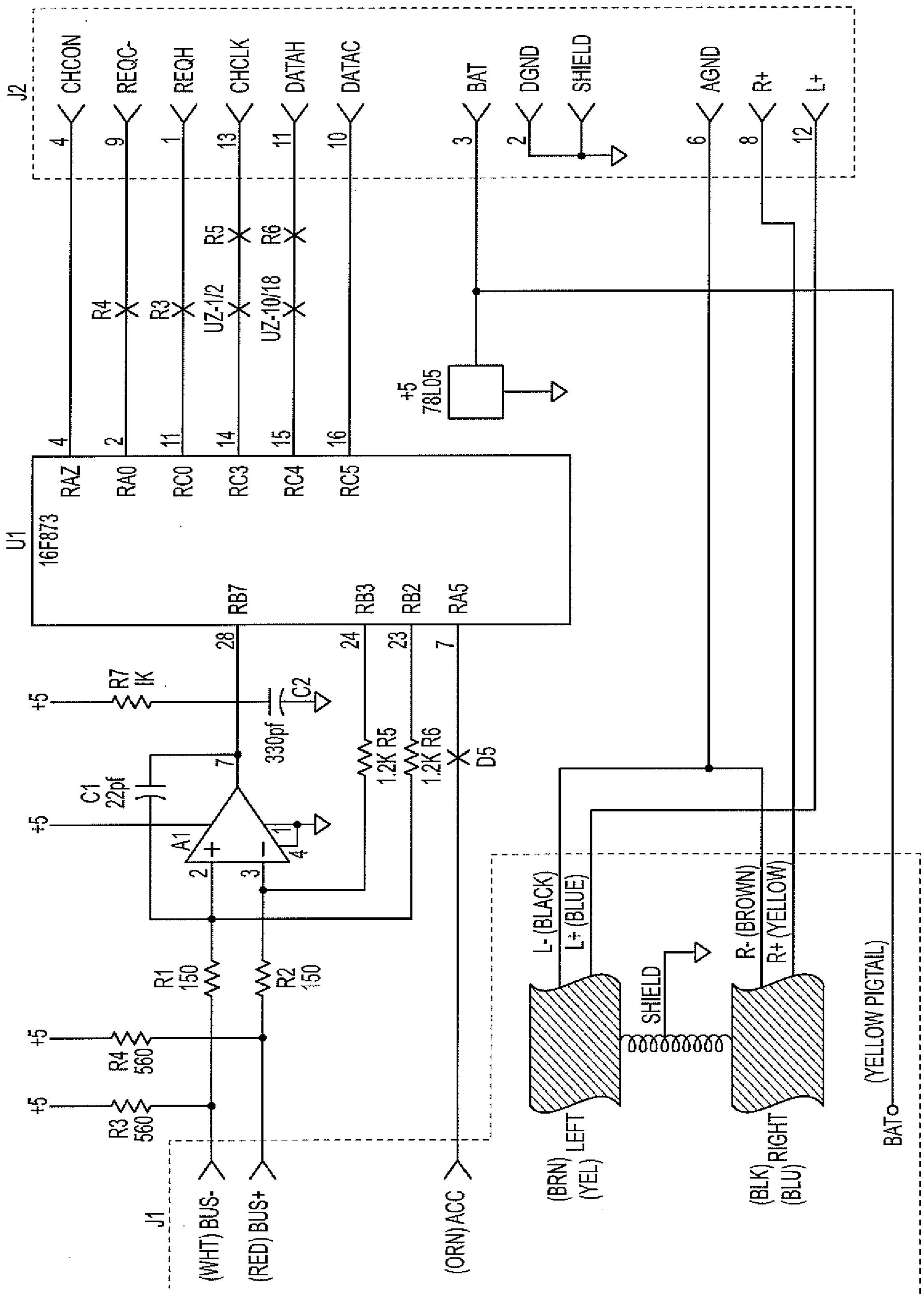
FIG. 3B

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

8/41


RCH3
LCH3
RCH4
LCH4
RCH1
LCH1
RCH2
LCH2
Q6
78L05
C6
DA4
Ax
Ay
A
Bx
By
B
Cx
Cy
C
INH
Vdd
Axy
Bxy
Cxy
Vss
Vee
DA3
DA2
LO
U
RI
RO
AGI
AGO
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7
R8
R9
R10
R11
R12
R13
R14
R15
R16
R17
Q1
Q2
Q3
78L05
DA1:A
DA1:B
U1
16F628
RA2
RA3
RA4
RA5
VSS
RB0
RB1
RB2
RB3
RA1
RA0
OSC1
OSC2
VDD
RB7
RB6
RB5
RB4
Y1
20MHz
C1
C2
C3
C4
C5
D1
D2
D3
J1
GND
BUS
BAT

9/41


J2
CHCON
REQC-
REQH
CHCLK
DATAH
DATAC
BAT
DGND
SHIELD
AGND
R+
L+
R4
R3
UZ-1/2
UZ-10/18
R5
R6
+5
78L05
U1
16F873
RAZ
RA0
RC0
RC3
RC4
RC5
RB7
RB3
RB2
RA5
+5
R7
IK
C2
330pf
C1
22pf
A1
1.2K R5
1.2K R6
D5
R1
150
R2
150
R4
560
R3
560
J1
(WHT) BUS-
(RED) BUS+
(ORN) ACC
L- (BLACK)
L+ (BLUE)
R- (BROWN)
R+ (YELLOW)
SHIELD
(YELLOW PIGTAIL)
(BRN) LEFT
(YEL)
(BLK) RIGHT
(BLU)
BAT

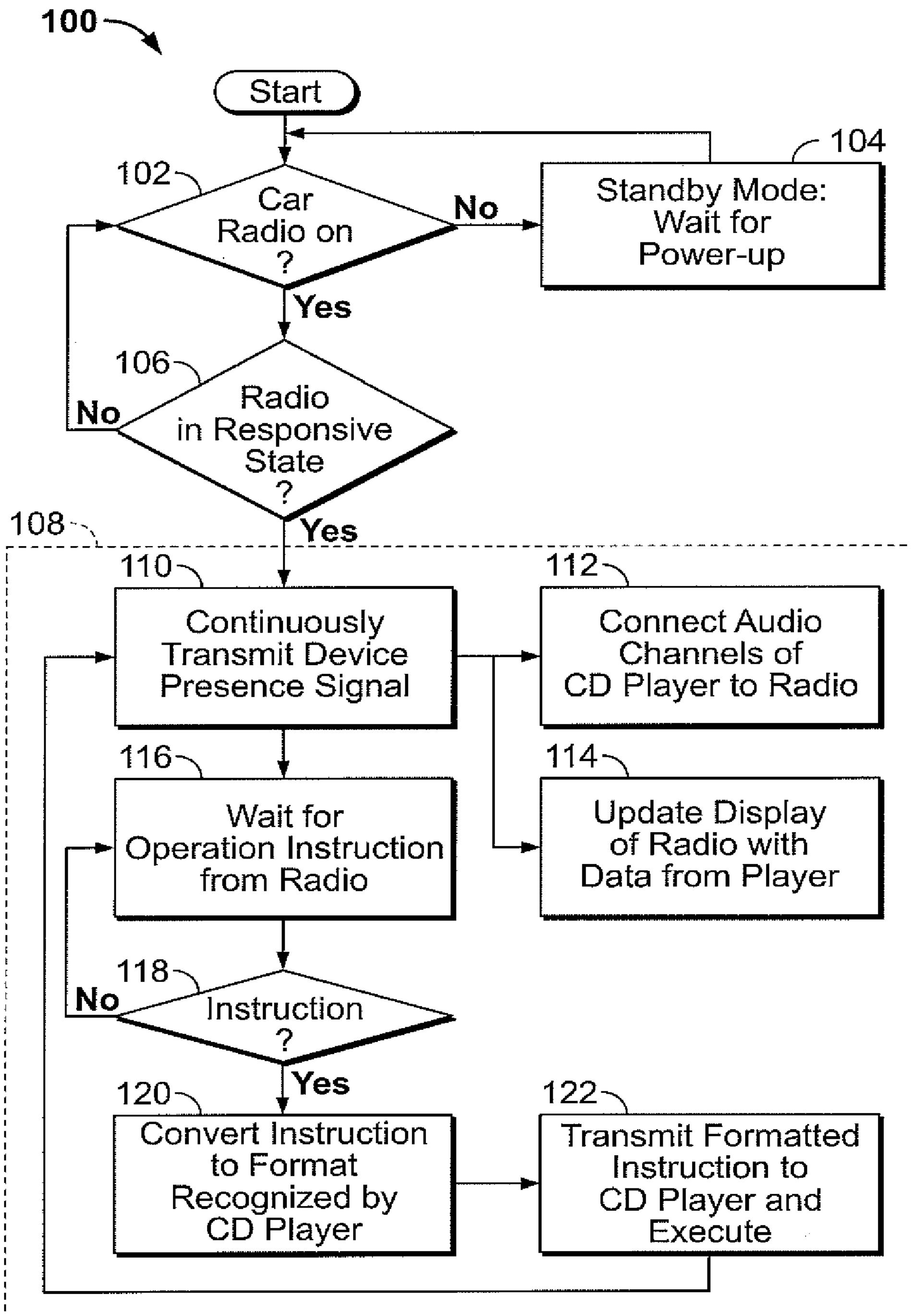

100
Start
102
Car Radio on ?
No
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
104
Yes
106
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
108
110
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
112
Connect Audio Channels of CD Player to Radio
116
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
114
Update Display of Radio with Data from Player
118
Instruction ?
No
Yes
120
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by CD Player
122
Transmit Formatted Instruction to CD Player and Execute

FIG. 4A

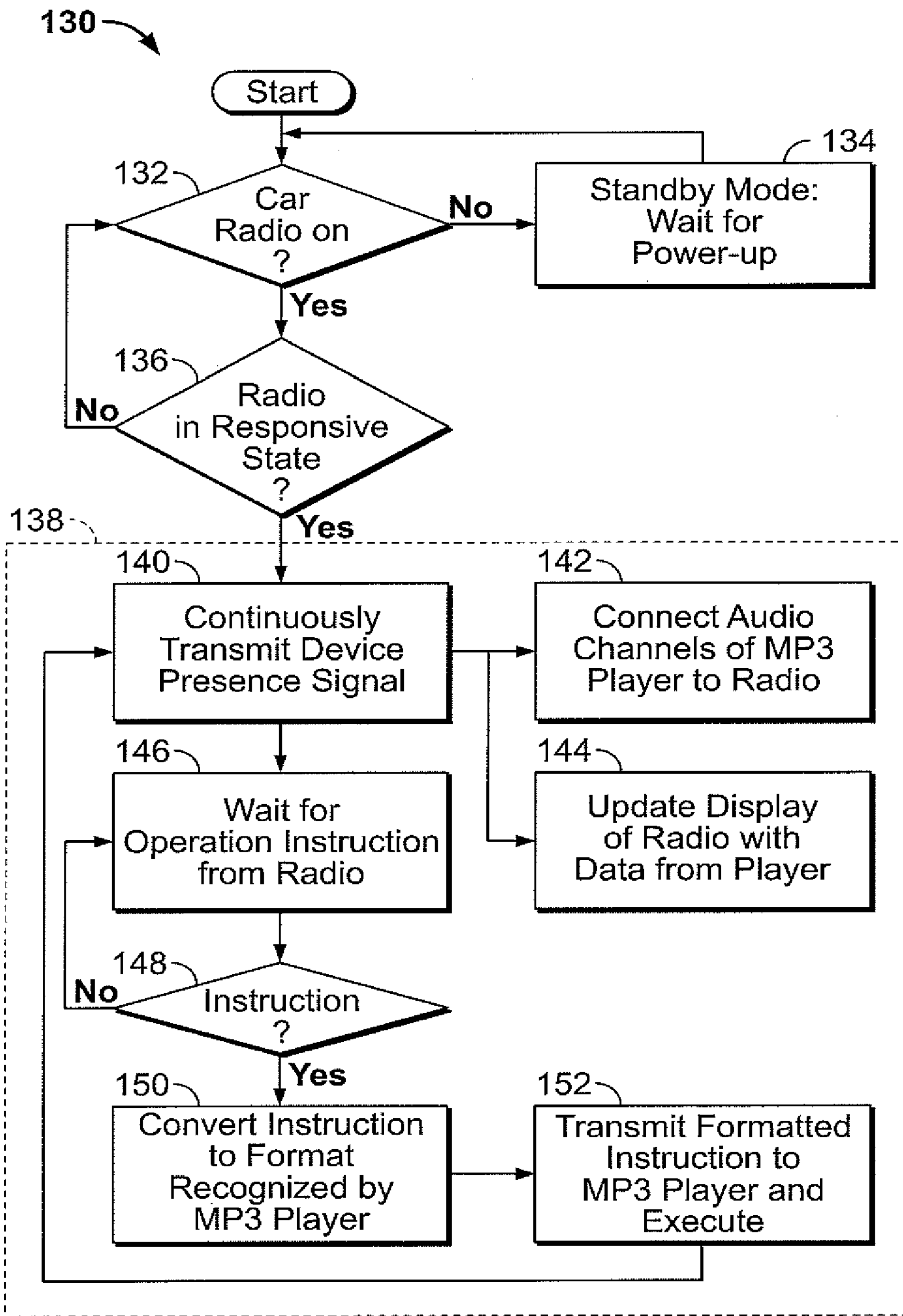

130
Start
132
Car Radio on ?
No
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
134
Yes
136
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
138
140
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
142
Connect Audio Channels of MP3 Player to Radio
146
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
144
Update Display of Radio with Data from Player
148
Instruction ?
No
Yes
150
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by MP3 Player
152
Transmit Formatted Instruction to MP3 Player and Execute

FIG. 4B

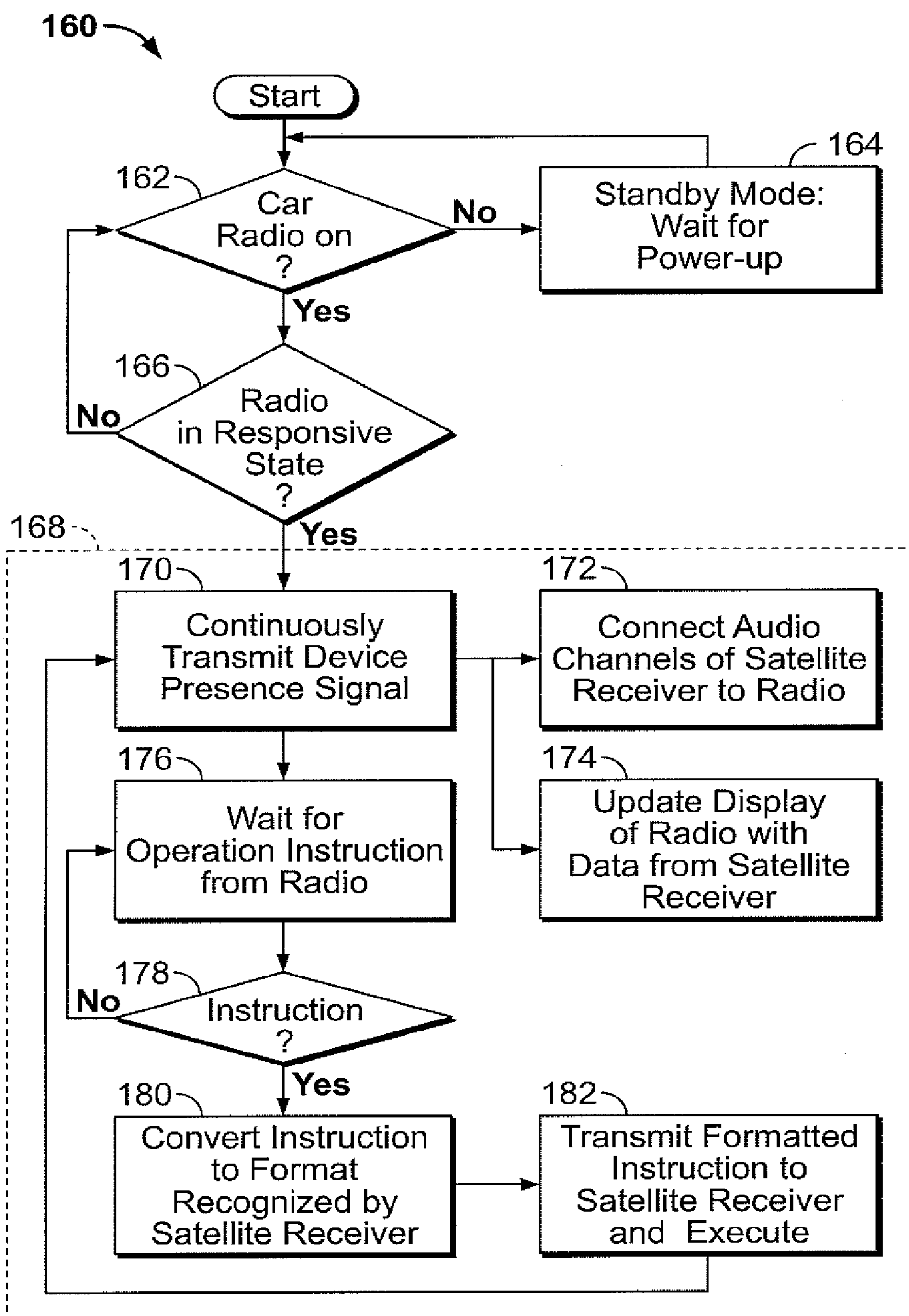

160
Start
162
Car Radio on ?
No
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
164
Yes
166
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
168
170
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
172
Connect Audio Channels of Satellite Receiver to Radio
176
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
174
Update Display of Radio with Data from Satellite Receiver
178
Instruction ?
No
Yes
180
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by Satellite Receiver
182
Transmit Formatted Instruction to Satellite Receiver and Execute

FIG. 4C

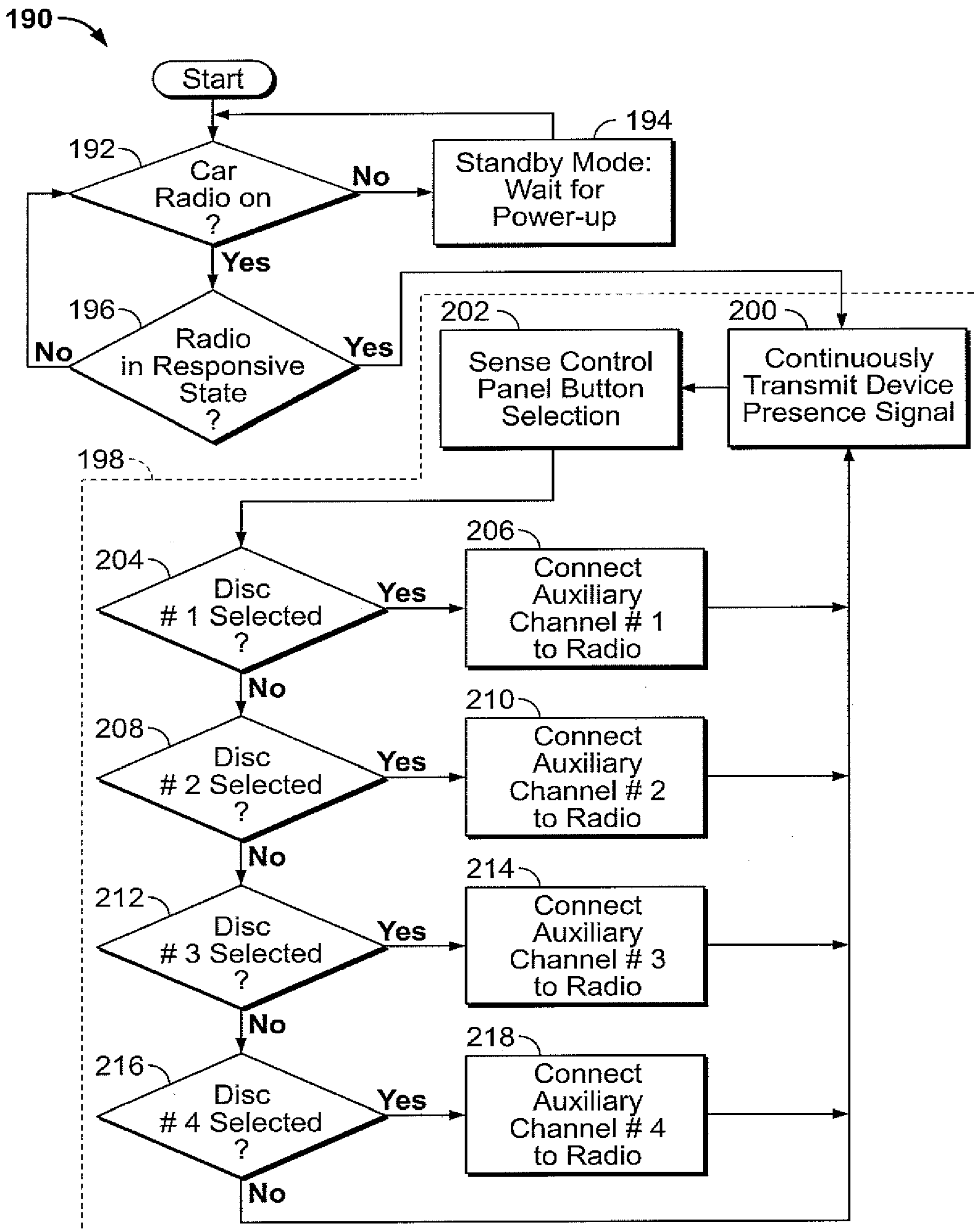


FIG. 4D

 SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

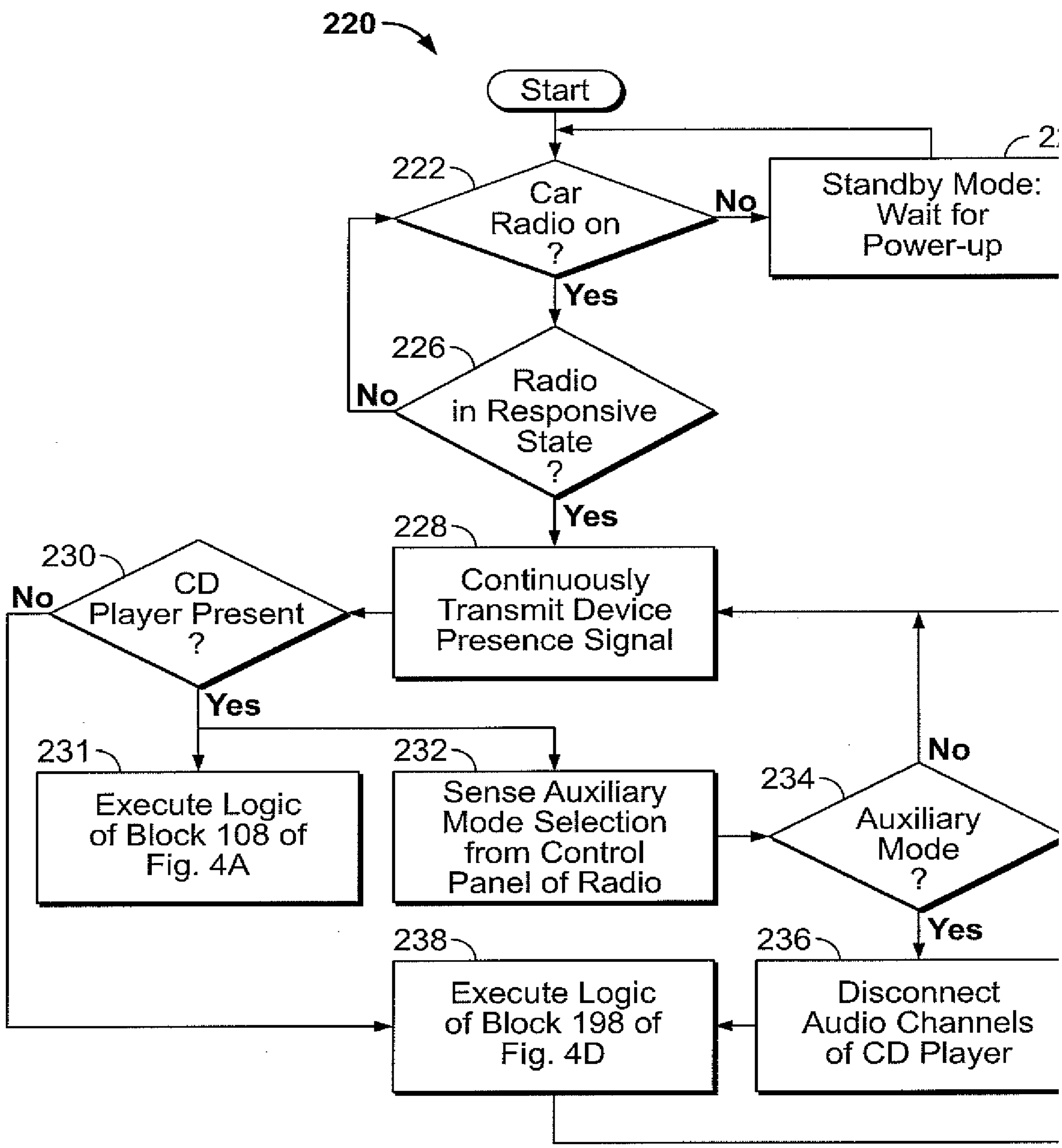

220
Start
222
Car Radio on ?
No
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
2
Yes
226
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
228
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
230
CD Player Present ?
No
Yes
231
Execute Logic of Block 108 of Fig. 4A
232
Sense Auxiliary Mode Selection from Control Panel of Radio
234
Auxiliary Mode ?
No
Yes
238
Execute Logic of Block 198 of Fig. 4D
236
Disconnect Audio Channels of CD Player

FIG. 4E

15/41

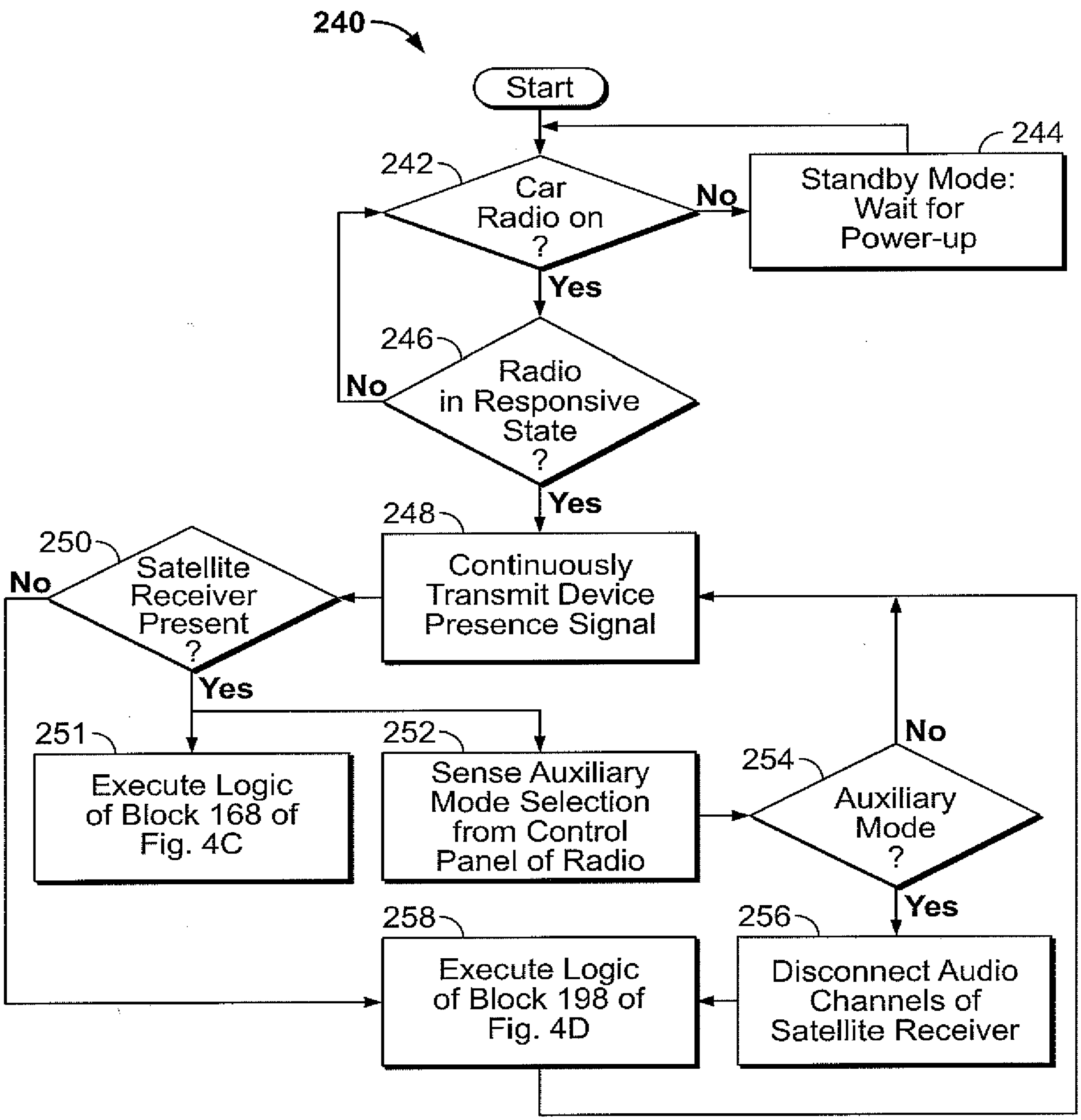

240
Start
242
Car Radio on ?
No
244
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
246
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
248
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
250
Satellite Receiver Present ?
No
Yes
251
Execute Logic of Block 168 of Fig. 4C
252
Sense Auxiliary Mode Selection from Control Panel of Radio
254
Auxiliary Mode ?
No
Yes
256
Disconnect Audio Channels of Satellite Receiver
258
Execute Logic of Block 198 of Fig. 4D

FIG. 4F

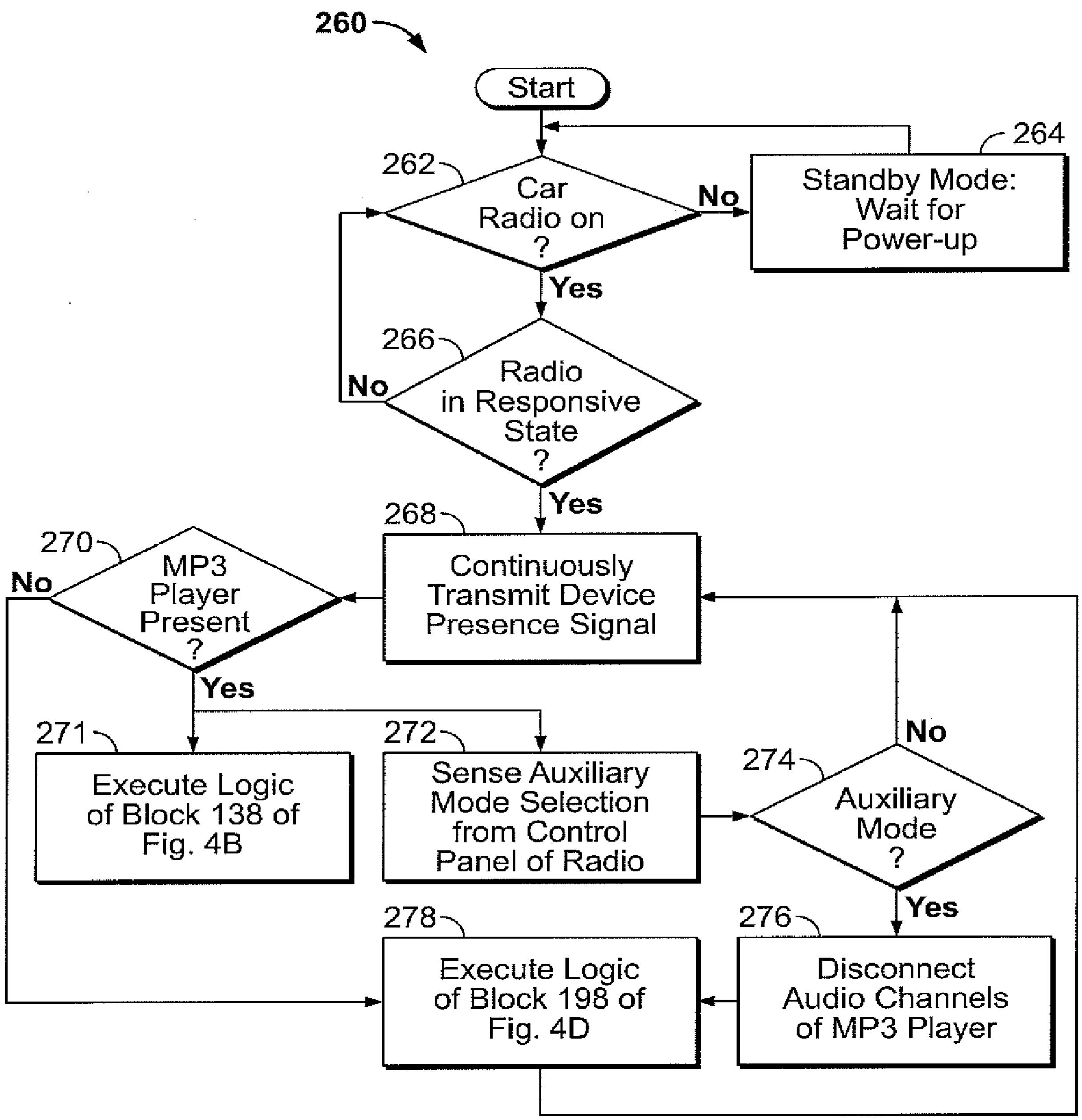

260
Start
262
Car Radio on ?
No
264
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
266
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
268
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
270
MP3 Player Present ?
No
Yes
271
Execute Logic of Block 138 of Fig. 4B
272
Sense Auxiliary Mode Selection from Control Panel of Radio
274
Auxiliary Mode ?
No
Yes
276
Disconnect Audio Channels of MP3 Player
278
Execute Logic of Block 198 of Fig. 4D

FIG. 4G

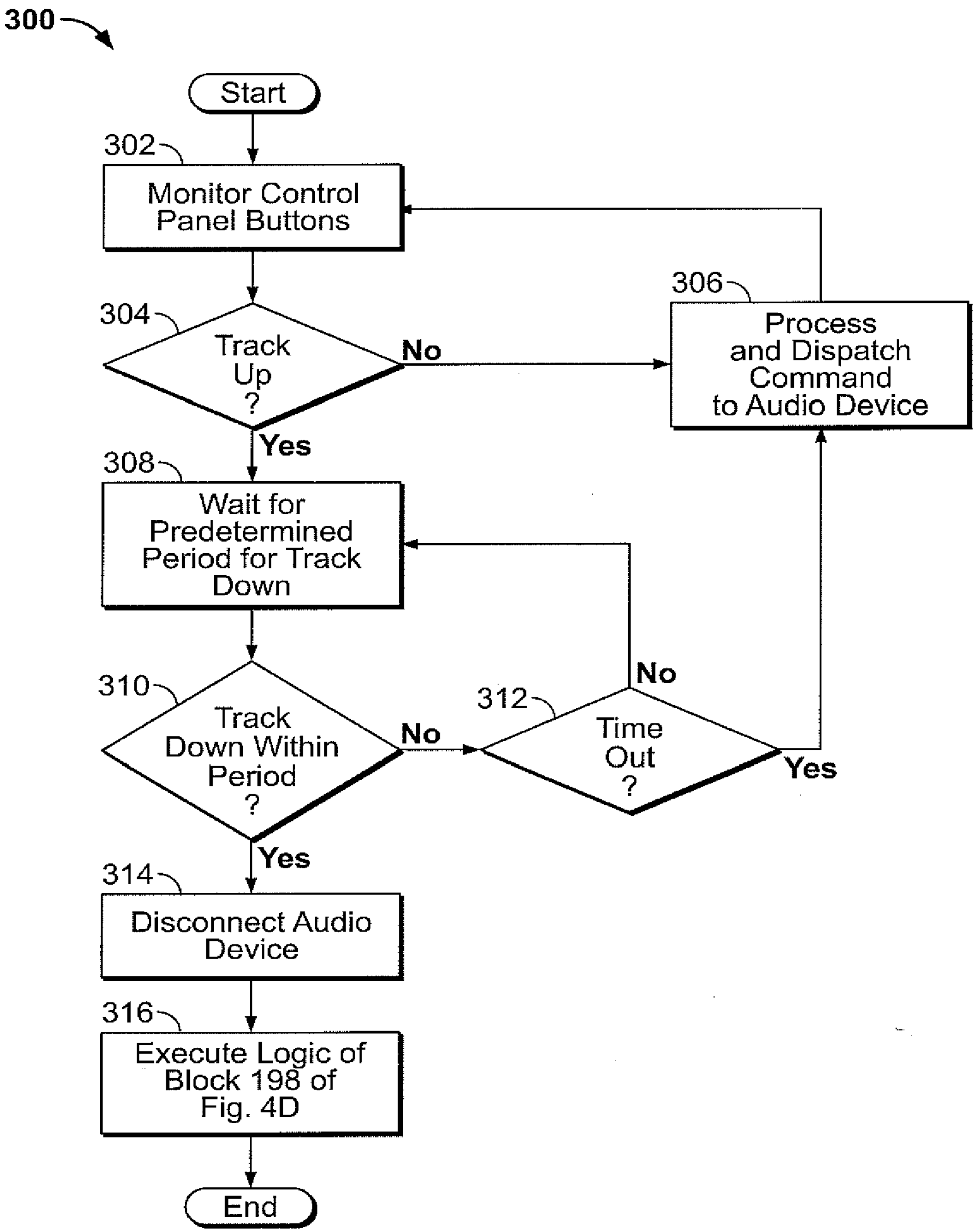


FIG. 5

 SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

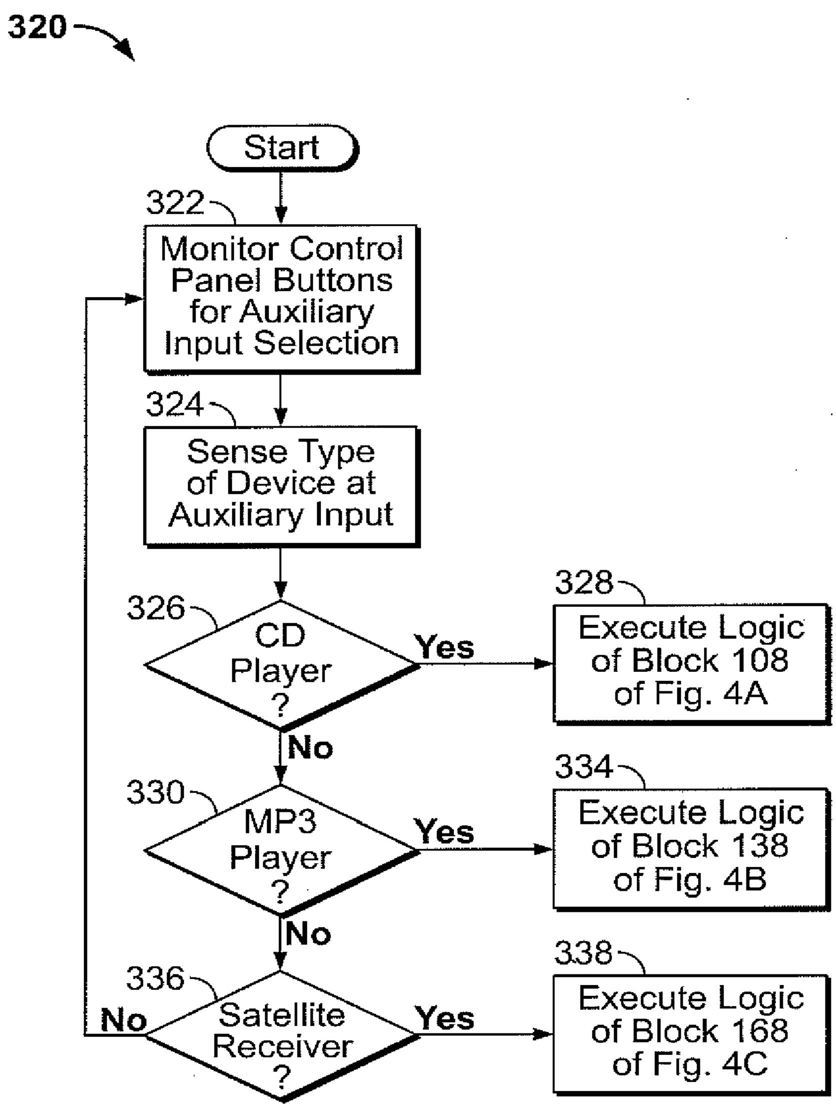

320
Start
322
Monitor Control Panel Buttons for Auxiliary Input Selection
324
Sense Type of Device at Auxiliary Input
326
CD Player ?
Yes
328
Execute Logic of Block 108 of Fig. 4A
No
330
MP3 Player ?
Yes
334
Execute Logic of Block 138 of Fig. 4B
No
336
Satellite Receiver ?
No
Yes
338
Execute Logic of Block 168 of Fig. 4C

FIG. 6

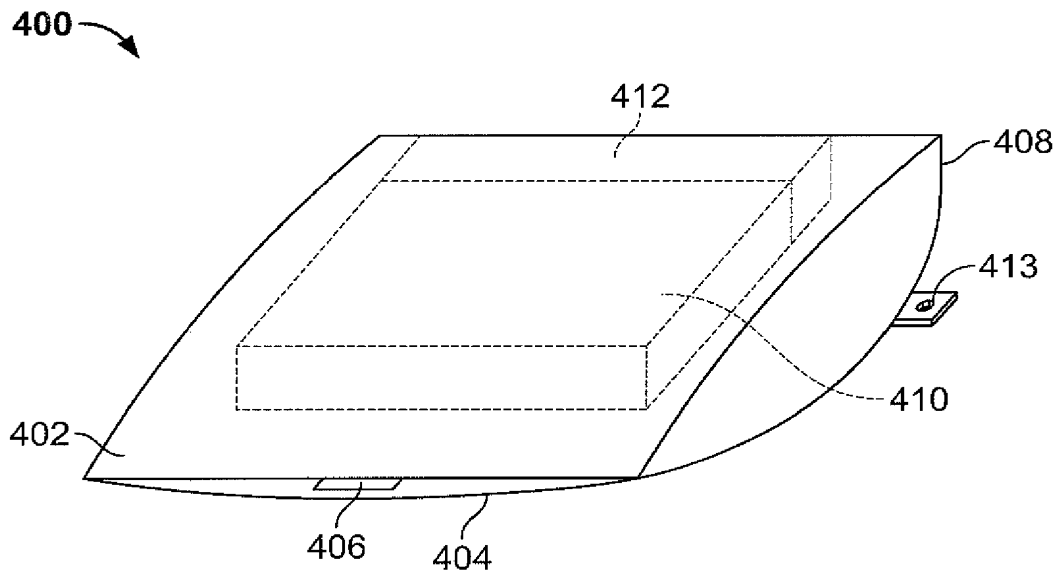


FIG. 7A

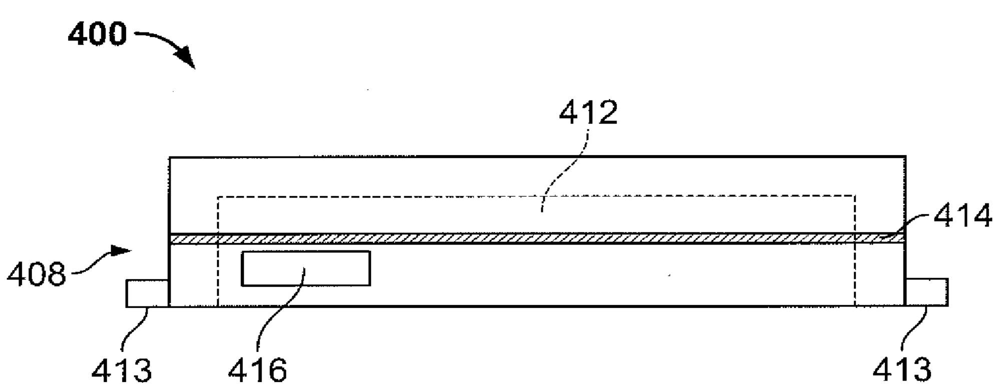


FIG. 7B

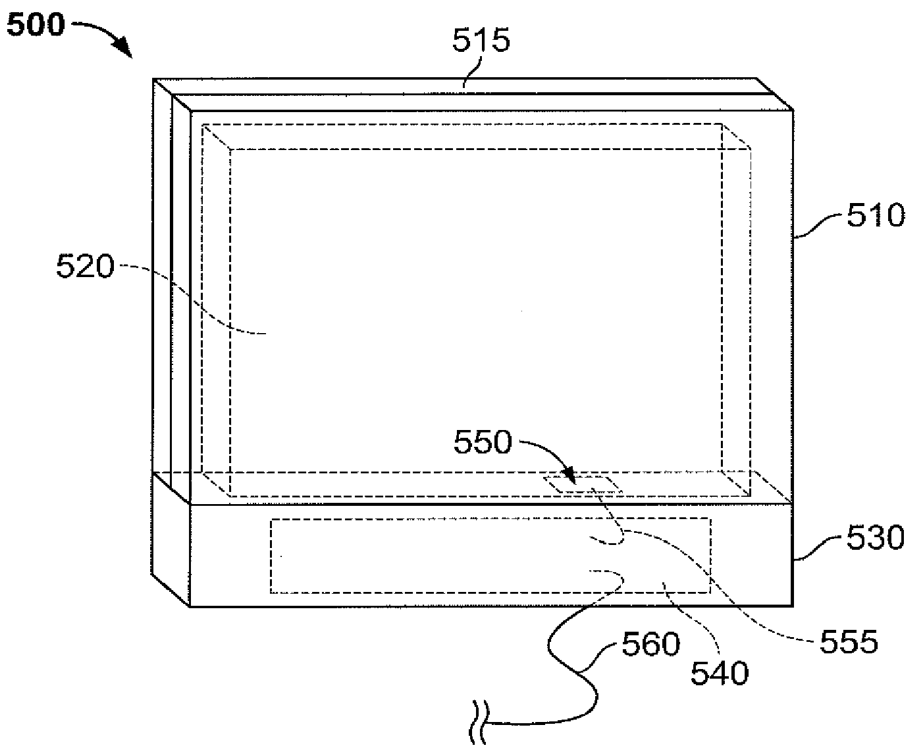


FIG. 8A

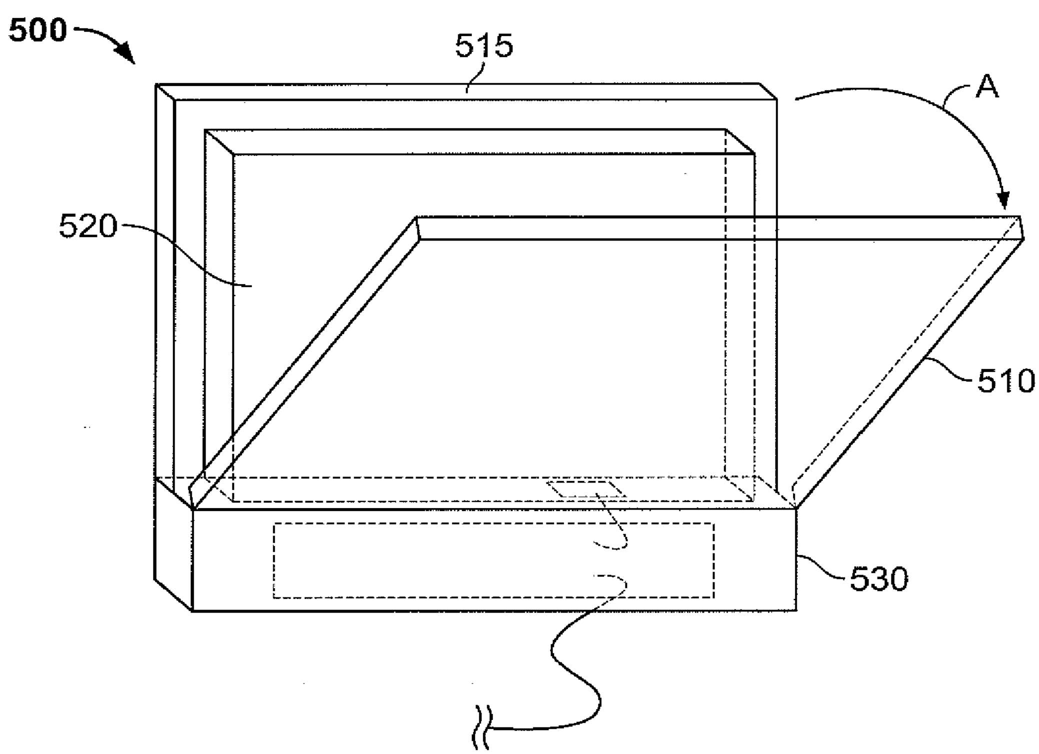


FIG. 8B

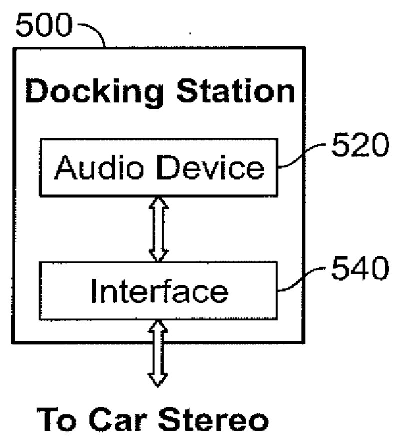

500
Docking Station
Audio Device
520
Interface
540
To Car Stereo

FIG. 9

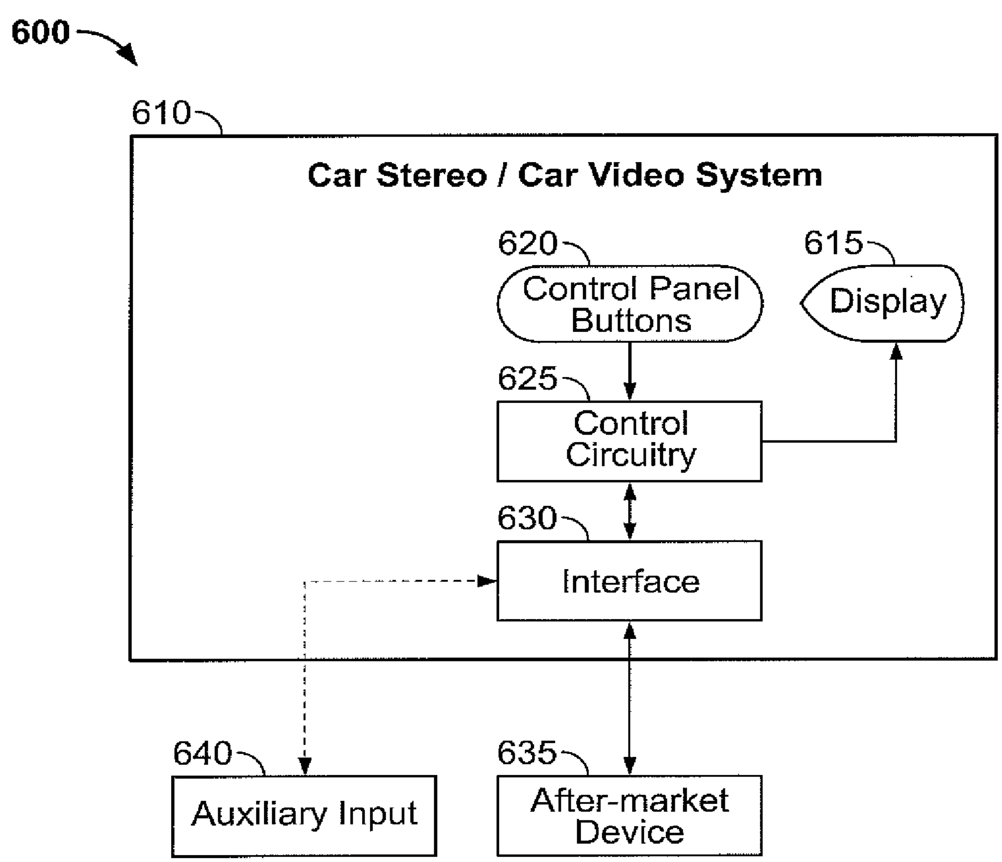

600
610
Car Stereo / Car Video System
620
Control Panel Buttons
615
Display
625
Control Circuitry
630
Interface
640
Auxiliary Input
635
After-market Device

FIG. 10

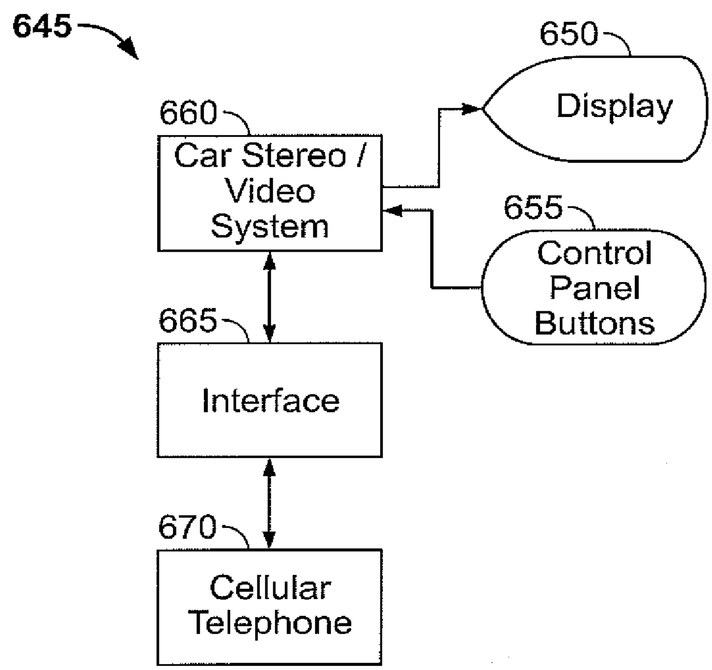

645
650
Display
660
Car Stereo / Video System
655
Control Panel Buttons
665
Interface
670
Cellular Telephone

FIG. 11A

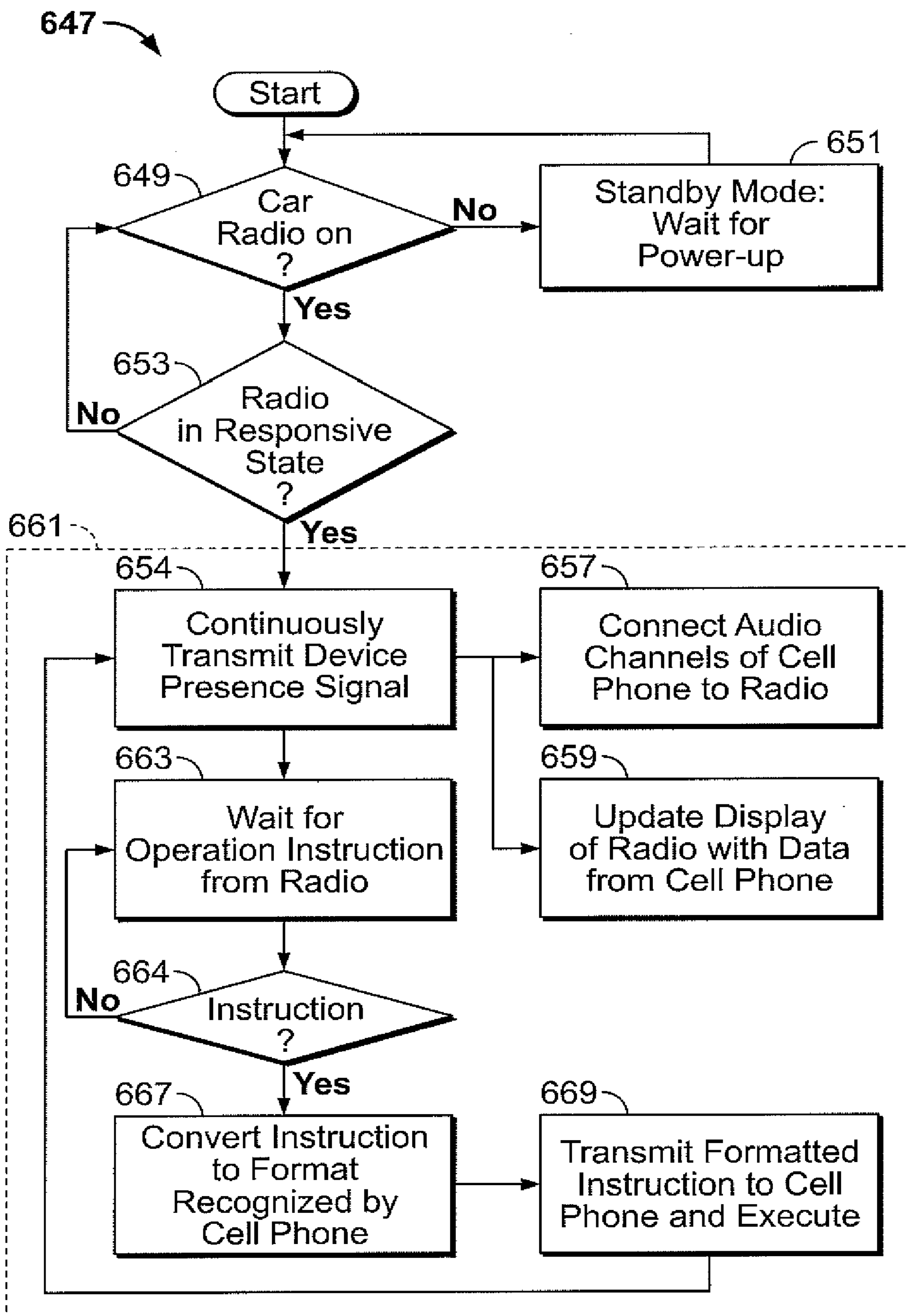

647
Start
649
Car Radio on ?
No
651
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
653
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
661
654
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
657
Connect Audio Channels of Cell Phone to Radio
663
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
659
Update Display of Radio with Data from Cell Phone
664
Instruction ?
No
Yes
667
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by Cell Phone
669
Transmit Formatted Instruction to Cell Phone and Execute

FIG. 11B

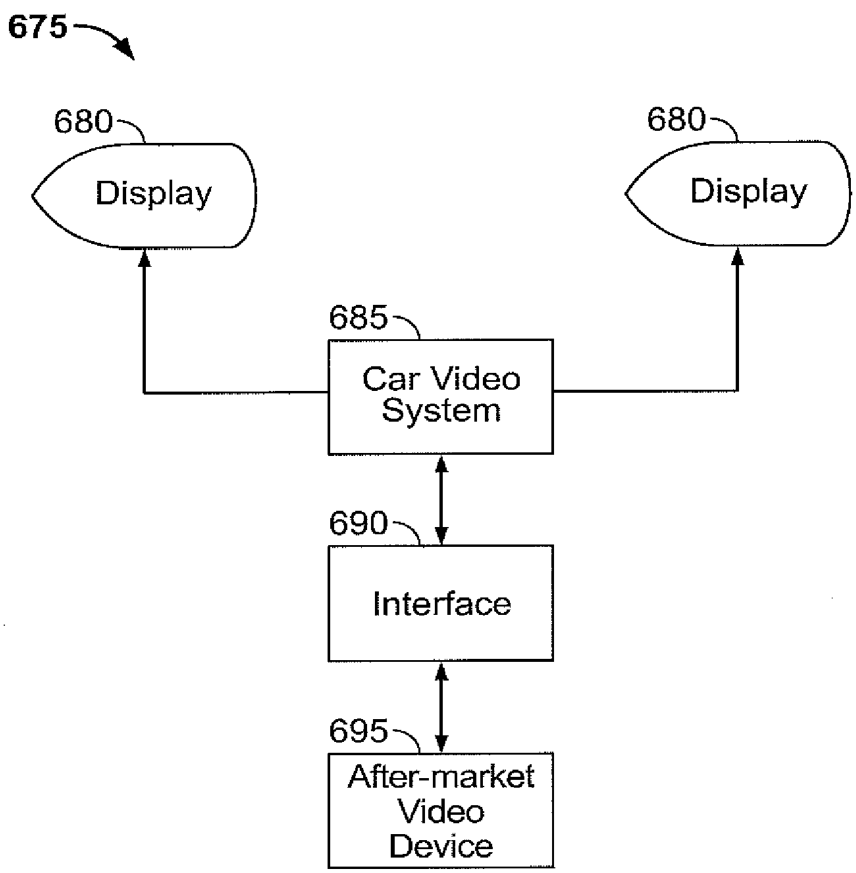

675
680
Display
680
Display
685
Car Video System
690
Interface
695
After-market Video Device

FIG. 12A

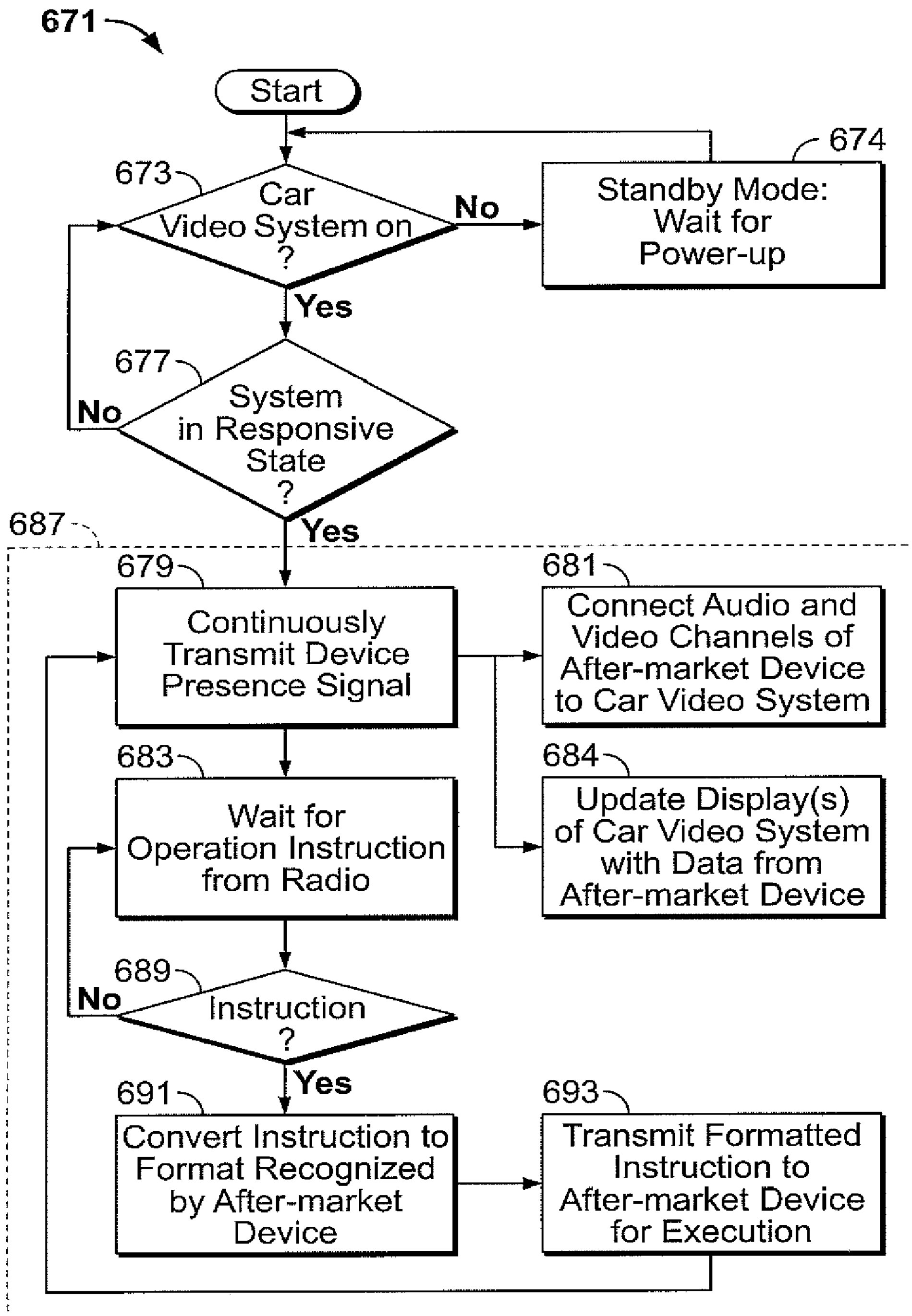

671
Start
673
Car Video System on ?
No
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
674
Yes
677
System in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
687
679
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
681
Connect Audio and Video Channels of After-market Device to Car Video System
683
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
684
Update Display(s) of Car Video System with Data from After-market Device
689
Instruction ?
No
Yes
691
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by After-market Device
693
Transmit Formatted Instruction to After-market Device for Execution

FIG. 12B

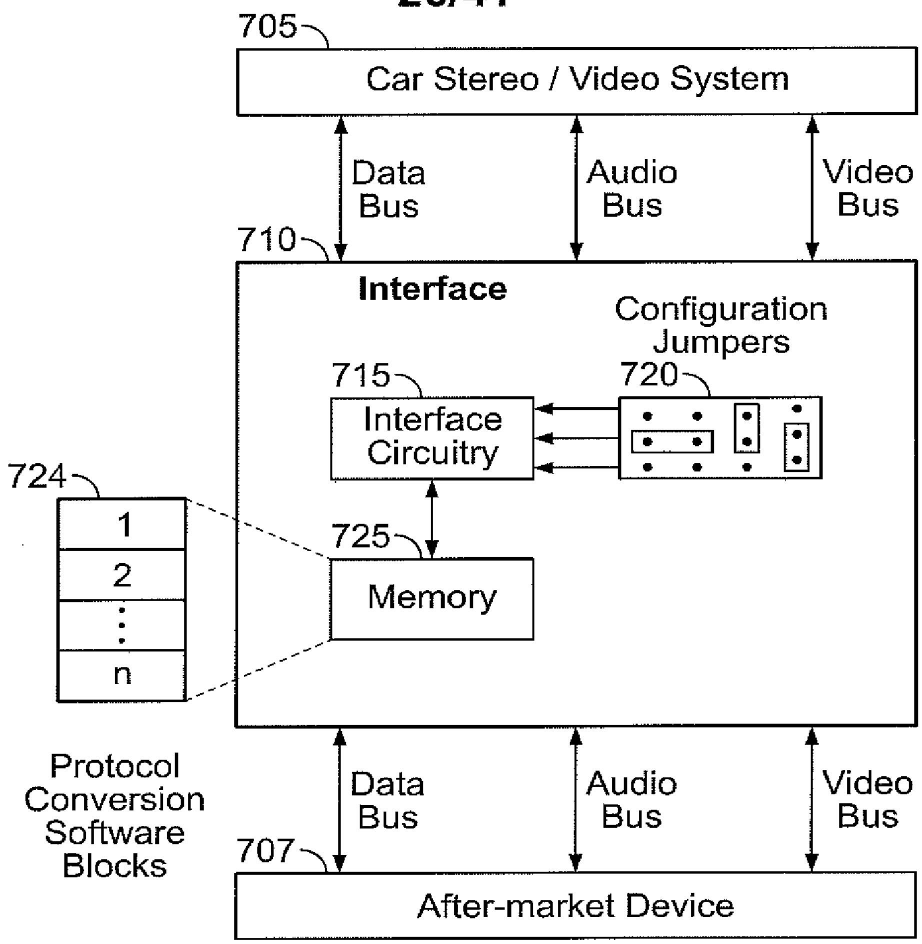


FIG. 13A

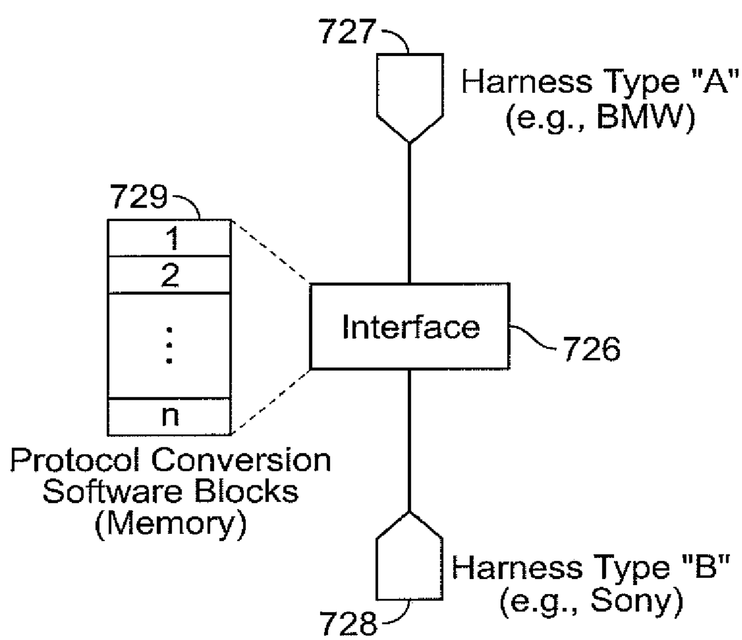


FIG. 13B

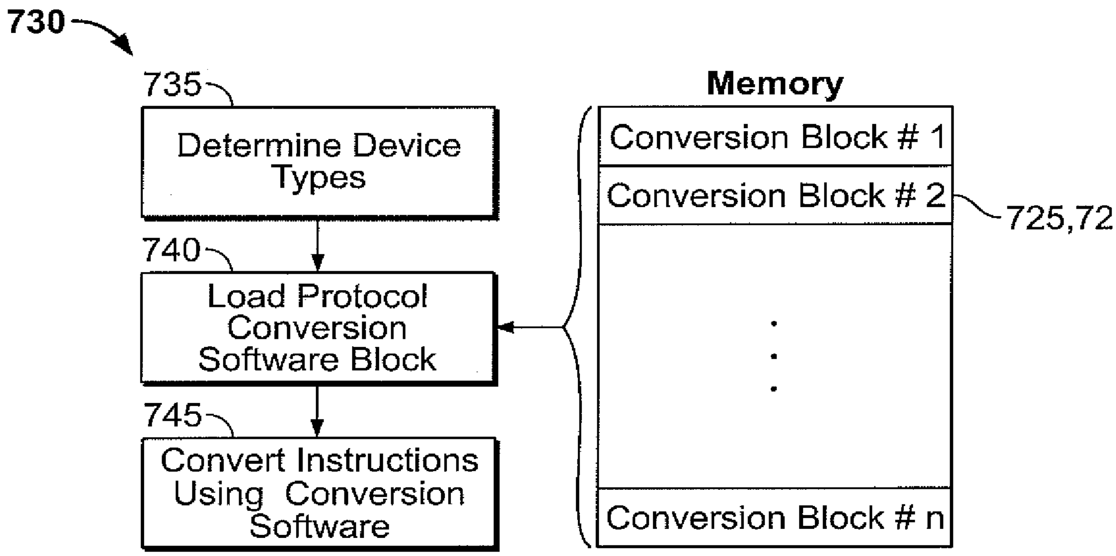

730
735
Determine Device Types
740
Load Protocol Conversion Software Block
745
Convert Instructions Using Conversion Software
Memory
Conversion Block # 1
Conversion Block # 2
Conversion Block # n
725,72

FIG. 14

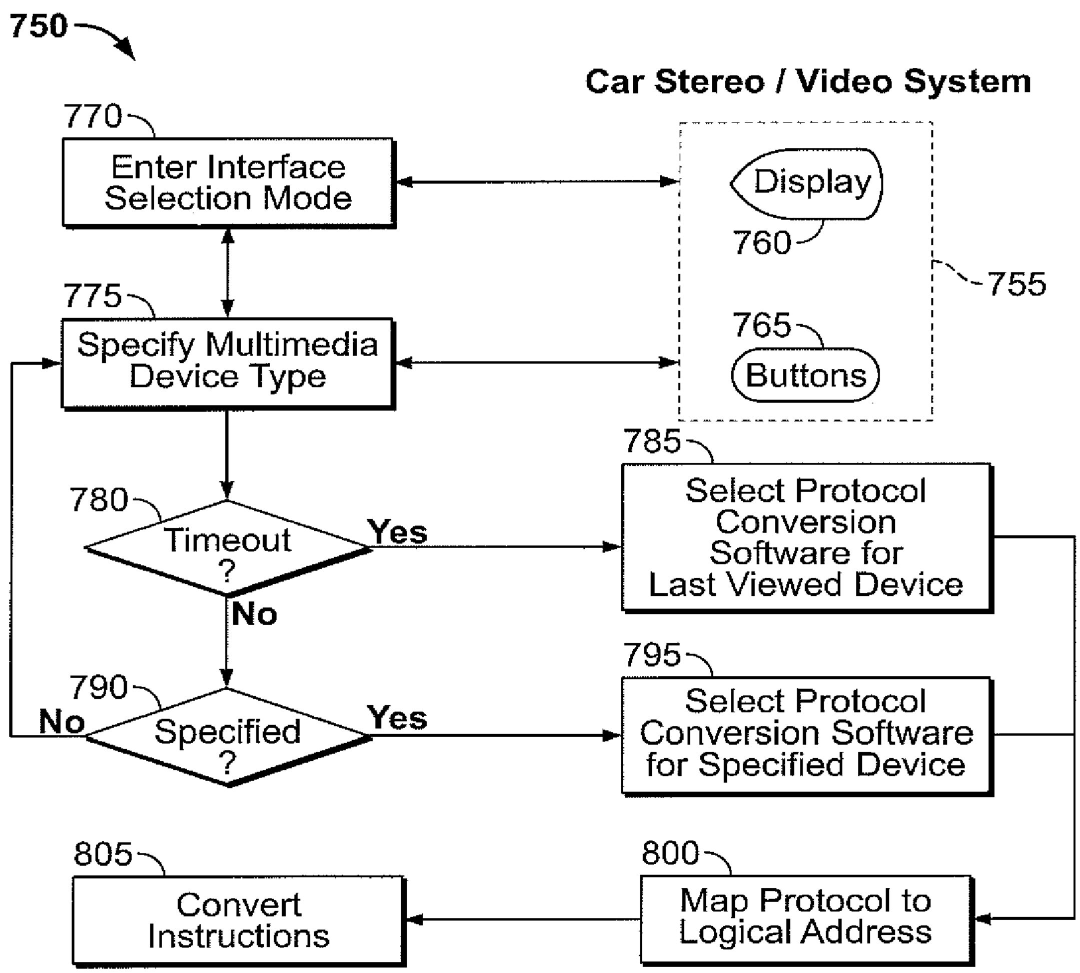

750
Car Stereo / Video System
770
Enter Interface Selection Mode
Display
760
755
765
Buttons
775
Specify Multimedia Device Type
785
Select Protocol Conversion Software for Last Viewed Device
780
Timeout ?
Yes
No
795
Select Protocol Conversion Software for Specified Device
790
Specified ?
No
Yes
805
Convert Instructions
800
Map Protocol to Logical Address

FIG. 15

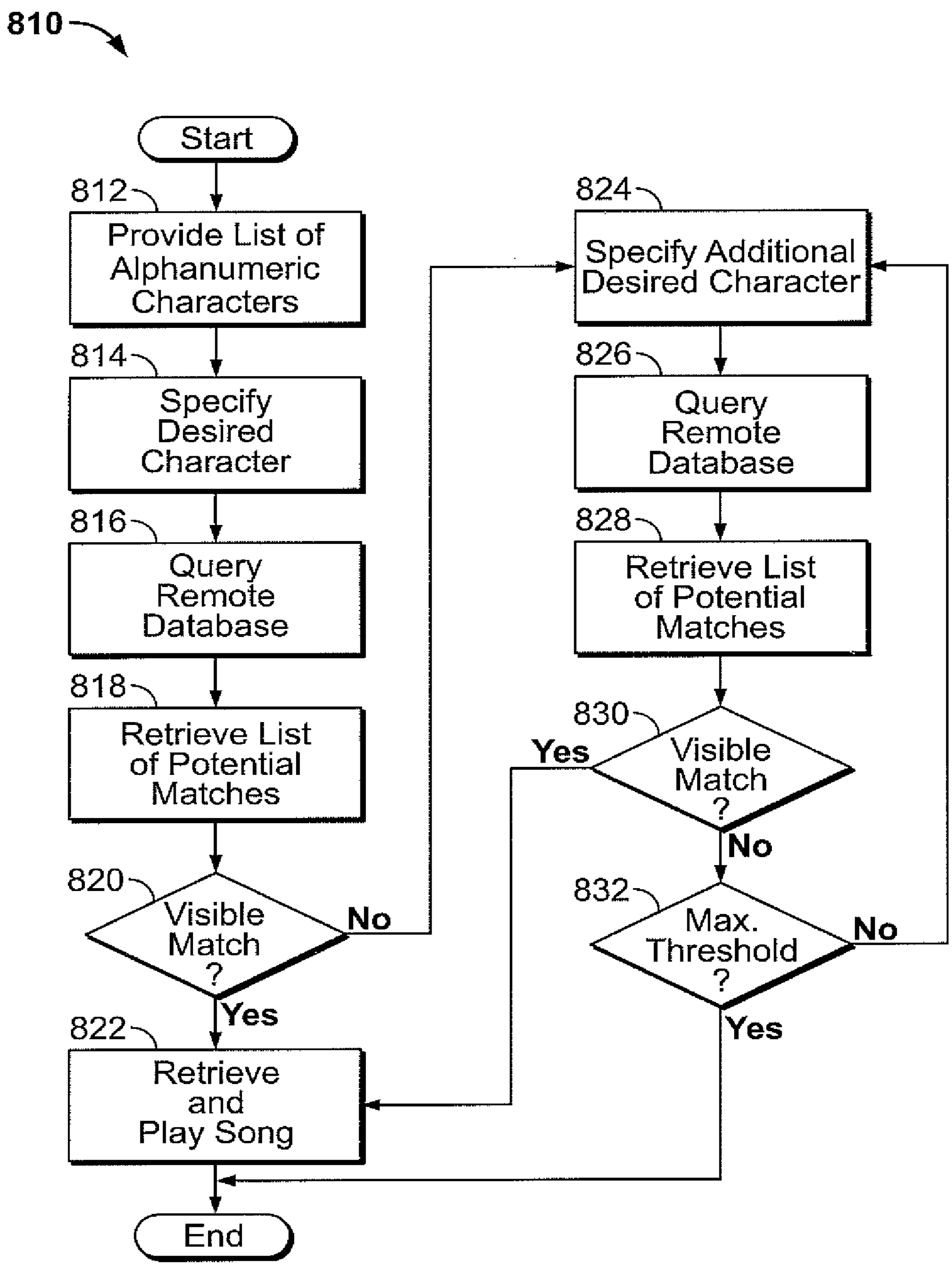

810
Start
812
Provide List of Alphanumeric Characters
814
Specify Desired Character
816
Query Remote Database
818
Retrieve List of Potential Matches
820
Visible Match ?
No
Yes
822
Retrieve and Play Song
End
824
Specify Additional Desired Character
826
Query Remote Database
828
Retrieve List of Potential Matches
830
Visible Match ?
Yes
No
832
Max. Threshold ?
No
Yes

FIG. 16

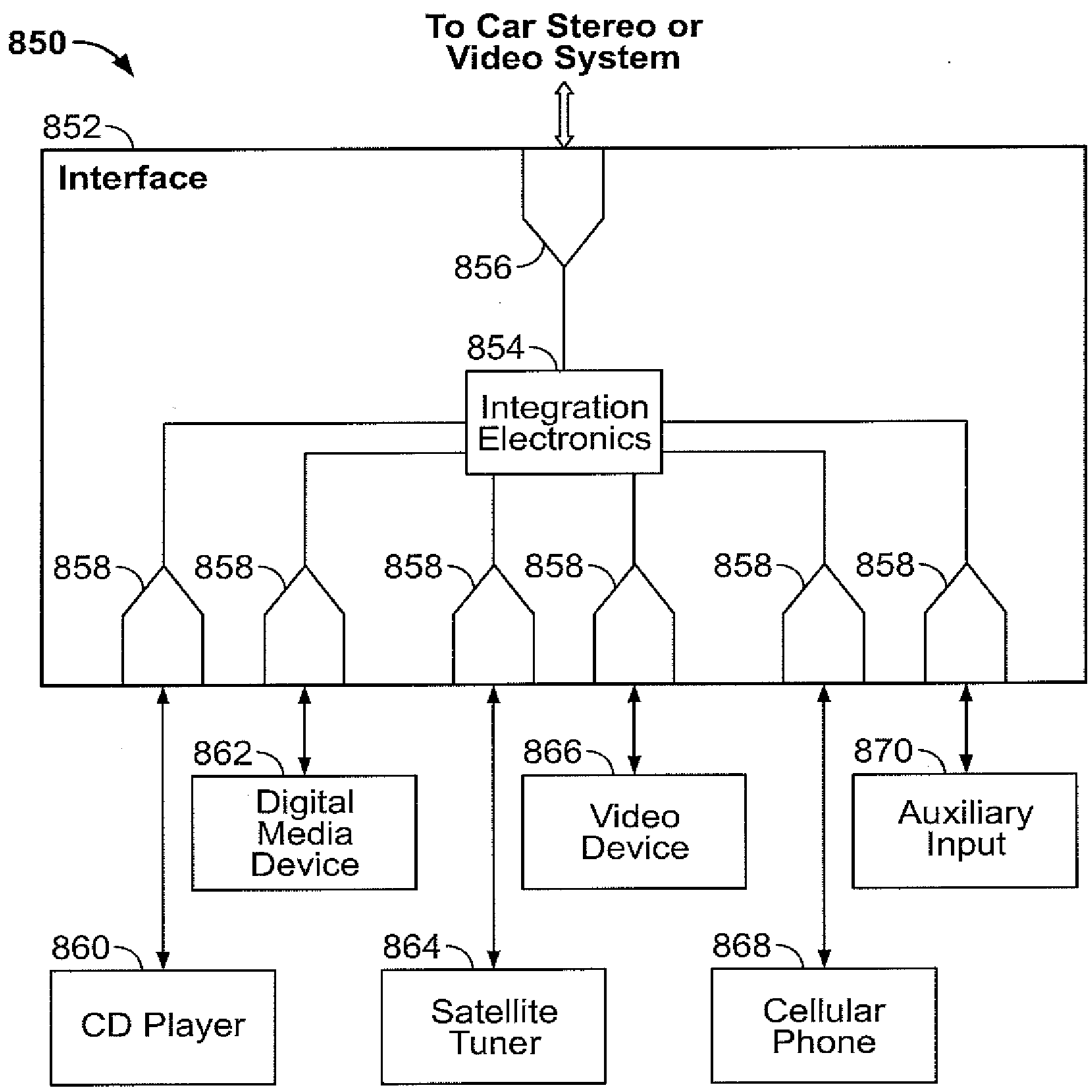
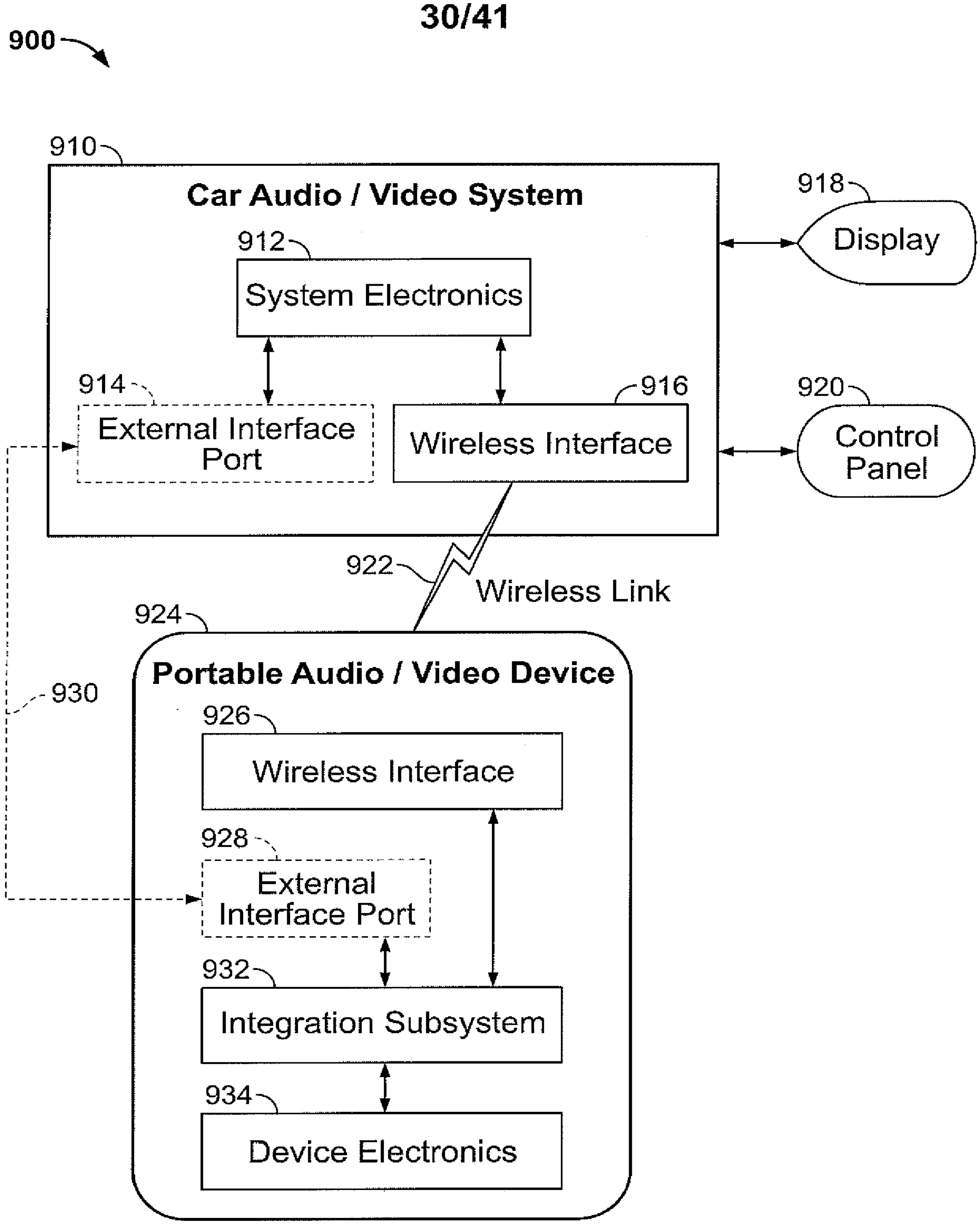

850
To Car Stereo or Video System
852
Interface
856
854
Integration Electronics
858
858
858
858
858
858
862
Digital Media Device
866
Video Device
870
Auxiliary Input
860
CD Player
864
Satellite Tuner
868
Cellular Phone

FIG. 17



900
910
Car Audio / Video System
912
System Electronics
914
External Interface Port
916
Wireless Interface
918
Display
920
Control Panel
922
Wireless Link
924
Portable Audio / Video Device
926
Wireless Interface
928
External Interface Port
930
932
Integration Subsystem
934
Device Electronics

FIG. 18

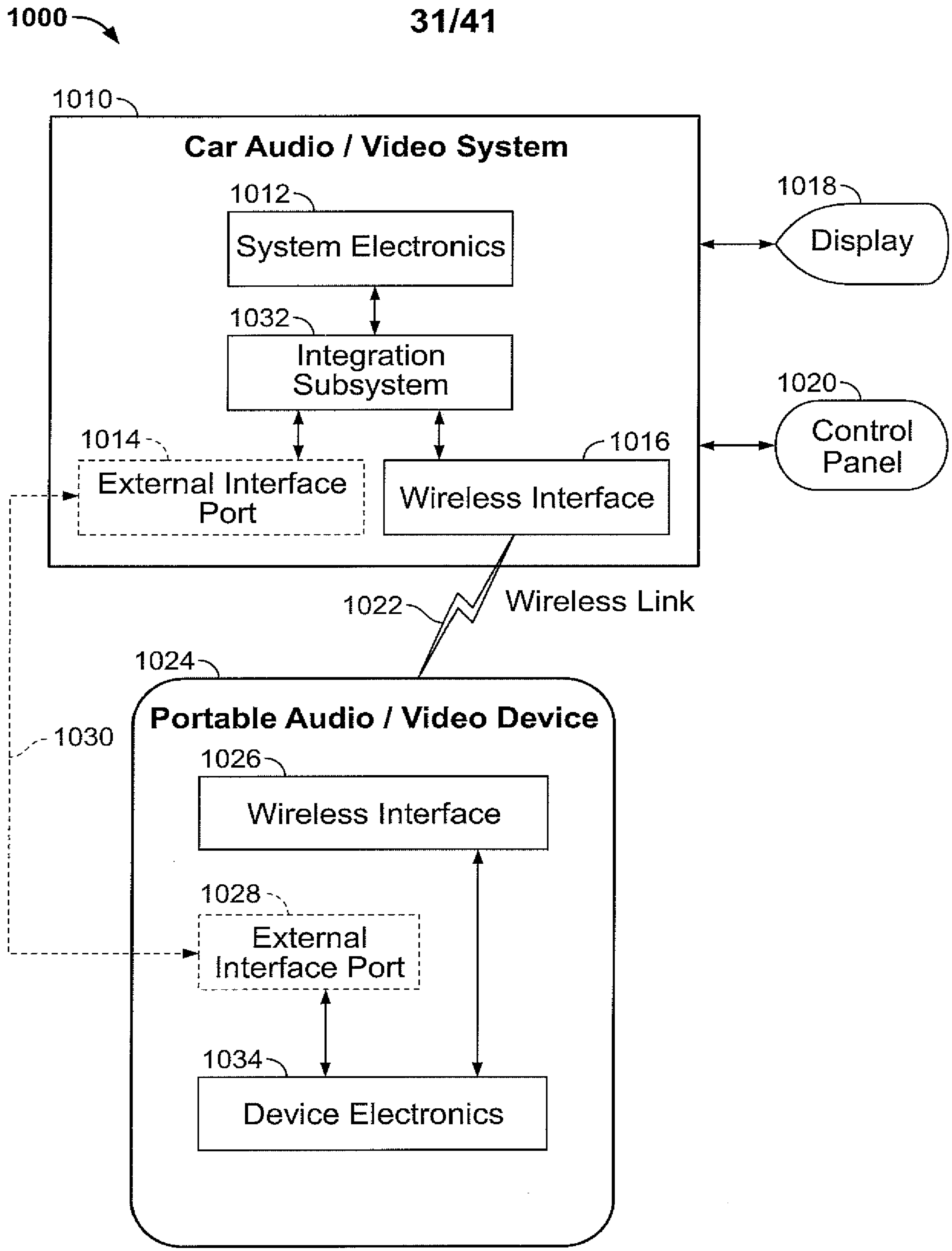

1000
1010
Car Audio / Video System
1012
System Electronics
1032
Integration Subsystem
1014
External Interface Port
1016
Wireless Interface
1018
Display
1020
Control Panel
1022
Wireless Link
1024
Portable Audio / Video Device
1026
Wireless Interface
1028
External Interface Port
1030
1034
Device Electronics

FIG. 19

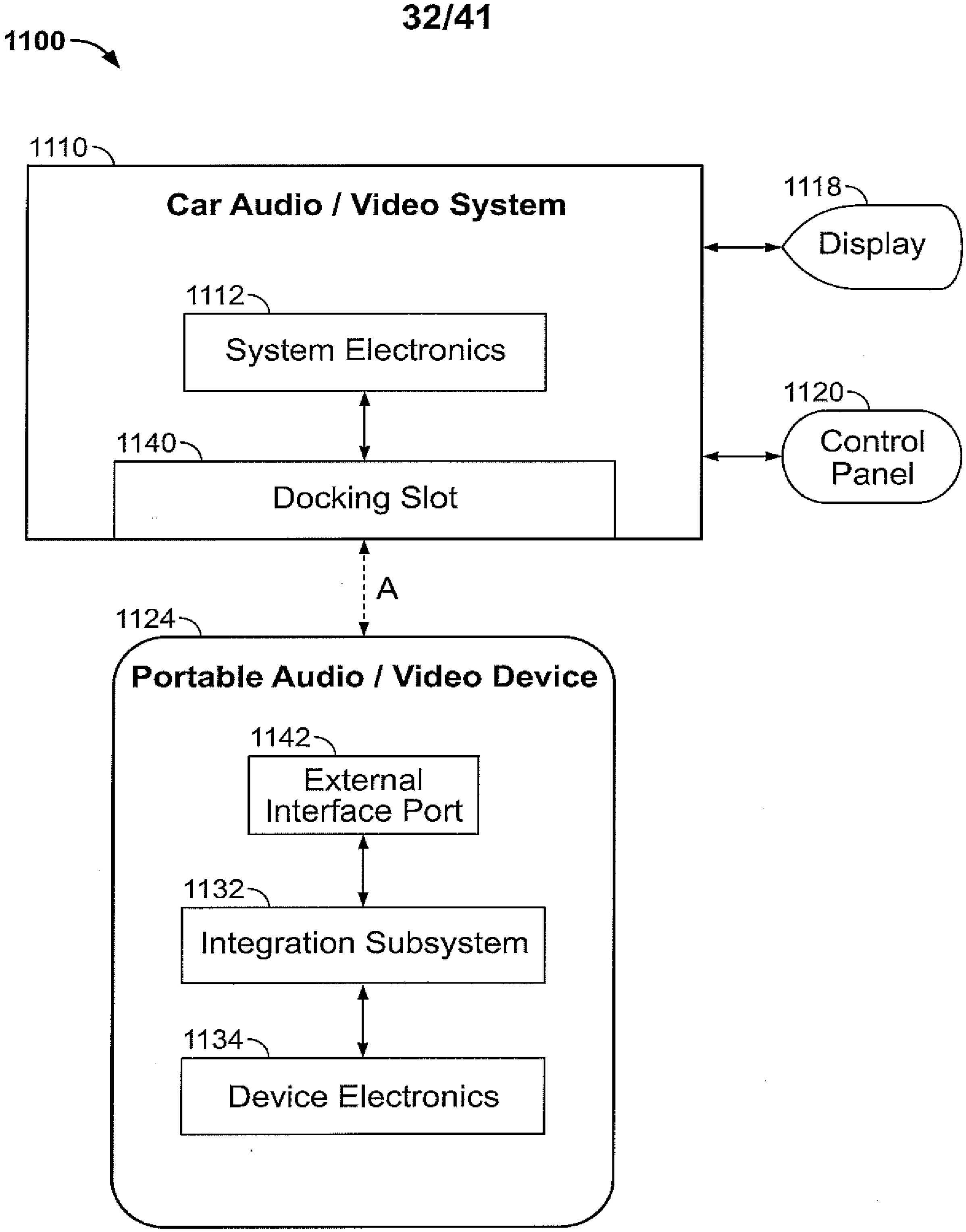

1100
1110
Car Audio / Video System
1112
System Electronics
1140
Docking Slot
1118
Display
1120
Control Panel
A
1124
Portable Audio / Video Device
1142
External Interface Port
1132
Integration Subsystem
1134
Device Electronics

FIG. 20

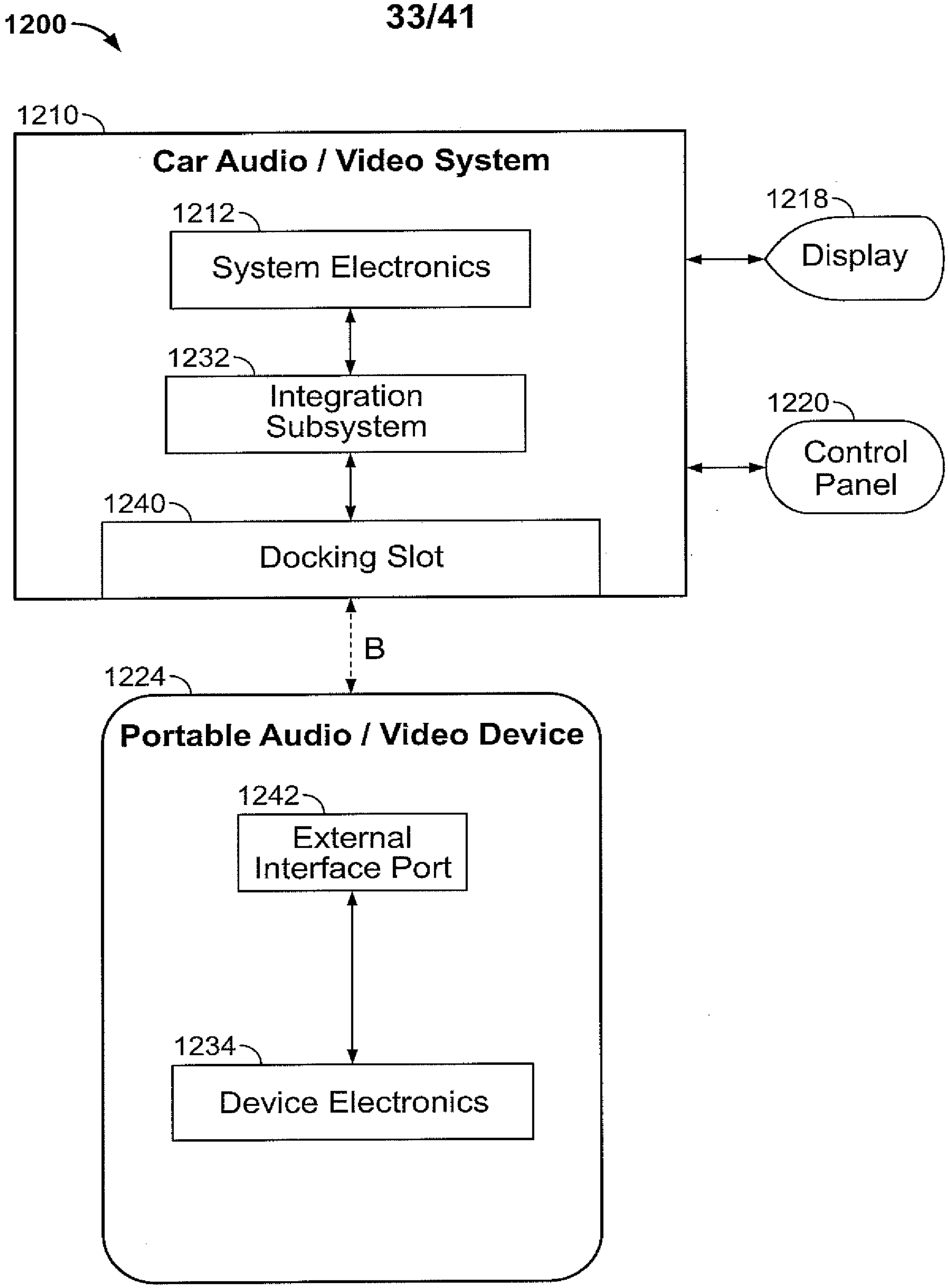

1200
1210
Car Audio / Video System
1212
System Electronics
1232
Integration Subsystem
1240
Docking Slot
1218
Display
1220
Control Panel
B
1224
Portable Audio / Video Device
1242
External Interface Port
1234
Device Electronics

FIG. 21

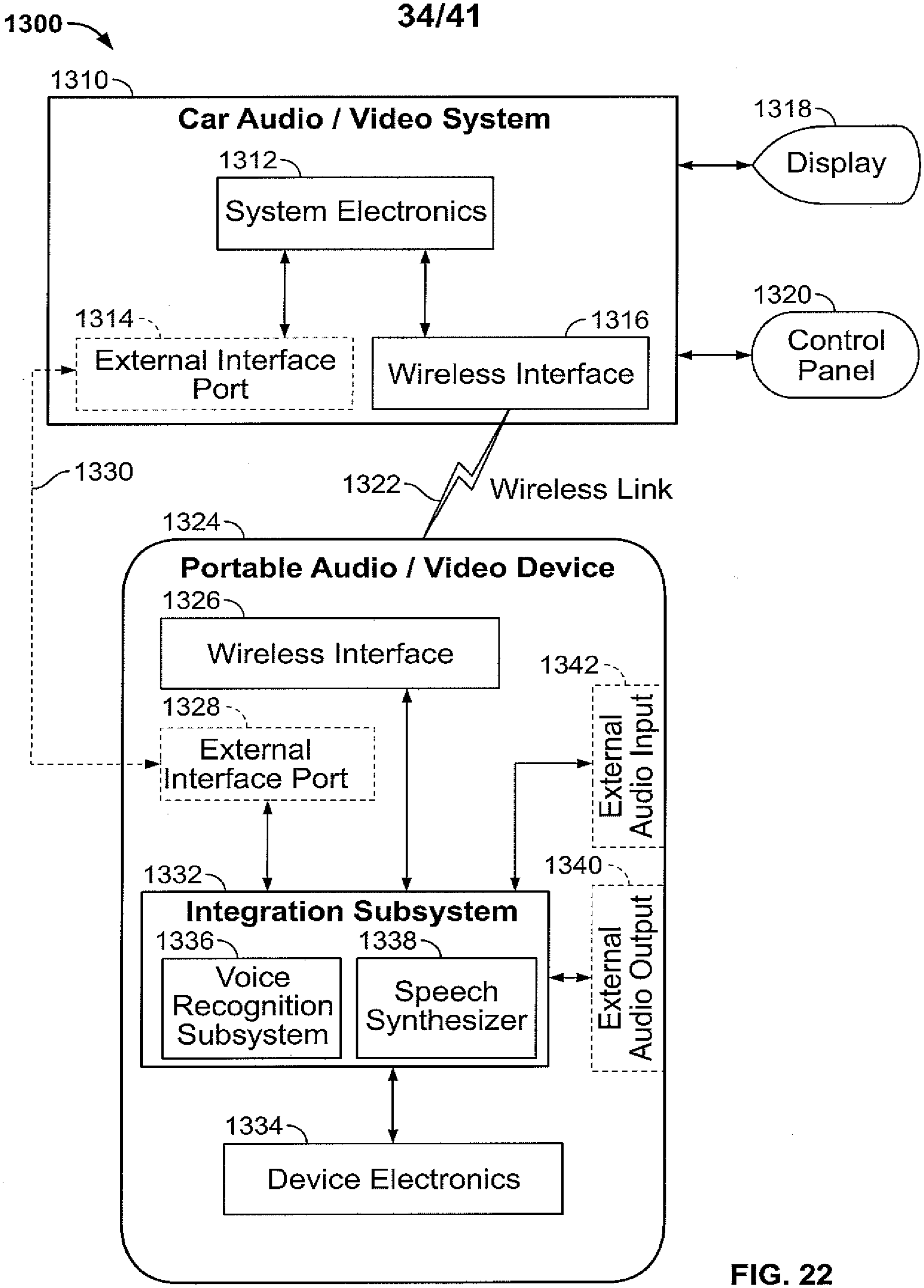

1300
1310
Car Audio / Video System
1312
System Electronics
1314
External Interface Port
1316
Wireless Interface
1318
Display
1320
Control Panel
1330
1322
Wireless Link
1324
Portable Audio / Video Device
1326
Wireless Interface
1328
External Interface Port
1342
External Audio Input
1340
External Audio Output
1332
Integration Subsystem
1336
Voice Recognition Subsystem
1338
Speech Synthesizer
1334
Device Electronics

FIG. 22

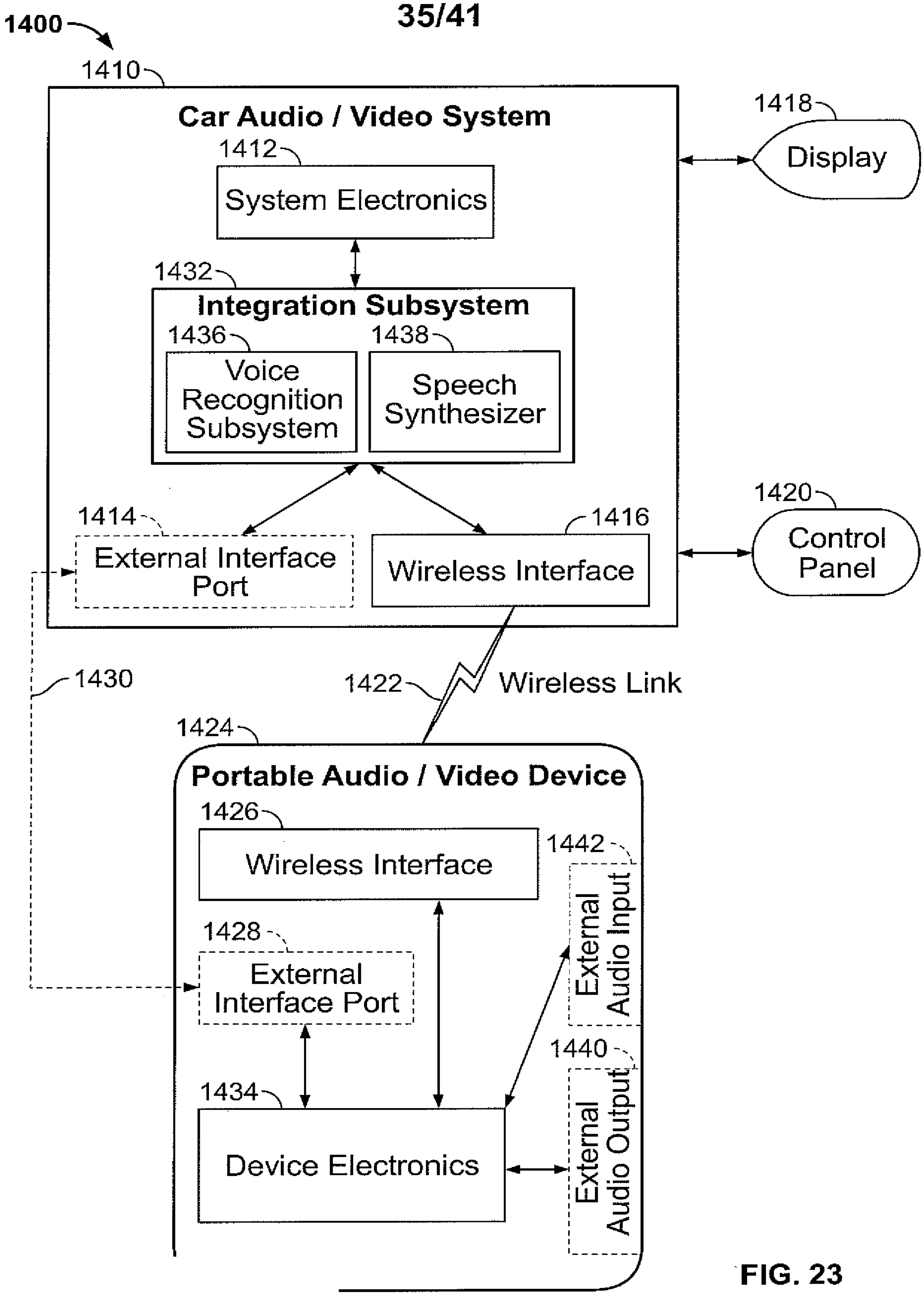

1400
1410
Car Audio / Video System
1412
System Electronics
1432
Integration Subsystem
1436
Voice Recognition Subsystem
1438
Speech Synthesizer
1414
External Interface Port
1416
Wireless Interface
1418
Display
1420
Control Panel
1430
1422
Wireless Link
1424
Portable Audio / Video Device
1426
Wireless Interface
1442
External Audio Input
1428
External Interface Port
1440
1434
Device Electronics
External Audio Output

FIG. 23

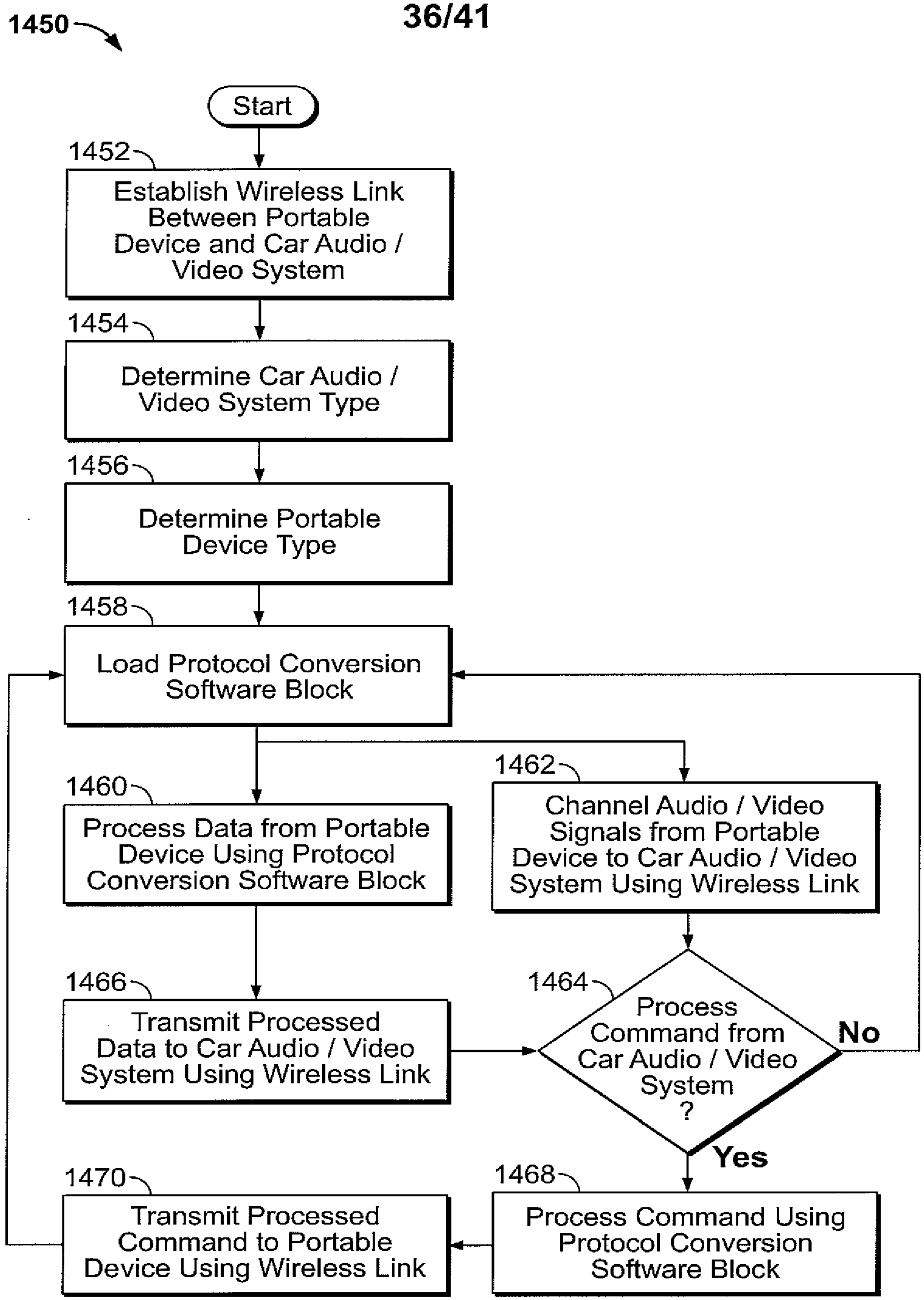

1450
Start
1452
Establish Wireless Link Between Portable Device and Car Audio / Video System
1454
Determine Car Audio / Video System Type
1456
Determine Portable Device Type
1458
Load Protocol Conversion Software Block
1460
Process Data from Portable Device Using Protocol Conversion Software Block
1462
Channel Audio / Video Signals from Portable Device to Car Audio / Video System Using Wireless Link
1466
Transmit Processed Data to Car Audio / Video System Using Wireless Link
1464
Process Command from Car Audio / Video System ?
No
Yes
1470
Transmit Processed Command to Portable Device Using Wireless Link
1468
Process Command Using Protocol Conversion Software Block

FIG. 24

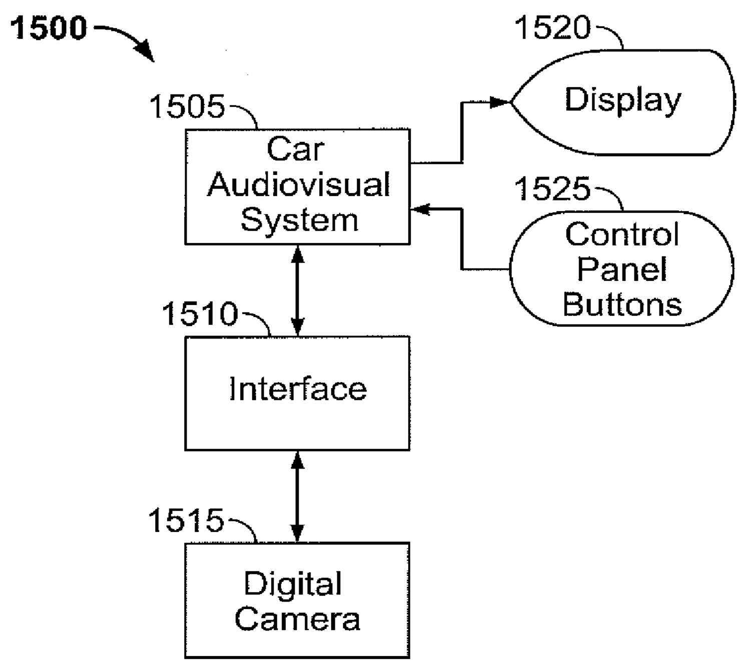

1500
1505
Car Audiovisual System
1520
Display
1525
Control Panel Buttons
1510
Interface
1515
Digital Camera

FIG. 25A

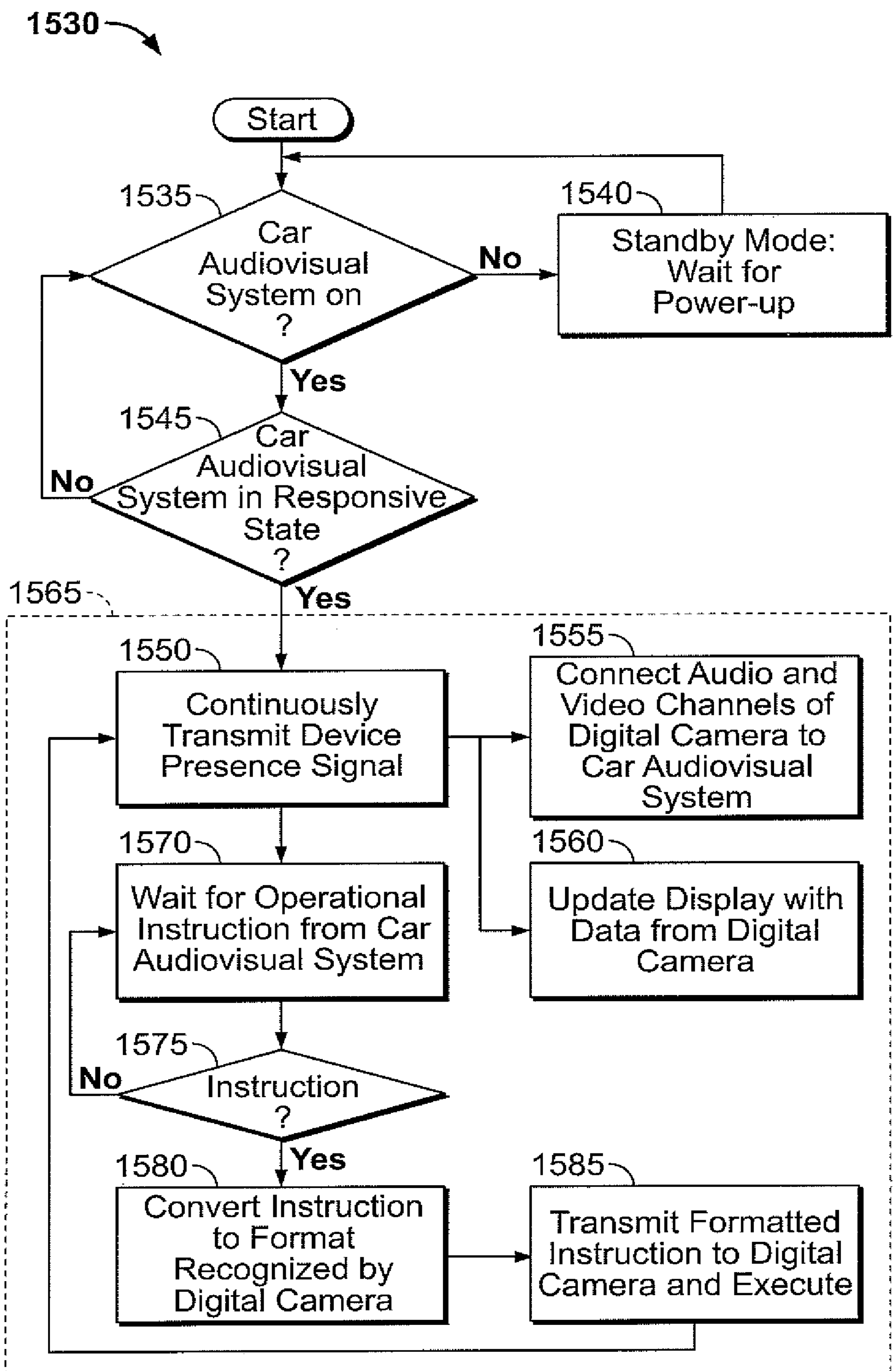

1530
Start
1535
Car Audiovisual System on ?
No
1540
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
1545
Car Audiovisual System in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
1565
1550
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
1555
Connect Audio and Video Channels of Digital Camera to Car Audiovisual System
1570
Wait for Operational Instruction from Car Audiovisual System
1560
Update Display with Data from Digital Camera
1575
Instruction ?
No
Yes
1580
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by Digital Camera
1585
Transmit Formatted Instruction to Digital Camera and Execute

FIG. 25B

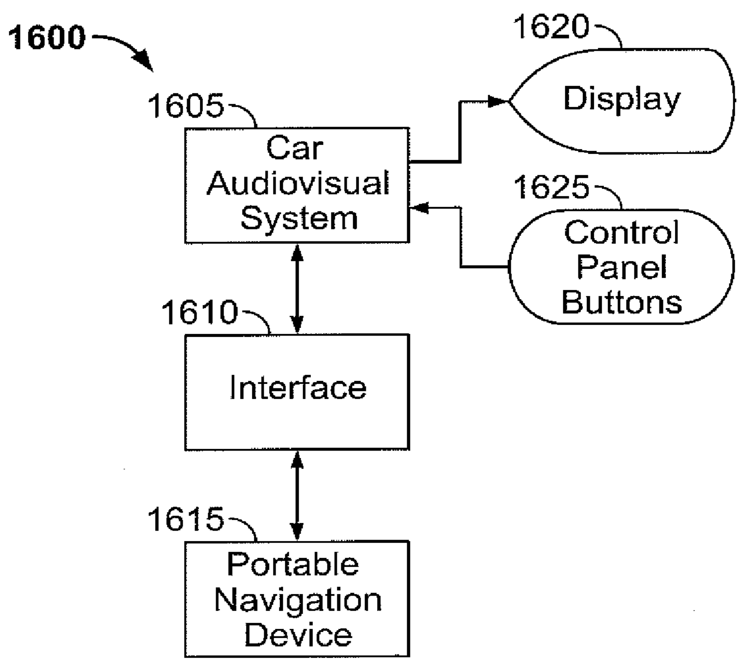

1600
1620
Display
1605
Car Audiovisual System
1625
Control Panel Buttons
1610
Interface
1615
Portable Navigation Device

FIG. 26A

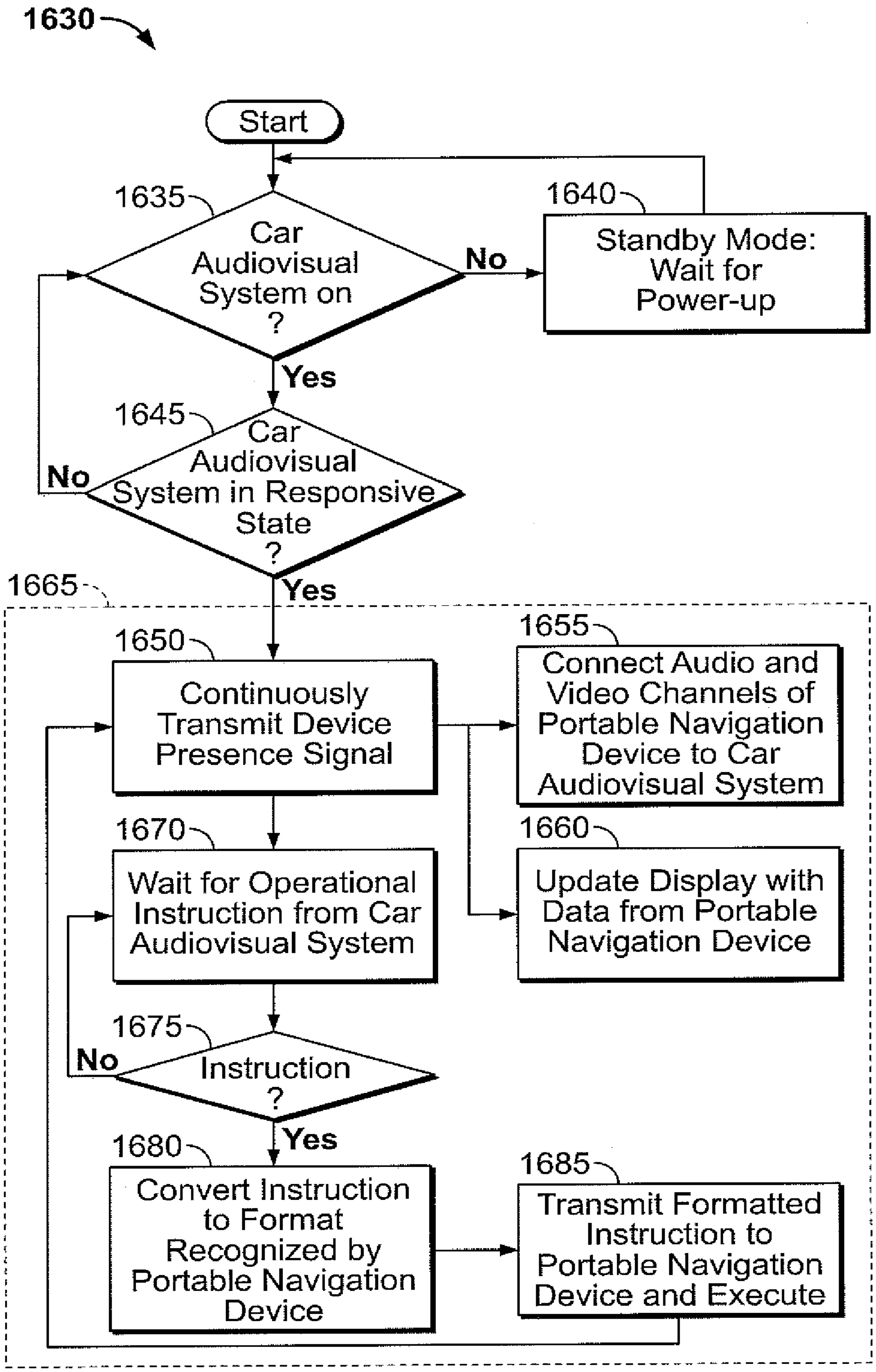

1630
Start
1635
Car Audiovisual System on ?
No
1640
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
1645
Car Audiovisual System in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
1665
1650
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
1655
Connect Audio and Video Channels of Portable Navigation Device to Car Audiovisual System
1670
Wait for Operational Instruction from Car Audiovisual System
1660
Update Display with Data from Portable Navigation Device
1675
Instruction ?
No
Yes
1680
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by Portable Navigation Device
1685
Transmit Formatted Instruction to Portable Navigation Device and Execute

FIG. 26B

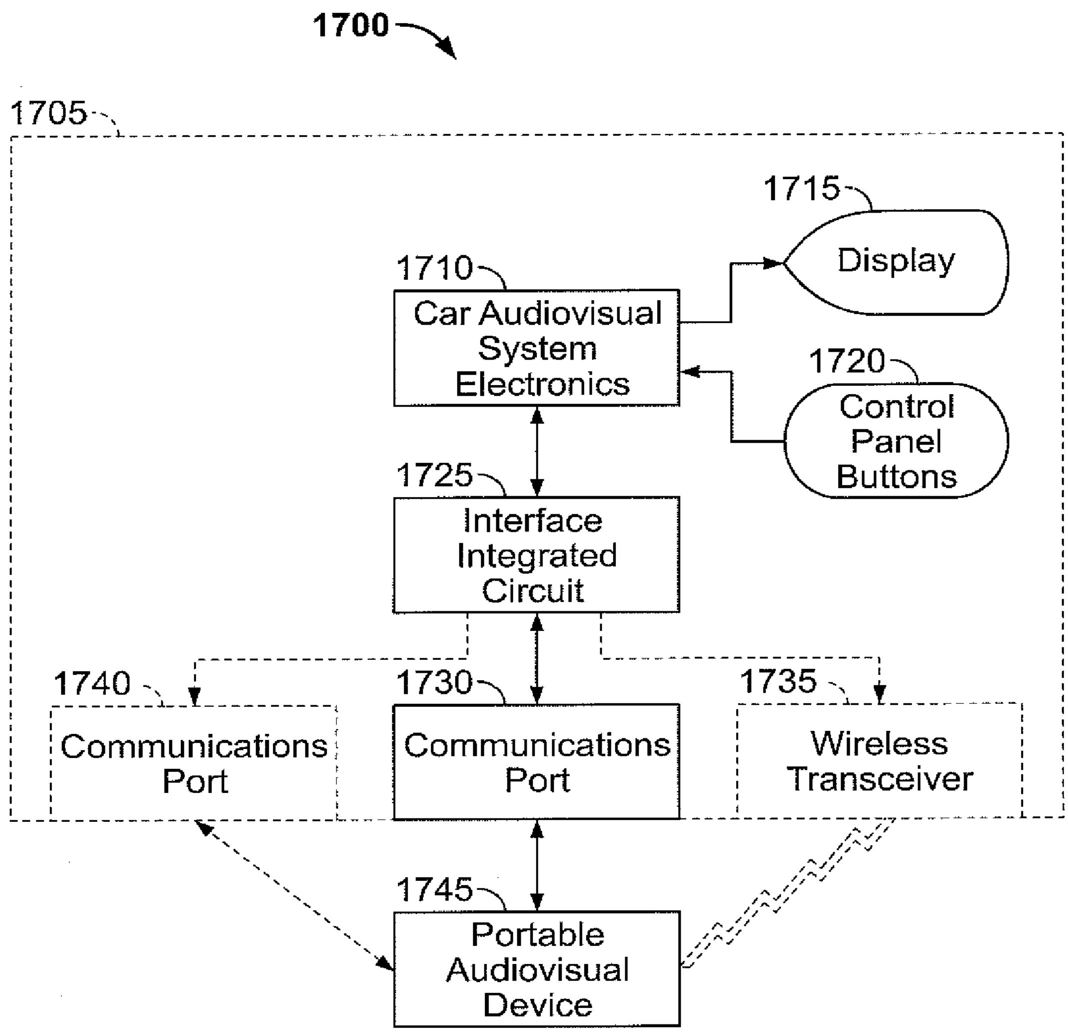

1700
1705
1715
Display
1710
Car Audiovisual System Electronics
1720
Control Panel Buttons
1725
Interface Integrated Circuit
1740
Communications Port
1730
Communications Port
1735
Wireless Transceiver
1745
Portable Audiovisual Device

FIG.27

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau

(43) International Publication Date
8 September 2006 (08.09.2006)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2006/094281 A2

(51) International Patent Classification: Not classified

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US2006/008043

(22) International Filing Date: 3 March 2006 (03.03.2006)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
11/071,667 3 March 2005 (03.03.2005) US

(71) Applicant: MARLOWE, Ira [US/US]; 6403 Hilltop Court, Fort Lee, NJ 07024 (US).

(74) Agent: FRISCIA, Michael; McCarter & English, LLP, Four Gateway Center, 100 Mulberry Street, Newark, NJ 07102 (US).

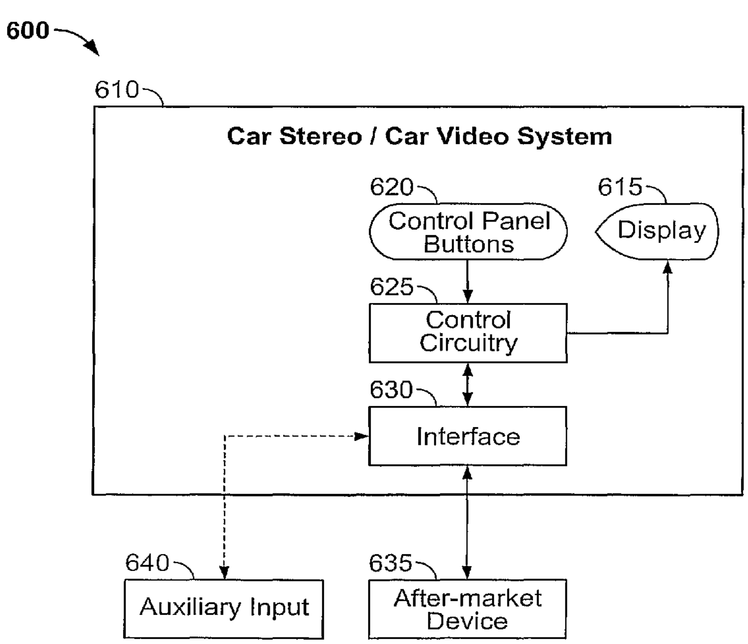
(81) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available)*: AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, LY, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available)*: ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, NL, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:
— *without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report*

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: MULTIMEDIA DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM



(57) Abstract: An multimedia device integration system is provided. One or more after-market audio or video devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, digital media device {e.g., MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, portable music center, or other device) satellite receiver {e.g., XM or Sirius receiver), DAB receiver, video device {e.g., DVD player), cellular telephone, or any other device or combinations thereof, is integrated for use with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo or video system, wherein control commands can be issued at the car stereo or video system and data from the after-market device can be displayed on the car stereo or video system. Control commands generated at the car stereo or video system are received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the after-market device, and dispatched to the after-market device for execution. Information from the after-market device is converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo or video system, and dispatched to the car stereo or video system for display thereon. One or more auxiliary input sources can be integrated with the car stereo or video system, and selected using the controls of the car stereo or video system. A docking station is provided for docking a portable audio or video device for integration with the car stereo or video system.

WO 2006/094281 A2

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

INVENTOR: IRA MARLOWE

TITLE: MULTIMEDIA DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM

SPECIFICATION

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. More specifically, the present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system for integrating after-market components such as satellite receivers, CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (*e.g.*, MP3 players, MP4 players, WMV players, Apple iPod devices, portable media centers, and other devices), Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receivers, auxiliary audio sources, video devices (*e.g.*, DVD players), cellular telephones, and other devices for use with factory-installed (OEM) or after-market car stereo and video systems.

RELATED ART

Automobile audio systems have continued to advance in complexity and the number of options available to automobile purchasers. Early audio systems offered a simple AM and/or FM tuner, and perhaps an analog tape deck for allowing cassettes, 8-tracks, and other types of tapes to be played while driving. Such early systems were closed, in that external devices could not be easily integrated therewith.

With advances in digital technology, CD players have been included with automobile audio systems. Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs) often produce car stereos having CD players and/or changers for allowing CDs to be played while driving. However, such systems often include proprietary buses and protocols that do not allow after-market audio systems, such as satellite receivers (e.g., XM satellite tuners), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receivers, digital media players (*e.g.*, Apple iPod, MP3, MP4, WMV, etc.), CD changers, auxiliary input sources, video devices (*e.g.*, DVD players), cellular telephones, and the like, to be easily integrated therewith. Thus, automobile purchasers are frequently forced to either entirely replace the OEM audio system, or use same throughout the life of the vehicle or the duration of ownership. Even if the OEM radio is replaced with an after-market radio, the after-market radio also frequently is not operable with an external device.

A particular problem with integrating after-market audio and video systems with existing car stereo and video systems is that signals generated by both systems are in proprietary formats, and are not capable of being processed by the after-market system. Additionally, signals generated by the after-market system are also in a proprietary format that is not recognizable by the car stereo or video system. Thus, in order to integrate after-market systems with existing car stereo and video systems, it is necessary to convert signals between such systems.

It known in the art to provide one or more expansion modules for OEM and after-market car stereos for allowing external audio products to be integrated with the car stereo. However, such expansion modules only operate with and allow integration of external audio products manufactured by the same manufacturer as the OEM / after-market car stereo. For example, a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc., cannot be integrated with an OEM car radio manufactured by TOYOTA or an after-market car radio manufactured by CLARION, Inc. Thus, existing expansion modules only serve the limited purpose of integrating equipment by the same manufacturer as the car stereo. Thus, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that allows any audio device of any manufacture to be integrated with any OEM or after-market radio system. Further, radio-frequency (RF) transmitters and cassette tape adapters have been developed for allowing music from a device external to a car radio, such as a portable CD player, to be played through the car radio using the FM receiver or the cassette deck of the radio. However, such systems are often prone to interference, and do not provide high fidelity.

Moreover, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that not only achieves integration of various audio and video devices that are alien to a given OEM or after-market car stereo or video system, but also allows for information to be exchanged between the after-market device and the car stereo or video system. For example, it would be desirable to provide a system wherein station, track, time, and song information can be retrieved from the after-market device, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo or video system for display thereby, such as at an LCD panel of the car stereo or on one or more display panels of a car video system. Such information could be transmitted and displayed on both hardwired car stereo and video systems (*e.g.*, radios installed in dashboards or at other locations within the car), or integrated for display on one or more software or graphically-driven radio systems operable with graphical display panels.

Additionally, it would be desirable to provide a multimedia device integration system that allows a user to control more than one device, such as a CD or satellite receiver and one or more auxiliary sources, and to quickly and conveniently switch between same using the existing controls of the car stereo or video system.

Accordingly, the present invention addresses these needs by providing a multimedia device integration system that allows a plurality of after-market devices, such as CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (*e.g.*, MP3 players, MP4 players, Apple iPod, WMV players, portable media centers, and other devices), satellite receivers, DAB receivers, auxiliary input sources, video devices (*e.g.*, DVD players), cellular telephones, or any combination thereof, to be integrated into existing car stereo and video systems while allowing information to be displayed on, and control to be provided from, the car stereo or video system.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. One or more after-market audio devices, such as CD players, CD changers, digital media devices (*e.g.*, MP3 players, MP4 players, WMV players, Apple iPod devices, portable media centers, and other devices), satellite receivers (*e.g.*, XM or Sirius receivers), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, or auxiliary input sources, can be connected to and operate with an existing stereo system in an automobile, such as an OEM car stereo system or an after-market car stereo system installed in the automobile. The integration system connects to and interacts with the car stereo at any available port of the car stereo, such as a CD input port, a satellite input, or other known type of connection. If the car stereo system is an after-market car stereo system, the present invention generates a signal that is sent to the car stereo to keep same in an operational state and responsive to external data and signals. Commands generated at the control panel are received by the present invention and converted into a format recognizable by the after-market device. The formatted commands are executed by the after-market device, and audio therefrom is channeled to the car stereo. Information from the after-market device is received by the present invention, converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo, and forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby. The formatted information could include information relating to a CD or MP3 track being played, channel, song, and artist information from a satellite receiver or DAB receiver, or video information from one or more external devices connected to the present invention. The information can be presented as one or more menus, textual, or graphical prompts for display on an LCD display of the radio, allowing interaction with the user at the radio. A docking port may be provided for allowing portable external audio devices to be connected to the interface of the present invention.

In an embodiment of the present invention, a dual-input device is provided for integrating both an external audio device and an auxiliary input with an OEM or after-market car stereo. The user can select between the external audio device and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. The invention can automatically detect the type of device connected to the auxiliary input, and integrate same with the car stereo.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with an existing car stereo system. A user can select between the auxiliary sources using the control panel of the car stereo. One or more after-market audio devices can be integrated with the auxiliary input sources, and a user can switch between the audio device and the auxiliary input sources using the car stereo. Devices connected to the auxiliary input sources are inter-operable with the car stereo, and are capable of exchanging commands and data via the interface.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating an external device for use with a car stereo or video system, wherein the interface is positioned within the car stereo or video system. The system comprises a car stereo or video system; an after-market device external to the car stereo or video system; an interface positioned within the car stereo or video system and connected between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device for exchanging data and audio or video signals between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market device from the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the after-market device; and means for processing and displaying data from the after-market device on a display of the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the car stereo or video system. The after-market device could comprise one or more of a CD changer, CD player, satellite receiver (*e.g.*, XM or Sirius), digital media device (*e.g.*, MP3, MP4, WMV, or Apple iPod device), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or any combination thereof.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system. The system comprises a car stereo or video system; a cellular telephone external to the car stereo or video system; an interface connected between the car stereo or video system and the cellular telephone for exchanging data and audio or video signals between the car stereo or video system and the cellular telephone; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the cellular telephone from the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the cellular telephone; and means for processing and displaying data from the cellular telephone on a display of the car stereo or video system in a format compatible with the car stereo or video system.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating an external video system for use with a car video system. The system comprises a car video system; an after-market video device external to the car video system; an interface connected between the car video system and the after-market video device for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car video system and the after-market video device; means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market video device from the car video system in a format compatible with the after-market video device; and means for processing and displaying data from the after-market video device on a display of the car video system in a format compatible with the car video system.

The present invention also provides an interface for integrating a plurality of after-market devices for use with a car stereo or video system using a single interface. In one embodiment, the system comprises an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo or video system and an after-market device; a plurality of configuration jumpers in the interface for specifying a first device type corresponding to the car stereo or video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; and a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo or video system and for converting signals from the car stereo or video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using settings of the plurality of configuration jumpers. In another embodiment, the system comprises an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo or video system and an after-market device; first and second wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the first wiring harness includes a first electrical configuration corresponding to the car stereo or video system and the second wiring harness includes a second electrical configuration corresponding to the after-market device; and a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo or video system and for converting signals from the car stereo or video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using the first and second electrical configurations of the first and second wiring harnesses. A plurality of wiring harnesses can be provided for integrating a plurality of devices.

The present invention also provides a method for integrating an after-market device for use with a car stereo or video system, comprising the steps of interconnecting the car stereo or video system and the after-market device with an interface; determining a first device type corresponding to the car stereo or video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; loading a protocol conversion software block from memory in the interface using the first and second device types; converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo or video system using the protocol conversion software block; and converting signals from the car stereo or video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device using the protocol conversion software block.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

These and other important objects and features of the invention will be apparent from the following Detailed Description of the Invention, taken in connection with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the multimedia device integration system of the present invention.

FIG. 2a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2c is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2d is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2e is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2f is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver and a plurality of auxiliary input source are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2g is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2h is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces and an audio device are integrated with a car stereo.

FIG. 3a is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with a car radio.

FIG. 3b is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating both a CD player and an auxiliary input source with a car radio, wherein the CD player and the auxiliary input are switchable by a user.

FIG. 3c is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 3d is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4a is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player with a car radio.

FIG. 4b is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player with a car radio.

FIG. 4c is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a satellite receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4d is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4e is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4f is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4g is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device and one or more auxiliary input sources.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention.

FIG. 7a is a perspective view of a docking station according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car.

FIG. 7b is an end view of the docking station of **FIG. 7a**.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, which includes the multimedia device integration system of the present invention incorporated therewith.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**.

FIG. 10 is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein the interface is incorporated within a car stereo or car video system.

FIG. 11a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system; **FIG. 11b** is a flowchart showing processing logic for integrating a cellular telephone for use with a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 12a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating an after-market video device for use with a car video system; **FIG. 12b** is a flowchart showing processing logic for integrating an after-market video device for use with a car video system.

FIG. 13a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein configuration jumpers and protocol conversion software blocks are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

FIG. 13b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein wiring harnesses and protocol conversion software blocks are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

FIG. 14 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface.

FIG. 15 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to specify one or more after-market device types for integration using a single interface.

FIG. 16 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to quickly navigate through a list of songs on one or more after-market devices using the controls of a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 17 is a diagram showing an another embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of external devices are integrated using a single interface.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to a multimedia device integration system. One or more after-market devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, portable media center, or other device), satellite receiver, digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or the like, can be integrated with an existing car radio or car video device, such as an OEM or after-market car stereo or video system. Control of the after-market device is enabled using the car stereo or car video system, and information from the after-market device, such as channel, artist, track, time, song, and other information information, is retrieved form the after-market device, processed, and forwarded to the car stereo or car video system for display thereon. The information channeled to the car stereo or video system can include video from the external device, as well as graphical and menu-based information. A user can review and interact with information via the car stereo. Commands from the car stereo or video system are received, processed by the present invention into a format recognizable by the after-market device device, and transmitted thereto for execution. One or more auxiliary input channels can be integrated by the present invention with the car stereo or video system. The user can switch between one or more after-market devices and one or more auxiliary input channels using the control panel buttons of the car stereo or video system.

As used herein, the term "integration" or "integrated" is intended to mean connecting one or more external devices or inputs to an existing car stereo or video system via an interface, processing and handling signals, audio, and/or video information, allowing a user to control the devices via the car stereo or video system, and displaying data from the devices on the car stereo or video system. Thus, for example, integration of a CD player with a car stereo system allows for the CD player to be remotely controlled via the control panel of the stereo system, and data from the CD player to be sent to the display of the stereo. Of course, control of after-market devices can be provided at locations other than the control panel of the car stereo or video system without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Further, as used herein, the term "inter-operable" is intended to mean allowing the external audio or video device to receive and process commands that have been formatted by the interface of the present invention, as well as allowing a car stereo or video system to display information that is generated by the external audio or video device and processed by the present invention. Additionally, by the term "inter-operable," it is meant allowing a device that is alien to the environment of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo or video system to be utilized thereby.

Also, as used herein, the terms "car stereo" and "car radio" are used interchangeably and are intended to include all presently existing car stereos, radios, video systems, such as physical devices that are present at any location within a vehicle, in addition to software and/or graphically- or display-driven receivers. An example of such a receiver is a software-driven receiver that operates on a universal LCD panel within a vehicle and is operable by a user via a graphical user interface displayed on the universal LCD panel. Further, any future receiver, whether a hardwired or a software/graphical receiver operable on one or more displays, is considered within the definition of the terms "car stereo" and "car radio," as used herein, and is within the spirit and scope of the present invention. Moreover, the term "car" is not limited to any specific type of automobile, but rather, includes all automobiles. Additionally, by the term "after-market," it is meant any device not installed by a manufacturer at the time of sale of the car.

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the multimedia device integration (or interface) system of the present invention, generally indicated at **20**. A plurality of devices and auxiliary inputs can be connected to the interface **20**, and integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. A CD player or changer **15** can be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. A satellite radio or DAB receiver **25**, such as an XM or Sirius radio satellite receiver or DAB receiver known in the art, could be integrated with the radio **10**, via the interface **20**. Further, an MP3 player **30** could also be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. The MP3 player **30** could be any known digital media device, such as an Apple iPod or any other digital media device. Moreover, a plurality of auxiliary input sources, illustratively indicated as auxiliary input sources **35** (comprising input sources 1 through *n*, *n* being any number), could also be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**. Optionally, a control head **12**, such as that commonly used with after-market CD changers and other similar devices, could be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**, for controlling any of the car radio **10**, CD player/changer **15**, satellite/DAB receiver **25**, MP3 player **30**, and auxiliary input sources **35**. Thus, as can be readily appreciated, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for the integration of a multitude of devices and inputs with an OEM or after-market car radio or stereo.

FIG. 2a is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device interface system of the present invention, wherein a CD player/changer **15** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The CD player **15** is electrically connected with the interface **20**, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. The interface **20** is electrically connected with the car radio **10**, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the car radio **10** includes a display **13** (such as an alphanumeric, electroluminescent display) for displaying information, and a plurality of control panel buttons **14** that normally operate to control the radio **10**. The interface **20** allows the CD player **15** to be controlled by the control buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Further, the interface **20** allows information from the CD player **15**, such as track, disc, time, and song information, to be retrieved therefrom, processed and formatted by the interface **20**, sent to the display **13** of the radio **10**.

Importantly, the interface **20** allows for the remote control of the CD player **15** from the radio **10** (e.g., the CD player **15** could be located in the trunk of a car, while the radio **10** is mounted on the dashboard of the car). Thus, for example, one or more discs stored within the CD player **15** can be remotely selected by a user from the radio **10**, and tracks on one or more of the discs can be selected therefrom. Moreover, standard CD operational commands, such as pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track forward, and track reverse (among other commands) can be remotely entered at the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10** for remotely controlling the CD player **15**.

FIG. 2b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an MP3 player **30** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via interface **20**. As mentioned earlier, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for a plurality of disparate audio devices to be integrated with an existing car radio for use therewith. Thus, as shown in **FIG. 2b**, remote control of the MP3 player **30** via radio **10** is provided for via interface **20**. The MP3 player **30** is electronically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The interface **20** allows data and audio signals to be exchanged between the MP3 player **30** and the car radio **10**, and processes and formats signals accordingly so that instructions and data from the radio **10** are processable by the MP3 player **30**, and vice versa. Operational commands, such as track selection, pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, and other commands, are entered via the control panel buttons **14** of car radio **10**, processed by the interface **20**, and formatted for execution by the MP3 player **30**. Data from the MP3 player, such as track, time, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and sent to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Audio from the MP3 player **30** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** to the radio **10** for playing.

FIG. 2c is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver **25** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via the interface **20**. Satellite/DAB receiver **25** can be any satellite radio receiver known in the art, such as XM or Sirius, or any DAB receiver known in the art. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is remotely operable by the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Commands from the radio **10** are received by the interface **20**, processed and formatted thereby, and dispatched to the satellite/DAB receiver **25** for execution thereby. Information from the satellite/DAB receiver **25**, including time, station, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed, and transmitted to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Further, audio from the satellite/DAB receiver **25** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** for playing by the radio **10**.

FIG. 2d is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The auxiliary inputs **35** can be connected to analog sources, or can be digitally coupled with one or more audio devices, such as after-market CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, satellite receivers, DAB receivers, and the like, and integrated with an existing car stereo. Preferably, four auxiliary input sources are connectable with the interface **20**, but any number of auxiliary input sources could be included. Audio from the auxiliary input sources **35** is selectively forwarded to the radio **10** under command of the user. As will be discussed herein in greater detail, a user can select a desired input source from the auxiliary input sources **35** by depressing one or more of the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** receives the command initiated from the control panel, processes same, and connects the corresponding input source from the auxiliary input sources **35** to allow audio therefrom to be forwarded to the radio **10** for playing. Further, the interface **20** determines the type of audio devices connected to the auxiliary input ports **35**, and integrates same with the car stereo **10**.

As mentioned previously, the present invention allows one or more external audio devices to be integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo, along with one or more auxiliary input sources, and the user can select between these sources using the controls of the car stereo. Such "dual input" capability allows operation with devices connected to either of the inputs of the device, or both. Importantly, the device can operate in "plug and play" mode, wherein any device connected to one of the inputs is automatically detected by the present invention, its device type determined, and the device automatically integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. Thus, the present invention is not dependent any specific device type to be connected therewith to operate. For example, a user can first purchase a CD changer, plug same into a dual interface, and use same with the car stereo. At a point later in time, the user could purchase an XM tuner, plug same into the device, and the tuner will automatically be detected and integrated with the car stereo, allowing the user to select from and operate both devices from the car stereo. It should be noted that such plug and play capability is not limited to a dual input device, but is provided for in every embodiment of the present invention. The dual-input configuration of the preset invention is illustrated in **FIGS. 2e-2h** and described below.

FIG. 2e is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an external CD player/changer **15** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Both the CD player **15** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** are electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which, in turn, is electrically interconnected to the radio **10**. Using the controls **14** of the radio **10**, a user can select between the

CD player **15** and one or more of the inputs **35** to selectively channel audio from these sources to the radio. The command to select from one of these sources is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and the corresponding source is channeled to the radio **10** by the interface **20**. As will be discussed later in greater detail, the interface **20** contains internal processing logic for selecting between these sources.

FIG. 2f is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. Similar to the embodiment of the present invention illustrated in **FIG. 2e** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, described in greater detail below, for allowing switching between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2g is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player **30** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. Similar to the embodiments of the present invention illustrated in **FIGS. 2e** and **2f** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, as will be discussed later in greater detail, for allowing switching between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2h is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces **40** and **44** and an audio device **17** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Importantly, the present invention can be expanded to allow a plurality of auxiliary inputs to be connected to the car stereo **10** in a tree-like fashion. Thus, as can be seen in **FIG. 2h**, a first auxiliary interface **40** is connected to the interface **20**, and allows data and audio from the ports **42** to be exchanged with the car radio **10**. Connected to one of the ports **42** is another auxiliary interface **44**, which, in turn, provides a plurality of input ports **46**. Any device connected to any of the ports **42** or **46** can be integrated with the car radio **10**. Further, any device connected to the ports **42** or **46** can be inter-operable with the car radio **10**, allowing commands to be entered from the car radio **10** (*e.g.*, such as via the control panel **14**) for commanding the device, and information from the device to be displayed by the car radio **10**. Conceivably, by configuring the interfaces **40**, **44**, and successive interfaces in a tree configuration, any number of devices can be integrated using the present invention.

The various embodiments of the present invention described above and shown in **FIGS. 1** through **2h** are illustrative in nature and are not intended to limit the spirit or scope of the present invention. Indeed, any conceivable audio device or input source, in any desired combination, can be integrated by the present invention into existing car stereo systems. Further, it is conceivable that not only can data and audio signals be exchanged between the car stereo and any external device, but also video information that can be captured by the present invention, processed thereby, and transmitted to the car stereo for display thereby and interaction with a user thereat.

Various circuit configurations can be employed to carry out the present invention. Examples of such configurations are described below and shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**.

FIG. 3a is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with an existing car stereo system. A plurality of ports **J1C1, J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH** are provided for allowing connection of the interface system of the present invention between an existing car radio, an after-market CD player or changer, or an auxiliary input source. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J1C1** connects to the input port of an OEM car radio, such as that manufactured by TOYOTA, Inc. Conceivably, port **J1C1** could be modified to allow connection to the input port of an after-market car radio. Ports **J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH** connect to an after-market CD changer, such as that manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc., or to an auxiliary input source.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1C1**, **J2A1**, and **X2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player or auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J1C1**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J1C1** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **J2A1, X2, RCH** and **LCH** is selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J1C1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F628 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F628 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having an internal, 4 MHz internal oscillator, 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, a capture/compare/PWM, a USART, 2 comparators, and a programmable voltage reference. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R13**, diodes **D1** through **D4**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1C1, J2A1, X2, RCH**, and **LCH**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3a** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3b is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration according to the present invention, wherein one or more after-market CD changers / players and an auxiliary input source are integrated with an existing car stereo, and wherein the user can select between the CD changer/player and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J4A, J4B, J3, J5L1, J5R1, J1,** and **J2**. Ports **J4A, J4B,** and **J3** allow the audio device interface system of the present invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos, such as an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, ports **J4A** and **J4B** can be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by BMW, Inc. Port **J3** can be connected to a car stereo manufactured by LANDROVER, Inc. Of course, any number of car stereos, by any manufacturer, could be provided. Ports **J1** and **J2** allow connection to an after-market CD changer or player, such as that manufactured by ALPINE, Inc., and an auxiliary input source. Optionally, ports **J5L1** and **J5R1** allow integration of a standard analog (line-level) source. Of course, a single standalone CD player or auxiliary input source could be connected to either of ports **J1** or **J2**.

Microcontroller **DD1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J4A, J4B, J3, J5L1, J5R1, J1,** and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player and auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J1** and **J2** with the car stereo connected to the ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**. For example, microcontroller **DD1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **DD1** receives information provided by the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** for display on the display of the car stereo. Further, the microcontroller **DD1** controls multiplexer **DA3** to allow selection between the CD player/changer and the auxiliary input. Audio signals provided at the ports **J1, J2, J5L1** and **J5R1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **DD1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **DD1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F872 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 64 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, capture/compare/PWM functions, a USART, and a synchronous serial port configurable as either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **DD1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexer **DA3** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer manufactured by FAIRCHILD SEMICONDUCTOR, Inc. Any other suitable multiplexer can be substituted for **DA3** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R18**, diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C11**, and **G1-G3**, transistors **Q1-Q3**, transformers **T1** and **T2**, amplifiers **LCH:A** and **LCH:B**, oscillator **XTAL1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **DD1** and the multiplexer **DA3** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J4A, J4B, J3, J5L1, J5R1, J1,** and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3b** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3c is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration for integrating a plurality of auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J1, RCH1, LCH1, RCH2, LCH2, RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4**. Port **J1** allows the multimedia device integration system of the present invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, port **J1** could be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by HONDA, Inc., or any other manufacturer. Ports **RCH1, LCH1, RCH2, LCH2, RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4** allow connection with the left and right channels of four auxiliary input sources. Of course, any number of auxiliary input sources and ports/connectors could be provided.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1, RCH1, LCH1, RCH2, LCH2, RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4**, and provides functionality for integrating one or more auxiliary input sources connected to the ports **RCH1, LCH1, RCH2, LCH2, RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4** with the car stereo connected to the port **J1**. Further, the microcontroller **U1** controls multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** to allow selection amongst any of the auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **RCH1, LCH1, RCH2, LCH2, RCH3, LCH3, RCH4,** and **LCH4** are selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller discussed earlier. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer, discussed earlier. Any other suitable microcontroller and multiplexers can be substituted for **U1, DA3,** and **DA4** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R15,** diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C5,** transistors **Q1-Q2,** amplifiers **DA1:A** and **DA1:B,** and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** and the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** with the hardware connected to the ports **J1, RCH1, LCH1, RCH2, LCH2, RCH3,**

LCH3, RCH4, and **LCH4**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3c** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3d is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a satellite receiver with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Ports **J1** and **J2** are provided for allowing connection of the integration system of the present invention between an existing car radio and a satellite receiver. These ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J2** connects to the input port of an existing car radio, such as that manufactured by KENWOOD, Inc. Port **1** connects to an after-market satellite receiver, such as that manufactured by PIONEER, Inc.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1** and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the satellite receiver connected to the port **J1** with the car stereo connected to the port **J2**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J2**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the satellite receiver via connector **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the satellite receiver via connector **J1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J2** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the port **J1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J2** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F873 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F873 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, 2 capture/compare/PWM functions, a synchronous serial port that can be configured as a either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus, and a USART. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R7**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and amplifier **A1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1** and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3d** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIGS. 4a through **6** are flowcharts showing processing logic according to the present invention. Such logic can be embodied as software and/or instructions stored in a read-only memory circuit (*e.g.*, and EEPROM circuit), or other similar device. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the processing logic described herein is stored in one or more microcontrollers, such as the microcontrollers discussed earlier with reference to **FIGS. 3a-3d**. Of course, any other suitable means for storing the processing logic of the present invention can be employed.

FIG. 4a is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **100**, for integrating a CD player or changer with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Beginning in step **100**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **104** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **106** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **106** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **106**, a CD handling process, indicated as block **108**, is invoked, allowing the CD player/changer to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **110**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a CD player/changer is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. Further, the signal need not be limited to a CD player device presence signal, but rather, could be any type of device presence signal (*e.g.*, MP3 player device presence signal, satellite receiver presence signal, video device presence signal, cellular telephone presence signal, or any other type of device presence signal). Concurrently with step **110**, or within a short period of time before or after the execution of step **110**, steps **112** and **114** are invoked. In step **112**, the audio channels of the CD player/changer are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the CD player/changer to be played through the car stereo. In step **114**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the CD player/changer, including track and time information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the external CD player/changer can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **110**, **112**, and **114** have been executed, control passes to step **116**.

In steps **116**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for CD operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step **118**, if a command is not detected, step **116** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **118** invokes step **120**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the CD player/changer connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a GM car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a CD player/changer manufactured by ALPINE, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by a CD player/changer of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **122** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the CD player/changer and executed. Step **110** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **130**, for integrating an MP3 player with an existing car stereo system. Examples of MP3 players that can be integrated by the present invention include, but are not limited to, the Apple iPod and other types of digital media devices. Beginning in step **132**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **134** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **136** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **136** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **136**, an MP3 handling process, indicated as block **138**, is invoked, allowing the MP3 player to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **140**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an MP3 player is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **142**, the audio channels of the MP3 player are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the MP3 player to be played through the car stereo. In step **144**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the MP3 player, including track, time, title, and song information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the MP3 player can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **140**, **142**, and **144** have been executed, control passes to step **146**.

In steps **146**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for MP3 operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step **148**, if a command is not detected, step **146** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **148** invokes step **150**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the MP3 player connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a HONDA car radio is converted into a format recognizable by an MP3 player manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by an MP3 player of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **152** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the MP3 player and executed. Step **140** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4c is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **160**, for integrating a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver with an existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **162**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **164** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **166** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **166** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **166**, a satellite/DAB receiver handling process, indicated as block **168**, is invoked, allowing the satellite/DAB receiver to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **170**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a satellite or DAB receiver is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **172**, the audio channels of the satellite/DAB receiver are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the satellite receiver or DAB receiver to be played through the car stereo. In step **174**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the satellite/DAB receiver, including channel number, channel name, artist name, song time, and song title, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. The information could be presented in one or more menus, or via a graphical interface viewable and manipulable by the user at the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the receiver can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **170**, **172**, and **174** have been executed, control passes to step **176**.

In steps **176**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for satellite/DAB receiver operational commands. Examples of such commands include station up, station down, station memory program, and other similar commands. In step **178**, if a command is not detected, step **176** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **178** invokes step **180**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the satellite/DAB receiver connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a FORD car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by a satellite/DAB receiver of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **182** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the satellite/DAB receiver and executed. Step **170** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4d is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **190**, for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **192**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **194** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **196** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **196** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **196**, an auxiliary input handling process, indicated as block **198**, is invoked, allowing one or more auxiliary inputs to be connected (channeled) to the car stereo. Further, if a plurality of auxiliary inputs exist, the logic of block **198** allows a user to select a desired input from the plurality of inputs. Beginning in step **200**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step **202**, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, each of the one or more auxiliary input sources are selectable by selecting a CD disc number on the control panel of the car radio. Thus, in step **204**, a determination is made as to whether the first disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **206** is invoked, wherein the first auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **208** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the second disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **210** is invoked, wherein the second auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **212** is invoked, wherein a third determination is made as to whether the third disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **214** is invoked, wherein the third auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **216** is invoked, wherein a fourth determination is made as to whether the fourth disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **218** is invoked, wherein the fourth auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **200** is re-invoked, and the process disclosed for block **198** repeated. Further, if any of steps **206, 210, 214**, or **218** are executed, then step **200** is re-invoked and block **198** repeated.

The process disclosed in block **198** allows a user to select from one of four auxiliary input sources using the control buttons of the car stereo. Of course, the number of auxiliary input sources connectable with and selectable by the present invention can be expanded to any desired number. Thus, for example, 6 auxiliary input sources could be provided and switched using corresponding selection key(s) or keystroke(s) on the control panel of the radio. Moreover, any desired keystroke, selection sequence, or button(s) on the control panel of the radio, or elsewhere, can be utilized to select from the auxiliary input sources without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

FIG. 4e is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **220**, for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **222**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **224** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **226** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the cars stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **226** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **226**, then step **228** is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo.

Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step **230**, a determination is made as to whether a CD player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external CD player or changer is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **231** and **232** are invoked. In step **231**, the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4a** (the CD handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **232**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **234** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **234** re-invokes step **228**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external CD player/changer to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **236** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the CD player/changer are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **238** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **230** (no external CD player/changer is connected to the present invention), then step **238** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4f is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **240**, for integrating a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **242**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **244** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **246** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **246** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **246**, then step **248** is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step **250**, a determination is made as to whether a satellite receiver or DAB receiver is present (*i.e.*, whether an external satellite receiver or DAB receiver is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **251** and **252** are invoked. In step **251**, the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4c** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the satellite receiver can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **252**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external satellite receiver to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **254** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **254** re-invokes step **258**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external satellite/DAB receiver to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **256** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the satellite receiver are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **258** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **250** (no external satellite/DAB receiver is connected to the present invention), then step **258** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4g is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating an MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo. Beginning in step **262**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **264** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **266** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **266** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **266**, then step **268** is invoked, wherein a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. Then, in step **270**, a determination is made as to whether an MP3 player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external MP3 player is connected to the multimedia device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **271** and **272** are invoked. In step **271**, the logic of block **138** of **FIG. 4b** (the MP3 handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the MP3 player can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **272**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external MP3 player to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **274** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **274** re-invokes step **278**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external MP3 player to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **276** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the MP3 player are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **278** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **270** (no external MP3 player is connected to the present invention), then step **278** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

As mentioned previously, to enable integration, the present invention contains logic for converting command signals issued from an after-market or OEM car stereo into a format compatible with one or more external audio devices connected to the present invention. Such logic can be applied to convert any car stereo signal for use with any external device. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 1**, below, for converting control signals from a BMW car stereo into a format understandable by a CD changer:

Table 1

```
;       ============================================
;       Radio requests changer to STOP (exit PLAY mode)
;       Decoding 6805183801004C message
;       ============================================

Encode_RD_stop_msg:

        movlw 0x68
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x05
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+1,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x18
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+2,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x38
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+3,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x01
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+4,W
        skpz
        return

        tstf  BMW_Recv_buff+5
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x4C
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+6,W
```

```
        skpz
        return

        bsf   BMW_Recv_STOP_msg
        return
```

The code portion shown in **Table 1** receives a STOP command issued by a BMW stereo, in a format proprietary to BMW stereos. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Recv_buff. The procedure "Encode_RD_stop_msg" repetitively applies an XOR function to the STOP command, resulting in a new command that is in a format compatible with the after-market CD player. The command is then stored in an output buffer for dispatching to the CD player.

Additionally, the present invention contains logic for retrieving information from an after-market audio device, and converting same into a format compatible with the car stereo for display thereby. Such logic can be applied to convert any data from the external device for display on the car stereo. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 2**, below, for converting data from a CD changer into a format understandable by a BMW car stereo:

Table 2

```
;       =====================================
;       Changer replies with STOP confirmation
;       Encoding 180A68390002003F0001027D message
;       =====================================

Load_CD_stop_msg:
        movlw 0x18
        movwf BMW_Send_buff

        movlw 0x0A
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+1

        movlw 0x68
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+2

        movlw 0x39
```

```
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+3

        movlw 0x00              ;current  status_XX=00,  power off

        movwf BMW_Send_buff+4

        movlw 0x02              ;current  status_YY=02,  power off

        movwf BMW_Send_buff+5

        clrf  BMW_Send_buff+6   ;separate field, always =0

        movfw BMW_MM_stat       ;current status_MM  ,  magazine config

        movwf BMW_Send_buff+7

        clrf  BMW_Send_buff+8   ;separate field, always =0

        movfw BMW_DD_stat       ;current  status_DD  ,  current disc

        movwf BMW_Send_buff+9

        movfw BMW_TT_stat       ;current  status_TT  ,  current track

        movwf BMW_Send_buff+10

        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+9,W ;calculate check sum
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+8,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+7,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+6,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+5,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+4,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+3,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+2,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+1,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff,W

        movwf BMW_Send_buff+11  ;store check sum
        movlw D'12'             ;12 bytes total
        movwf BMW_Send_cnt
        bsf   BMW_Send_on       ;ready to send
        return
```

The code portion shown in **Table 2** receives a STOP confirmation message from the CD player, in a format proprietary to the CD player. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Send_buff. The procedure "Load_CD_stop_msg" retrieves status information, magazine information, current disc, and current track information from the CD changer, and constructs a response containing this information. Then, a checksum is calculated and stored in another buffer. The response and checksum are in a format compatible with the BMW stereo, and are ready for dispatching to the car stereo.

The present invention also includes logic for converting signals from an OEM car stereo system for use with a digital media device such as an MP3, MP4, or Apple iPod player. Shown below are code samples for allowing commands and data to be exchanged between a Ford car stereo and an Apple iPod device:

Table 3

```
//decoding Ford "play" command :41-C0-80-CA-01+

        if ( ACP_rx_ready == ON ) {
                ACP_rx_ready = OFF;
                ACP_rx_taddr = ACP_rx_buff[1];
                ACP_rx_saddr = ACP_rx_buff[2];
                ACP_rx_data1 = ACP_rx_buff[3];
                ACP_rx_data2 = ACP_rx_buff[4];
                ACP_rx_data3 = ACP_rx_buff[5];
                if ( (ACP_rx_saddr == 0x80) ) {
                        switch ( ACP_rx_taddr ) {
                                case 0xC0:
                                        if ( ACP_rx_data1 == 0xCA)
{
                                                if ( ACP_rx_data2
== 0x01 ) {

      flags.ACP_play_req = 1;

                                                }
                                                break;
                                        }
                                        break;
                        }
                }
```

In the code portion shown in **Table 3**, a "Play" command selected by a user at the controls of a Ford OEM car stereo is received, and portions of the command are stored in one or more buffer arrays. Then, as shown below in **Table 4**, the decoded portions of the command stored in the one or more buffer arrays are used to construct a "Play/Pause" command in a format compatible with the Apple iPod device, and the command is sent to the Apple iPod for execution thereby:

Table 4

```
// encoding iPod "play/pause" command 0xFF 0x55 0x03 0x02 0x00
0x01 0xFA

        if ( iPod_play_req == ON ) {
                iPod_play_req = OFF;
                iPod_tx_data[0] = 0x55;
                iPod_tx_data[1] = 0x03;
                iPod_tx_data[2] = 0x02;
                iPod_tx_data[3] = 0x00;
                iPod_tx_data[4] = 0x01;
                iPod_tx_counter = 5;
                iPod_tx_ready = ON;
        }
```

While the code portions shown in **Tables 1-2** are implemented using assembler language, and the code portions shown in **Tables 3-4** are implemented using the C programming language, it is to be expressly understood that any low or high level language known in the art could be utilized without departing from the spirit or scope of the invention. It will be appreciated that various other code portions can be developed for converting signals from any after-market or OEM car stereo for use by an after-market external audio device, and vice versa.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **300** for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device, and one or more auxiliary input sources. As was discussed earlier, the present invention allows a user to switch from one or more connected audio devices, such as an external CD player/changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, or the like, and activate one or more auxiliary input sources. A selection sequence, initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo, allows such switching. Beginning in step **302**, the buttons of the control panel are monitored. In step **304**, a determination is made as to whether a "Track Up" button or sequence has been initiated by the user. The "Track Up" button or sequence can for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step **306** is invoked, wherein the sensed button or sequence is processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the external audio device for execution. Then, step **302** is re-invoked, so that additional buttons or sequences can be monitored.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step **304**, step **308** is invoked, wherein the present invention waits for a predetermined period of time while monitoring the control panel buttons for additional buttons or sequences. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the predetermined period of time is 750 milliseconds, but of course, other time durations are considered within the spirit and scope of the present invention. In step **310**, a determination is made as to whether the user has initiated a "Track Down" button or sequence at the control panel of the car stereo within the predetermined time period. These sequences can be used for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step **312** is invoked. In step **312**, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, whether the predetermined period of time has expired). If a negative determination is made, step **308** is re-invoked. Otherwise, is a positive determination is made, step **312** invokes step **306**, so that any buttons or key sequences initiated by the user that are not a "Track Down" command are processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the audio device for execution.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step **310** (a "Track Down" button or sequence has been initiated within the predetermined time period), then step **314** is invoked. In step **314**, the audio channels of the audio device are disconnected, and then step **316** is invoked. In step **316**, the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is invoked, so that the user can select from one of the auxiliary input sources in accordance with the present invention. Thus, at this point in time, the system has switched, under user control, from the audio device to a desired auxiliary input. Although the foregoing description of the process **300** has been described with reference to "Track Up" and "Track Down" buttons or commands initiated by the user, it is to be expressly understood that any desired key sequence, keystroke, button depress, or any other action, can be sensed in accordance with the present invention and utilized for switching modes.

When operating in auxiliary mode, the present invention provides an indication on the display of the car stereo corresponding to such mode. For example, the CD number could be displayed as "1", and the track number displayed as "99," thus indicating to the user that the system is operating in auxiliary mode and that audio and data is being supplied from an auxiliary input source. Of course, any other indication could be generated and displayed on the display of the car stereo, such as a graphical display (*e.g.*, an icon) or textual prompt.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **320**, for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention. The present invention can sense device types connected to the auxiliary input ports, and can integrate same with the car stereo using the procedures discussed earlier. Beginning in step **322**, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored for a button or sequence initiated by the user corresponding to an auxiliary input selection (such as the disc number method discussed earlier with reference to **FIG. 4d**). In response to an auxiliary input selection, step **324** is invoked, wherein the type of device connected to the selected auxiliary input is sensed by the present invention. Then, step **326** is invoked.

In step **326**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a CD player/changer. If a positive determination is made, step **328** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4a** (the CD handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the CD player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **326**, then step **330** is invoked. In step **330**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is an MP3 player. If a positive determination is made, step **334** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **138** if **FIG. 4b** (the MP3 handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the MP3 player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **330**, then step **336** is invoked. In step **336**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver. If a positive determination is made, step **338** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4c** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the satellite receiver is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **336**, step **322** is re-invoked, so that additional auxiliary input selections can be monitored and processed accordingly. Of course, process **320** can be expanded to allow other types of devices connected to the auxiliary inputs of the present invention to be integrated with the car stereo.

The present invention can be expanded for allowing video information generated by an external device to be integrated with the display of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. In such a mode, the invention accepts RGB (red/green/blue) input signals from the external device, and converts same to composite signals. The composite signals are then forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby, such as on an LCD panel of the stereo. Additionally, the present invention can accept composite input signals from an external device, and convert same to RGB signals for display on the car stereo. Further, information from the external device can be formatted and presented to the user in one or more graphical user interfaces or menus capable of being viewed and manipulated on the car stereo.

FIG. 7a is a perspective view of a docking station **400** according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car. Importantly, the present invention can be adapted to allow portable audio devices to be integrated with an existing car stereo. The docking station **400** allows such portable devices to be conveniently docked and integrated with the car stereo. The docking station **400** includes a top portion **402** hingedly connected at a rear portion **408** to a bottom portion **404**, preferably in a clam-like configuration. A portable audio device **410**, such as the SKYFI radio distributed by DELPHI, Inc., is physically and electrically connected with the docking portion **412**, and contained within the station **100**. A clasp **406** can be provided for holding the top and bottom portions in a closed position to retain the device **410**. Optionally, a video device could also be docked using the docking station **400**, and tabs **413** can be provided for holding the docking station **400** in place against a portion of a car. Conceivably, the docking station **400** could take any form, such as a sleeve-like device for receiving and retaining a portable audio device and having a docking portion for electrically and mechanically mating with the audio device.

FIG. 7b is an end view showing the rear portion **408** of the docking station **400** of **FIG. 7a**. A hinge **414** connects the top portion and the bottom portions of the docking station **400**. A data port **416** is provided for interfacing with the audio device docked within the station **400**, and is in electrical communication therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the data port **416** is an RS-232 serial or USB data port that allows for the transmission of data with the audio device, and which connects with the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating the audio device with an OEM or after-market car stereo. Any known bus technology can be utilized to interface with any portable audio or video device contained within the docking station **400**, such as FIREWIRE, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or any other bus technology known in the art. It should be noted that the present invention can be operated without a docking station, *i.e.*, a portable audio or video device can be plugged directly into the present invention for integration with a car stereo or video system.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, indicated generally at **500**, which includes the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **540**, incorporated therewith. As shown in **FIG. 8a**, the docking station **500** includes a base portion **530**, a bottom member **515** interconnected with the base portion **530** at an edge thereof, and a top member **510** hingedly interconnected at an edge to the base portion **530**. The top member **510** and the bottom member **515** define a cavity for docking and storing a portable audio device **520**, which could be a portable CD player, MP3 player, satellite (*e.g.*, XM, SIRIUS, or other type) tuner, or any other portable audio device. The docking station **500** would be configured to accommodate a specific device, such as an IPOD from Apple Computer, Inc., or any other portable device.

The multimedia device integration system **540**, in the form of a circuit board, is housed within the base portion **530** and performs the integration functions discussed herein for integrating the portable device **520** with an existing car stereo or car video system. The integration system **540** is in communication with the portable device **520** via a connector **550**, which is connected to a port on the device **520**, and a cable **555** interconnected between the connector **550** and the integration system **540**. The connector **550** could be any suitable connector and can vary according to the device type. For example, a MOLEX, USB, or any other connector could be used, depending on the portable device. The integration system **540** is electrically connected with a car stereo or car video system by cable **560**. Alternatively, the integration system could wirelessly communicate with the car stereo or car video system. A transmitter could be used at the integration system to communicate with a receiver at the car stereo or car video system. Where automobiles include Bluetooth systems, such systems can be used to communicate with the integration system. As can be readily appreciated, the docking station **500** provides a convenient device for docking, storing, and integrating a portable device for use with a car stereo. Further, the docking station **500** could be positioned at any desired location within a vehicle, including, but not limited to, the vehicle trunk.

As shown in **FIG. 8b**, the top member **510** can be opened in the general direction indicated by arrow **A** to allow for access to the portable audio device **520**. In this fashion, the device **520** can be quickly accessed for any desired purpose, such as for inserting and removing the device **520** from the docking station **500**, as well as for providing access to the controls of the device **520**.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**. The docking station **500** houses both a portable audio or video device **520** and a multimedia device integration system (or interface) **540**. The shape and configuration of the docking station **500** can be varied as desired without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

The integration system of the present invention provides for control of a portable audio or video device, or other device, through the controls of the car stereo or video system system. As such, controls on the steering wheel, where present, may also be used to control the portable audio device or other device. Further, in all embodiments of the present invention, communication between the after-market device and a car stereo or video system can be accomplished using known wireless technologies, such as Bluetooth.

FIG. 10 is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **600**, wherein the interface **630** is incorporated within a car stereo or car video system **610**. The interface **630** is in electrical communication with the control panel buttons **620**, display **615**, and associated control circuitry **625** of the car stereo or video system **610**. The interface **630** could be manufactured on a separate printed circuit board positioned within the stereo or video system **610**, or on one or more existing circuit boards of the stereo or video system **610**. An after-market device **635** can be put into electrical communication with the interface **630** via a port or connection on the car stereo or video system **610**, and integrated for use with the car stereo or video system **610**.

The device **635** can be controlled using the control panel buttons **620** of the car stereo or video system **610**, and information from the device **635** is formatted by the interface **630** and displayed in the display **615** of the car stereo or video system **610**. Additionally, control commands generated at the car stereo or car video device **610** are converted by the interface **630** into a format (protocol) compatible with the multimedia device **635**, and are dispatched thereto for execution. A plurality of multimedia devices could be intergrated using the interface **630**, as well as one or more auxiliary input sources **640**. The after-market device **635** could comprise any audio, video, or telecommunications device, including, but not limited to, a CD player, CD changer, digital media player (*e.g.*, MP3 player, MP4 player, WMV player, Apple iPod, or any other player), satellite radio (*e.g.*, XM, Sirius, Delphi, etc.), video device (*e.g.*, DVD player), cellular telephone, or any other type of device or combinations thereof. Additionally, one or more interfaces could be connected to the interface **630** ("daisy-chained") to allow multiple products to be integrated. The device **600** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3a-3d** and modified depending upon the type of the after-market device **635**.

FIG. 11a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **645**, wherein a cellular telephone **670** is intergrated for use with a car stereo. The telephone **670** is in electrical communication with the interface **665**, which receives data from the cellular telephone and formats same for displaying on the display **650** of the car stereo or video system **660**. Commands for controlling the telephone **670** can be entered using the control panel buttons **655** of the car stereo or video system **660**. The commands are processed by the interface **665**, converted into a format (protocol) compatible with the telephone **670**, and transmitted to the telephone **670** for processing thereby. Additionally, audio from the telephone **670** can be channeled to the car stereo or video system **660** via the interface **665** and played through the speakers of the car stereo or video system **660**. For example, if the telephone **670** is provided with the ability to download songs or music, such songs or music can be selected using the car stereo or video system **660** and played therethrough using the interface **665**. It should be noted that control of the cellular telephone could be provided using one or more displays (*e.g.*, LCD) of a car video system. Moreover, control of the cellular telephone **670** is not limited to the use of buttons on the car stereo or video ststem **660**, and indeed, a software or graphically-driven menu or interface can be used to control the cellular telephone. The device **645** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3a-3d** and modified for use with the cellular telephone **670**.

FIG. 11b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **647**, for integrating a cellular telephone with a car radio. Beginning in step **649**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **651** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **653** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in a state responsive to signals external to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **649** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **653**, a cellular telephone handling process, indicated as block **661**, is invoked. Beginning in step **654**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a cellular telephone is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **657**, the audio channels of the cellular telephone are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the cellular telephone to be played through the car stereo. In step **659**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the cellular telephone, such as song information corresponding to one or more songs downloaded onto the cellular telephone. After steps **654**, **657**, and **659** have been executed, control passes to step **663**.

In steps **663**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for cellular telephone operational commands. In step **664**, if a command is not detected, step **663** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **663** invokes step **667**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the cellular telephone connected to the present invention. Once the command has been formatted, step **669** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the cellular telephone and executed. Step **654** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 12a is a diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **675**, wherein an after-market video device **695** is integrated for use with a car video system **685**. The after-market video device **695** could comprise a portable DVD player, digital video (DV) camera, digital camera, or any other video device. The interface **690** receives output video signals from the device **695**, and converts same for display on one or more displays **680** (*e.g.*, LCD seat-back displays in a minivan, fold-down displays mounted on the roof of a vehicle, vehicle navigation displays, etc.) of the car video system **685**. The interface **690** could convert between composite and red/green/blue (RGB) video signals, and vice versa, using commercially-available video format conversion chips such as the TDA8315, TDA4570, TDA3567, TDA3566A, and TDA3569A video conversion chips manufactured by Philips Corp., and the AL251 and AL250 video conversion chips manufactured by Averlogic Technologies, Inc., or any other suitable video conversion chips. Commands issued by a user using the car video system **685** or display(s) **680** for controlling the device **695** are received by the interface **690**, converted into a format compatible with the device **695**, and transmitted thereto for processing. The device **675** could include one or more of the circuits disclosed in **FIGS. 3a-3d** and modified for use with the video device **695**.

FIG. 12b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **671**, for integrating an after-market video device with a car video system. Beginning in step **673**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car video system is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **674** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car video system to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **677** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car video system is in a state responsive to signals external to the car video system. If a negative determination is made, step **673** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **677**, an after-market video device handling process, indicated as block **687**, is invoked. Beginning in step **679**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that an external device is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car video system. Importantly, this signal prevents the car video system from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. In step **681**, the audio and video channels of the after-market device are connected (channeled) to the car video system, allowing audio and video from the after-market device to be played through the car video system. In step **684**, the display(s) of the car video system are updated with data from the after-market device. After steps **679**, **681**, and **684** have been executed, control passes to step **683**.

In step **683**, the present invention monitors the car video system for after-market video device operational commands. In step **689**, if a command is not detected, step **683** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **689** invokes step **691**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the after-market video device connected to the present invention. Once the command has been formatted, step **693** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the after-market video device and executed. Step **679** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 13a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system **710** of the present invention, wherein configuration jumpers **720** and protocol conversion software blocks **724** are provided for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface. The jumpers **720** can be set to a plurality of different settings, each of which corresponds to an after-market device of a specific type (*e.g.*, CD changer, CD player, digital media player, satellite radio, video device, cellular telephone, etc.) or from a specific manufacturer. Additionally, the jumpers **720** can be used to specify one or more device or manufacturer types for the car stereo or video system **705**. The settings of the configuration jumpers **720** correspond to one or more protocol conversion software blocks **724** stored in memory (*e.g.*, programmable flash memory, ROM, EEPROM, etc.) **725** of the interface **710**. Each of the software blocks **724** controls the interface circuitry **715** and contains instructions for converting data from the device **707** into a format compatible with the car stereo or video system **705**, and vice versa. For example, a first block could contain software for allowing communication between an Apple iPod and an in-dash car stereo manufactured by Sony, and a second block could contain software for allowing communication between a DVD player and a car video system. Any desired number of blocks could be stored in the memory **725** and can be selected as desired by the user via configuration jumpers **720**. As such, a single interface **710** can be used for integrating numerous devices of various types and manufactures for use with one or more car stereo or video systems. The device **710** could include one or more of the circuits shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**, with modifications depending upon the device types of the devices **705** and **707.**

FIG. 13b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, wherein wiring harnesses **727** and **728** and protocol conversion software blocks **729** are provided for integrating multimedia devices of various types using a single interface **726**. In this embodiment, the electrical configurations (pinouts) of each of the harnesses **727** and **728** correspond to car stereo / video systems and after-market devices of specific types and made by specific manufacturers (*e.g.*, harness **727** could correspond to a BMW car stereo, and harness **728** could correspond to an ALPINE satellite tuner). The electrical configurations (pinouts) of the harnesses are utilized by the interface **726** to retrieve a specific protocol conversion software block **729** that allows communication between the devices. The interface **726** could be provided with a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks pre-loaded into memory in the interface, and could be provided with any desired harnesses. The interface **726** could include one or more of the circuits shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**, with modification depending upon the device types of the devices attached to the wiring harnesses **727** and **728**.

FIG. 14 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **730**, of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for integrating after-market devices of various types using a single interface. In step **735**, the interface determines types of devices that are connected thereto, including the car stereo or video system and one or more after-market devices to be integrated therewith. This could be achieved by the configuration jumper settings or the harness types connected to the interface and discussed with respect to **FIGS. 13a** and **13b**. Then, in step **740**, a protocol conversion software block is selected from blocks of conversion software (*e.g.*, from the blocks **725** and **729** shown in **FIGS. 13a** and **13b**). In step **745**, instructions are converted using the selected conversion block to allow the car stereo or video system to operate with the multimedia device.

FIG. 15 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **750**, of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention for allowing a user to specify one or more after-market device types for integration using a single interface. In step **770**, a user is provided with one or more lists of devices to be integrated, which are displayed on the display **760** of the car stereo or video device **755**. Then, in step **775**, using the buttons **765** of the car video device, the user can specify the type of multimedia device to be integrated (*e.g.*, by scrolling through the lists). Additionally, the device type could be specified using a graphical or software menu displayed on the car stereo or car video system. In step **780**, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, the user has not selected a device type within a predetermined period of time). If a positive determination is made, step **785** occurs, wherein a protocol conversion software block is selected from memory corresponding to the last device type displayed by the car stereo or video system. If a negative determination is made, step **790** is invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether the user has specified a device type. If a negative determination is made, step **775** is re-invoked so that the user can specify a device type. If a positive determination is made, step **795** is invoked, wherein a protocol conversion software block is selected from memory corresponding to the device specified by the user. In step **800**, the protocol conversion software block is mapped to a logical address in memory. Then, in step **805**, instructions to be exchanged between the car stereo or video system and the after-market device are converted using the software block to allow communication between the devices using compatible formats. Accordingly, the logic of **FIG. 15** allows a single interface having multiple protocol conversion software blocks to be used integrate a plurality of after-market devices with a car stereo or video system.

FIG. 16 is a flowchart showing processing logic of the multimedia device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **810**, for allowing a user to quickly navigate through a list of songs on one or more after-market devices using the controls of a car stereo or video system (fast navigation technique). This method allows a user to quickly select a song from a list of songs available on an after-market device for playing on the car stereo or video system, and could be applied for use with any type of after-market device, including, but not limited to, a digital media player such as an MP3 player or Apple iPod player. Beginning in step **812**, a user is provided with a list of alphanumeric characters on a display of the car stereo or video system. This list could include the letters A through Z, as well as the numbers 0 through 9. In step **814**, the user can specify a desired alphanumeric character, which can be specified by scrolling through the list using one or more controls of the car stereo or video system and pressing a button once the desired character has been highlighted, or optionally, if an alphanumeric keypad (or touchscreen interface) is provided on the car stereo or video system, the user can directly enter the desired alphanumeric character.

When the desired alphanumeric character has been specified, in step **816** a remote database is queried using the alphanumeric character. The remote database could comprise a list of songs stored in one or more after-market devices integrated by the present invention for use with the car stereo or video system. In step **818**, a list of potentially matching songs is retrieved from the database and presented on the display of the car stereo or video system for perusal by the user. For example, if the user specified the letter "A," the list could include all songs in the remote database having titles (or artists) beginning with the letter "A." In step **820**, a determination is made as to whether a desired song appears in the list and is immediately viewable by the user, without requiring the user to scroll through the list. If a positive determination is made, step **822** is invoked, wherein the desired song is selected by the user and retrieved from the after-market device for playing on the car stereo or video system.

In the event that a negative determination is made in step **820**, step **824** is invoked, wherein the user can specify an additional alphanumeric character using the car stereo or video system. For example, if the user initially specified the letter "A" and the desired song is not visible in the list of songs without scrolling, the user can refine the query by adding an additional alphanumeric character. Thus, for example, the user can specify the letters "AN" to search for songs having titles (or artists) beginning with the letters "AN." In step **826**, the remote database of the after-market device is queried using the specified letters. In step **828**, a list of potential matches is presented to the user at the car stereo or video system. In step **830**, a determination is made as to whether the desired song appears in the list and is immediately viewable without requiring the user to scroll through the list. If a positive determination is made, step **822** is invoked, wherein the user can select the desired song for retrieval from the after-market device and playing on the car stereo or video system. If a negative determination is made, step **832** is invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether a threshold number of alphanumeric characters has been specified by the user. For example, a maximum threshold of 3 alphanumeric characters could be specified, or any other desired number. If a negative determination is made, steps **824-832** are re-invoked in the manner disclosed herein to allow the user to specify additional alphanumeric characters for querying the remote database. If a positive determination is made (threshold met), then processing terminates and the user must scroll through the list of retrieved songs or repeat the processing disclosed in **FIG. 16** to begin a new query.

FIG. 17 is a diagram showing an another embodiment of the present invention, indicated generally at **850**, wherein a plurality of external devices are integrated using a single interface **852**. Any desired number or combination of devices can be integrated for use with a car stereo or video system using the interface **852**. The interface **852** houses a plurality of ports **858** for connecting any desired number of external devices, and a port **856** for connection with a car stereo or video system. The ports **858** and **856** could be any suitable type of input port, and could vary depending upon the types of devices to be integrated. Additionally, the interface **852** includes integration electronics **854**, which could include any desired electronics disclosed herein for integrating a plurality of external devices.

As shown in **FIG. 17**, a CD player **860**, a digital media device **862**, a satellite tuner **864**, a video device **866**, a cellular phone **868**, and an auxiliary input **870** are connected to the interface **852** and integrated for use with a car stereo or video system. The CD player **860** could comprise any desired CD player or changer. The digital media device **862** could comprise any portable digital media device, such as an Apple iPod, MP3 player, MP4, player, WMV player, portable music center, or any other desired device. The satellite tuner **864** could comprise any desired satellite tuner, such as an XM or Sirius tuner. The video device **866** could comprise any desired video device, such as a DVD player. The cellular phone **868** could comprise any cellular telephone capable of downloading and storing music or video files. The auxiliary input **870** could comprise any desired external device. Any desired number of interfaces **852** could be interconnected ("daisy-chained"). Further, the interface **852** could form part of an existing car stereo or video system. Control of the external devices connected to the interface **852** is provided through the car stereo or video system.

Having thus described the invention in detail, it is to be understood that the foregoing description is not intended to limit the spirit and scope thereof.

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car stereo system;

an after-market device external to the car stereo system;

an interface positioned within the car stereo system and connected between the car stereo system and the after-market device for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the after-market device;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market device from the car stereo system in a format compatible with the after-market device; and

means for processing and displaying data from the after-market device on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system.

2. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the after-market device comprises a CD player, CD changer, digital media player, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receiver, satellite receiver, or a cellular telephone.

3. The apparatus of claim 2, wherein the digital media player comprises an MP3 player, an MP4 player, WMV player, or an Apple iPod.

4. The apparatus of claim 1, further comprising one or more auxiliary input sources connected to the interface.

5. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car stereo system;

a cellular telephone external to the car stereo system;

an interface connected between the car stereo system and the cellular telephone for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo system and the cellular telephone;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the cellular telephone from the car stereo system in a format compatible with the cellular telephone; and

means for processing and displaying data from the cellular telephone on a display of the car stereo system in a format compatible with the car stereo system.

6. The apparatus of claim 5, further comprising songs or music downloadable through the cellular telephone.

7. The apparatus of claim 6, wherein the songs or music are playable through the car stereo system using the interface.

8. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car video system;

a cellular telephone external to the car video system;

an interface connected between the car video system and the cellular telephone for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car video system and the cellular telephone;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the cellular telephone from the car video system in a format compatible with the cellular telephone; and

means for processing and displaying data from the cellular telephone on a display of the car video system in a format compatible with the car video system.

9. The apparatus of claim 8, further comprising songs or music downloadable through the cellular telephone.

10. The apparatus of claim 9, wherein the songs or music are playable through the car video system using the interface.

11. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car video system;

an after-market video device external to the car video system;

an interface connected between the car video system and the after-market video device for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car video system and the after-market video device;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the after-market video device from the car video system in a format compatible with the after-market video device; and means for processing and displaying data from the after-market video device on a display of the car video system in a format compatible with the car video system.

12. The apparatus of claim 11, wherein the after-market video device comprises a DVD player.

13. The appataus of claim 11, wherein the interface is positioned within the car video system.

14. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo system and an after-market device;

a plurality of configuration jumpers in the interface for specifying a first device type corresponding to the car stereo system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; and

a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo system and for converting signals from the car stereo system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using settings of the plurality of configuration jumpers.

15. The system of claim 14, wherein the plurality of protocol conversion software blocks allow a plurality of after-market devices to integrated with the car stereo system.

16. The system of claim 14, wherein the plurality of configuration jumpers are settable by a user.

17. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

an interface in electrical communication with a car video system and an after-market device;

a plurality of configuration jumpers in the interface for specifying a first device type corresponding to the car video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device; and

a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car video system and for converting signals from the car video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using settings of the plurality of configuration jumpers.

18. The system of claim 17, wherein the plurality of protocol conversion software blocks allow a plurality of after-market devices to integrated with the car video system.

19. The system of claim 17, wherein the plurality of configuration jumpers are settable by a user.

20. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

an interface in electrical communication with a car stereo system and an after-market device;

first and second wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the first wiring harness includes a first electrical configuration corresponding to the car stereo system and the second wiring harness includes a second electrical configuration corresponding to the after-market device; and

a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo system and for converting signals from the car stereo system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using the first and second electrical configurations of the first and second wiring harnesses.

21. The system of claim 20, further comprising a plurality of wiring harnesses corresponding to additional device types and connectable to the interface.

22. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

an interface in electrical communication with a car video system and an after-market device;

first and second wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the first wiring harness includes a first electrical configuration corresponding to the car video system and the second wiring harness includes a second electrical configuration corresponding to the after-market device; and

a plurality of protocol conversion software blocks stored in memory in the interface for converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car video system and for converting signals from the car video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device, wherein at least one of the protocol conversion software blocks are selected by the interface using the first and second electrical configurations of the first and second wiring harnesses.

23. The system of claim 22, further comprising a plurality of wiring harnesses corresponding to additional device types and connectable to the interface.

24. A method for integrating an after-market device for use with a car stereo system comprising:

interconnecting the car stereo system and the after-market device with an interface;

determining a first device type corresponding to the car stereo system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device;

loading a protocol conversion software block from memory in the interface using the first and second device types;

converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car stereo system using the protocol conversion software block;

converting signals from the car stereo system into a second format compatible with the after-market device using the protocol conversion software block; and

exchanging converted signals between the car stereo system and the after-market device.

25. The method of claim 24, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises determining jumper settings of the interface, wherein the jumper settings correspond to the first and second device types.

26. The method of claim 24, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises determining electrical configurations of wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the electrical configurations correspond to the first and second device types.

27. The method of claim 24, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises allowing the user to specify a device type of the after-market device using the car stereo system.

28. A method for integrating an after-market device for use with a car video system comprising:

interconnecting the car video system and the after-market device with an interface;

determining a first device type corresponding to the car video system and a second device type corresponding to the after-market device;

loading a protocol conversion software block from memory in the interface using the first and second device types;

converting signals from the after-market device into a first format compatible with the car video system using the protocol conversion software block;

converting signals from the car video system into a second format compatible with the after-market device using the protocol conversion software block; and

exchanging converted signals between the car video system and the after-market device.

29. The method of claim 28, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises determining jumper settings of the interface, wherein the jumper settings correspond to the first and second device types.

30. The method of claim 28, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises determining electrical configurations of wiring harnesses attached to the interface, wherein the electrical configurations correspond to the first and second device types.

31. The method of claim 28, wherein the step of determining the first and second device types comprises allowing the user to specify a device type of the after-market device using the car video system.

32. A method for retrieving a song from an after-market device from a car stereo system comprising:

allowing a user to specify an alphanumeric character using controls of the car stereo system;

querying a database of songs in the after-market device using the alphanumeric character;

displaying a list of potentially matching songs in the after-market device on a dsplay of the car stereo system; and

allowing the user to select a desired song from the list of potentially matching songs for playing the desired song on the car stereo system.

33. The method of claim 32, further comprising allowing the user to specify one or more additional alphanumeric characters using the controls of the car stereo system.

34. The method of claim 33, further comprising querying the remote database using the one or more additional alphanumeric characters and displaying a second list of potentially matching songs on the display of the car stereo system.

35. The method of claim 32, wherein the step of allowing the user to specify the alphanumeric character comprises providing the user with a list of alphanumeric characters on the display of the car stereo and allowing the user to select a desired character from the list of alphanumeric characters.

36. A multimedia device integration system comprising:

a car audiovisual system;

a plurality of after-market devices external to the car audiovisual system;

an interface connected between the car audiovisual system and the plurality of after-market devices for exchanging data, audio, and video signals between the car audiovisual system and the plurality of after-market devices;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the plurality of after-market devices from the car audiovisual system in at least one format compatible with at least one of the plurality of after-market devices; and

means for processing and displaying data from the plurality of after-market devices on a display of the car audiovisual system in a format compatible with the car audiovisual system.

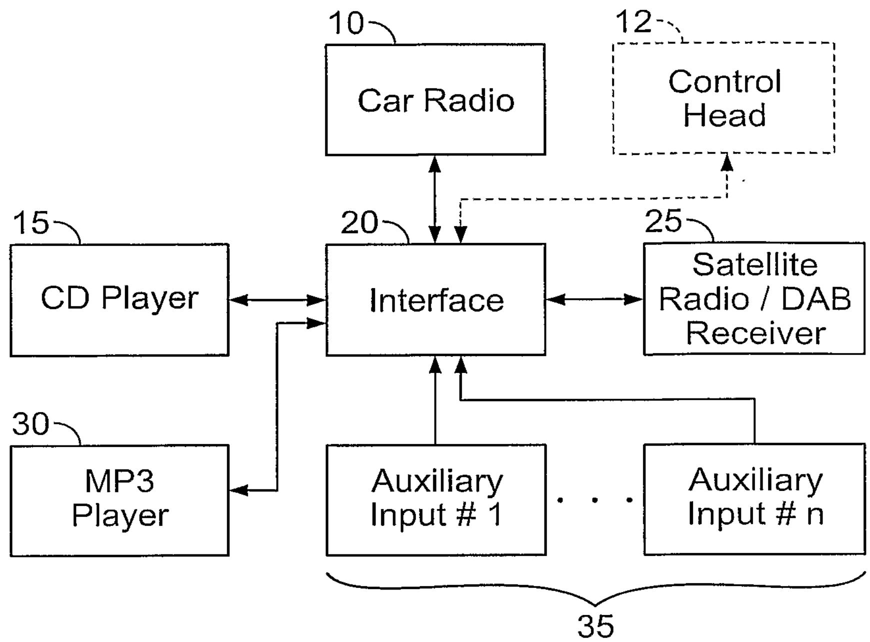

10
Car Radio
12
Control Head
15
CD Player
20
Interface
25
Satellite Radio / DAB Receiver
30
MP3 Player
Auxiliary Input # 1
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 1

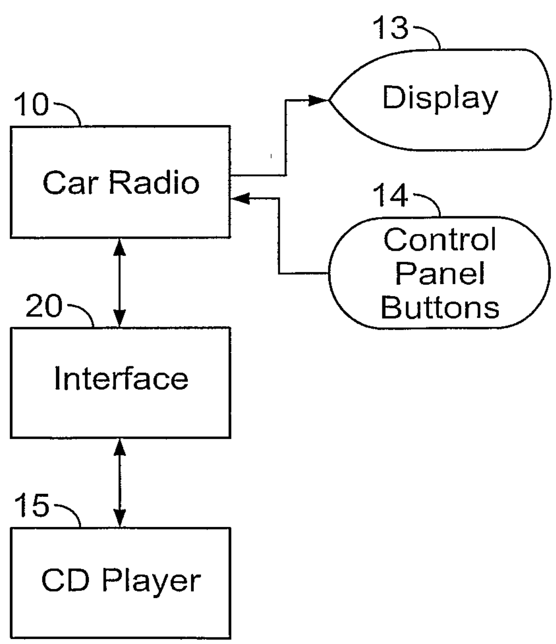

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
15
CD Player

FIG. 2A

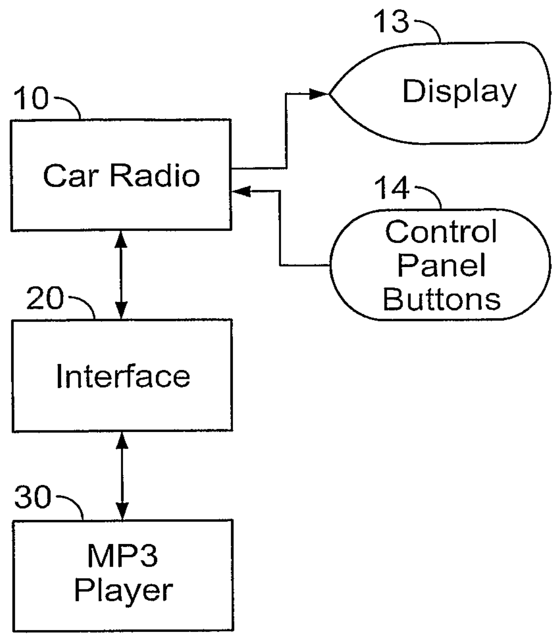

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
30
MP3 Player

FIG. 2B

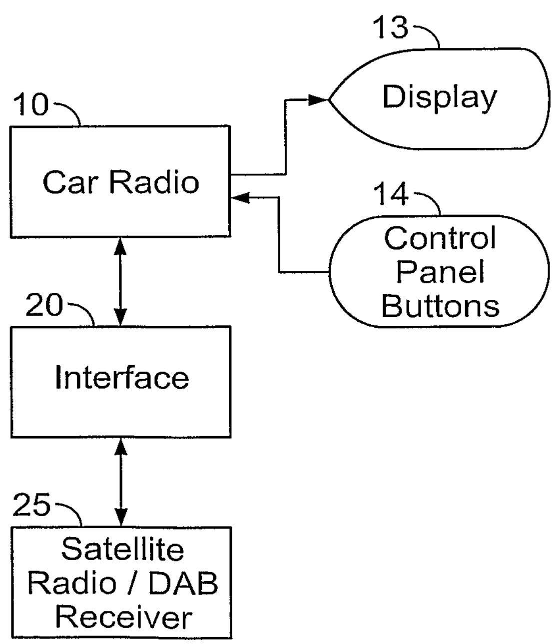

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
25
Satellite Radio / DAB Receiver

FIG. 2C

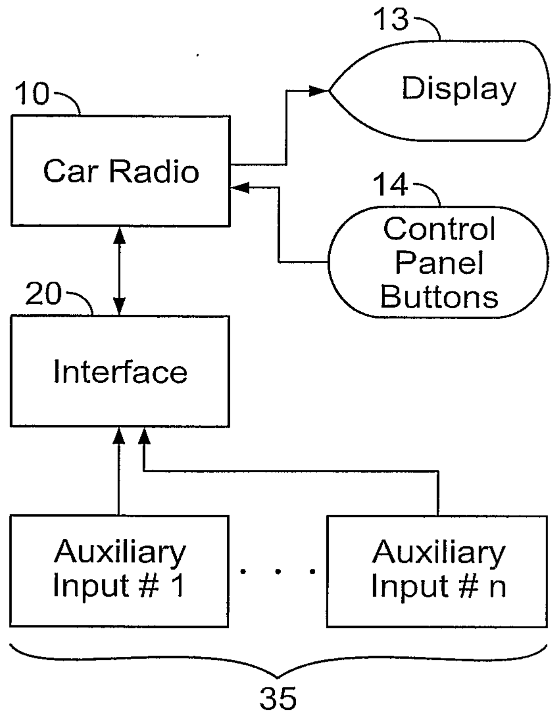

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
Auxiliary Input # 1
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 2D

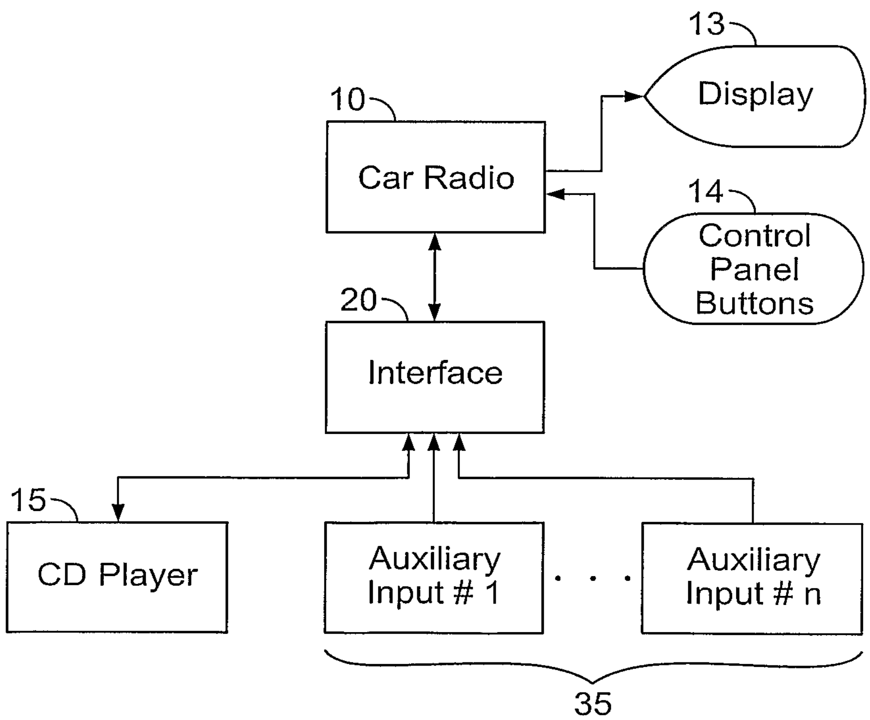

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
15
CD Player
Auxiliary Input # 1
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 2E

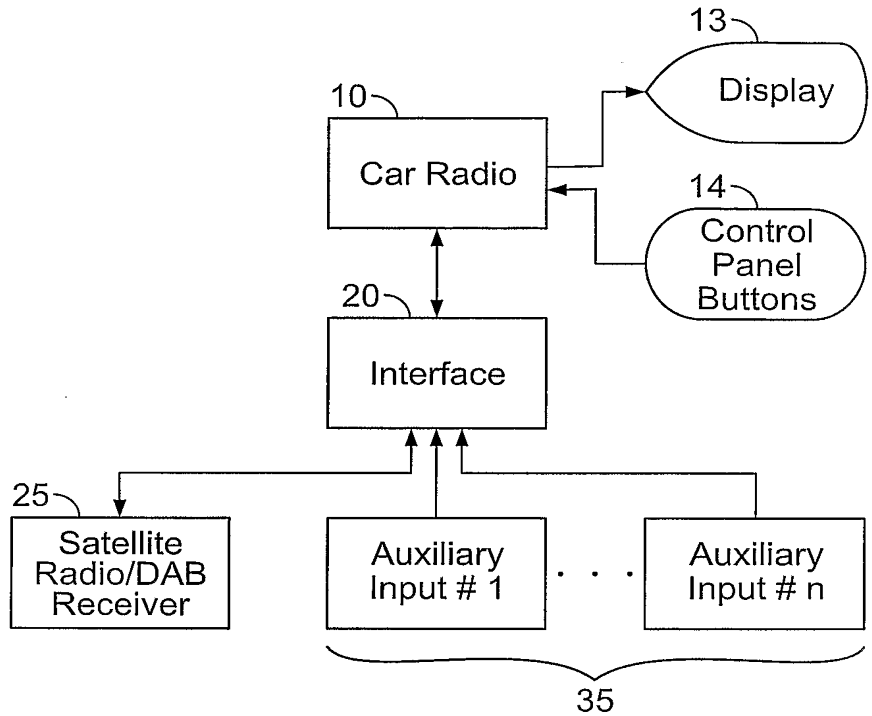

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
25
Satellite Radio/DAB Receiver
Auxiliary Input # 1
. . .
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 2F

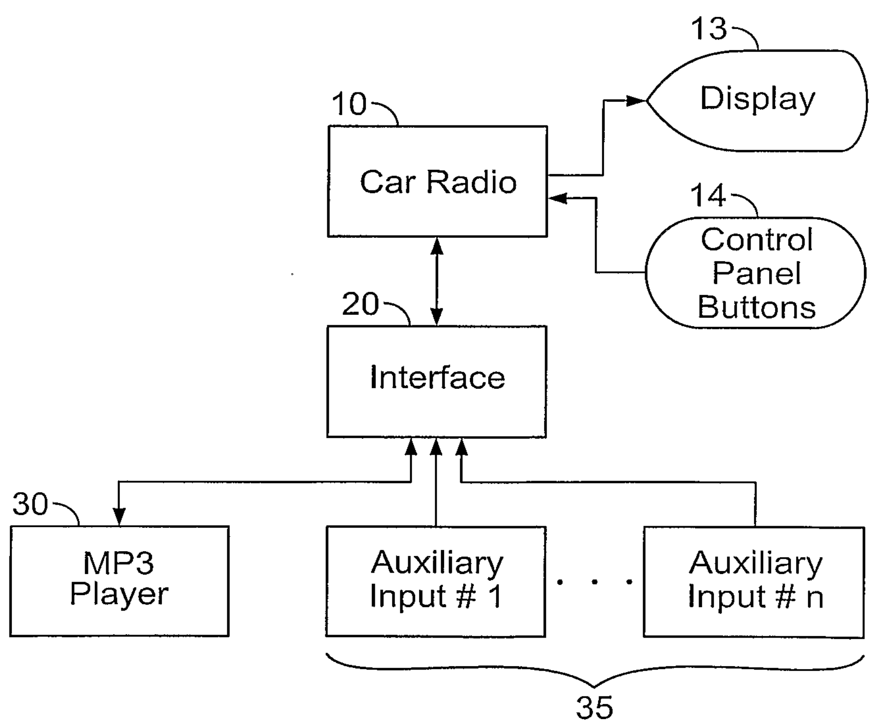

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel Buttons
20
Interface
30
MP3 Player
Auxiliary Input # 1
. . .
Auxiliary Input # n
35

FIG. 2G

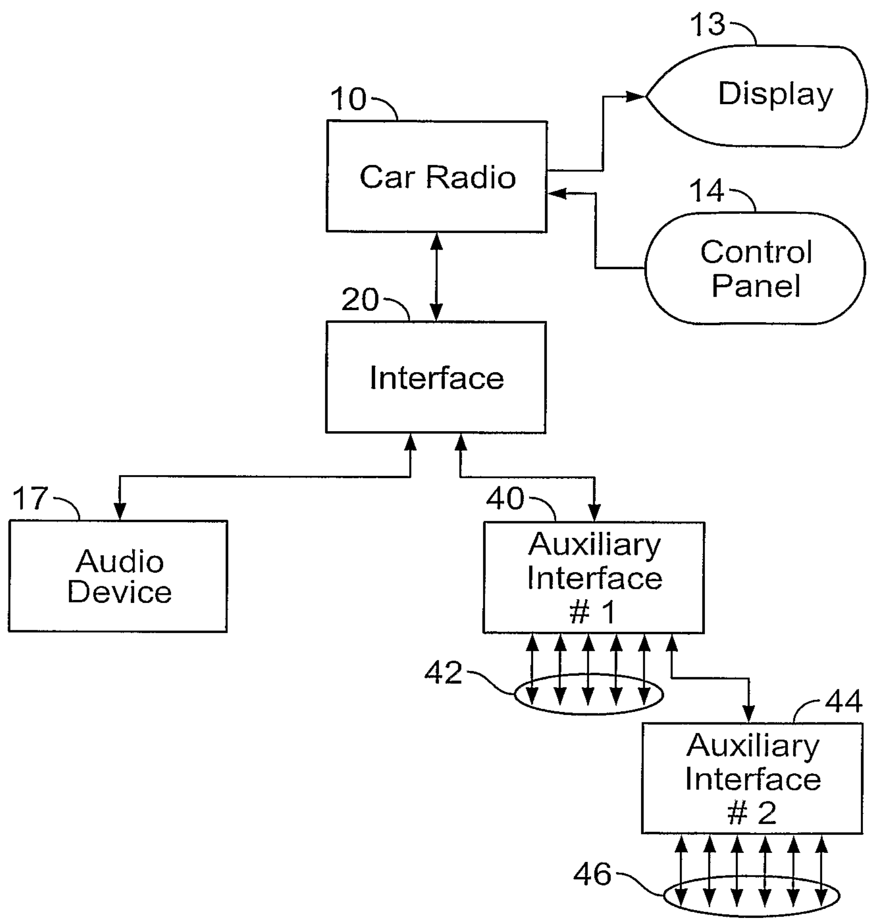

13
Display
10
Car Radio
14
Control Panel
20
Interface
17
Audio Device
40
Auxiliary Interface # 1
42
44
Auxiliary Interface # 2
46

FIG. 2H

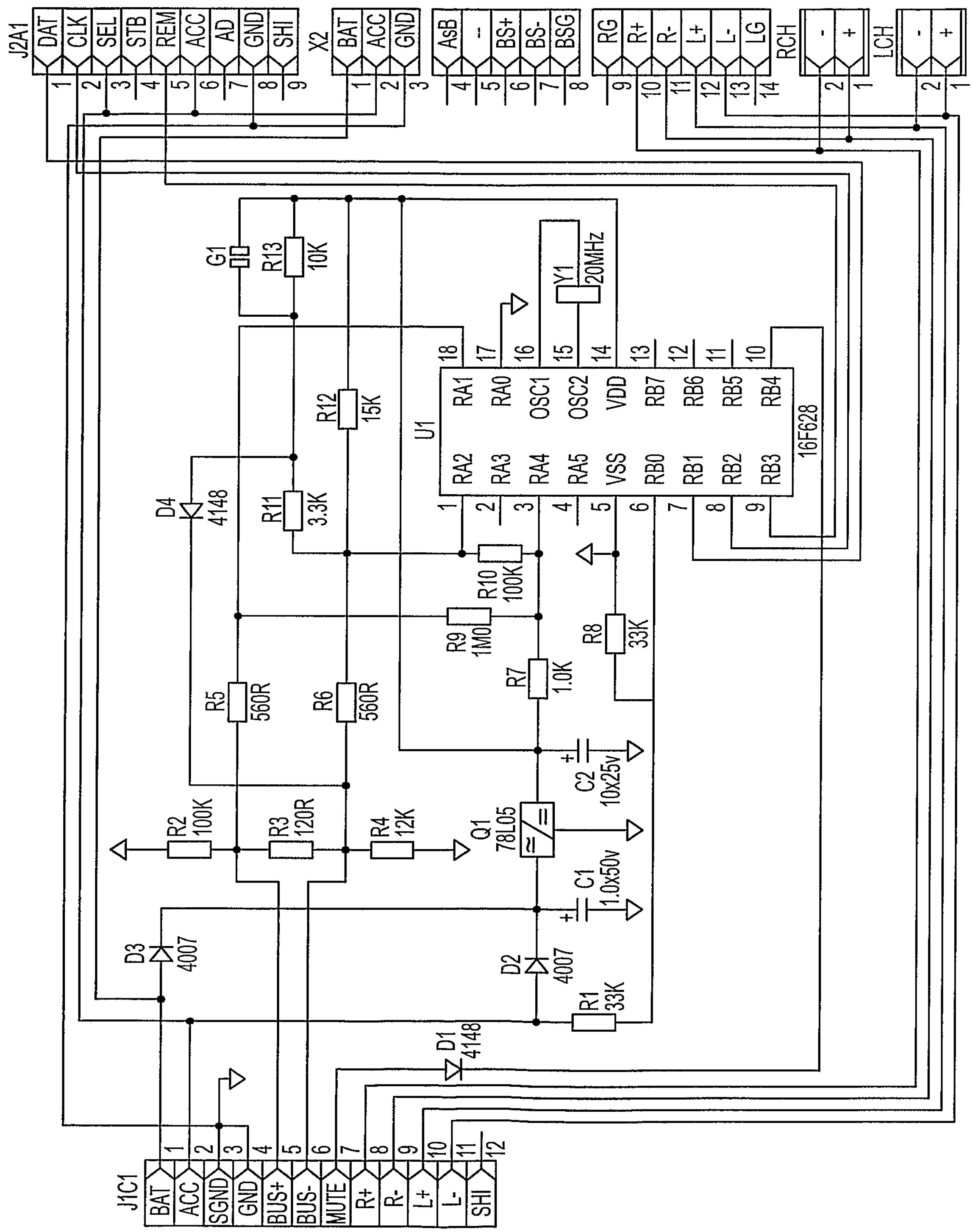
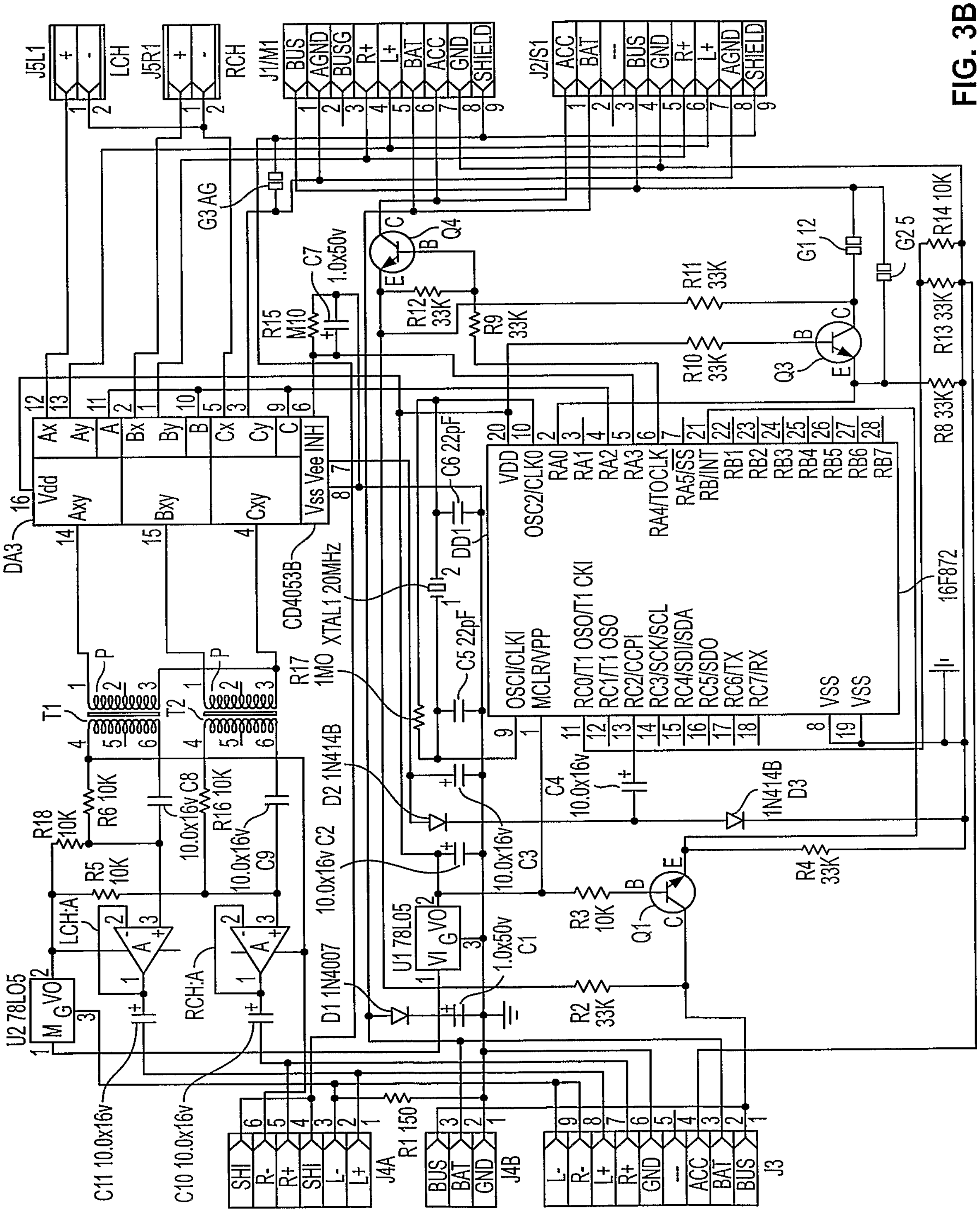

J2A1
DAT
CLK
SEL
STB
REM
ACC
AD
GND
SHI
X2
BAT
ACC
GND
AsB
-
BS+
BS-
BSG
RG
R+
R-
L+
L-
LG
RCH
-
+
LCH
-
+
G1
R13
10K
Y1
20MHz
U1
16F628
RA1
RA0
OSC1
OSC2
VDD
RB7
RB6
RB5
RB4
RA2
RA3
RA4
RA5
VSS
RB0
RB1
RB2
RB3
R12
15K
D4
4148
R11
3.3K
R10
100K
R9
1M0
R8
33K
R7
1.0K
R5
560R
R6
560R
C2
10x25v
Q1
78L05
R2
100K
R3
120R
R4
12K
C1
1.0x50v
D3
4007
D2
4007
R1
33K
D1
4148
J1C1
BAT
ACC
SGND
GND
BUS+
BUS-
MUTE
R+
R-
L+
L-
SHI

FIG. 3A



J5L1
LCH
J5R1
RCH
J1/M1
BUS
AGND
BUSG
R+
L+
BAT
ACC
GND
SHIELD
J2/S1
G3 AG
Q4
C7 1.0x50v
R15 M10
R12 33K
R9 33K
R11 33K
G1 12
G2 5
R14 10K
R10 33K
Q3
R13 33K
R8 33K
DA3
CD4053B
XTAL1 20MHz
DD1
C6 22pF
C5 22pF
R17 1MO
16F872
T1
T2
R18 10K
R6 10K
R16 10K
R5 10K
C8 10.0x16v
C9 10.0x16v
C2 10.0x16v
C3 10.0x16v
C4 10.0x16v
D2 1N414B
D3 1N414B
LCH:A
RCH:A
U2 78LO5
U1 78L05
C1 1.0x50v
D1 1N4007
R3 10K
Q1
R4 33K
R2 33K
R1 150
C11 10.0x16v
C10 10.0x16v
J4A
J4B
J3

FIG. 3B

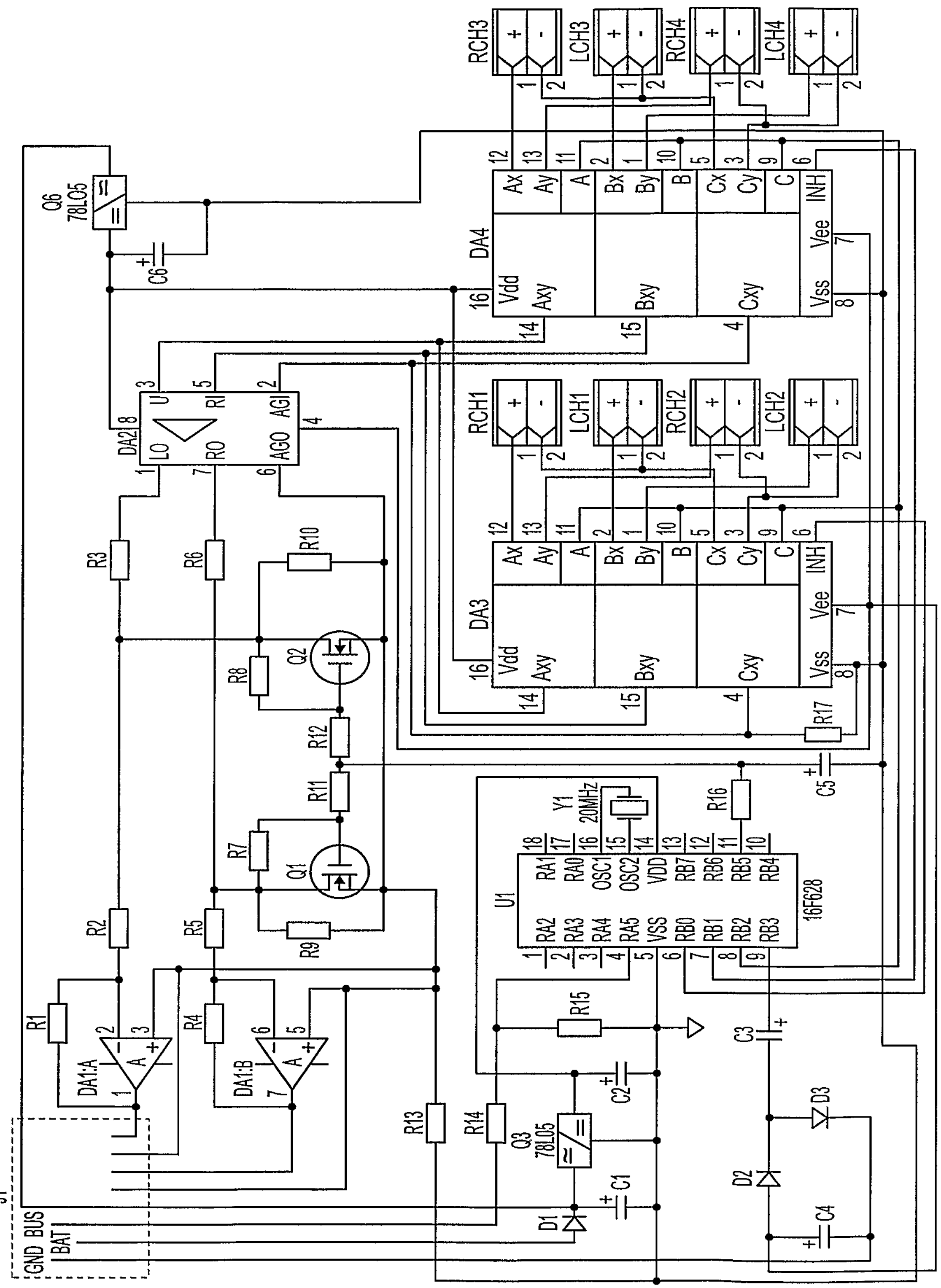

RCH3
LCH3
RCH4
LCH4
RCH1
LCH1
RCH2
LCH2
Q6
78L05
C6
DA4
DA3
DA2
Vdd
Axy
Bxy
Cxy
Vss
Vee
INH
Ax
Ay
A
Bx
By
B
Cx
Cy
C
LO
RO
AGO
U
RI
AGI
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7
R8
R9
R10
R11
R12
R13
R14
R15
R16
R17
Q1
Q2
Q3
78L05
DA1:A
DA1:B
U1
16F628
RA2
RA3
RA4
RA5
VSS
RB0
RB1
RB2
RB3
RA1
RA0
OSC1
OSC2
VDD
RB7
RB6
RB5
RB4
Y1
20MHz
C1
C2
C3
C4
C5
D1
D2
D3
J1
GND
BUS
BAT

FIG. 3C

9/29

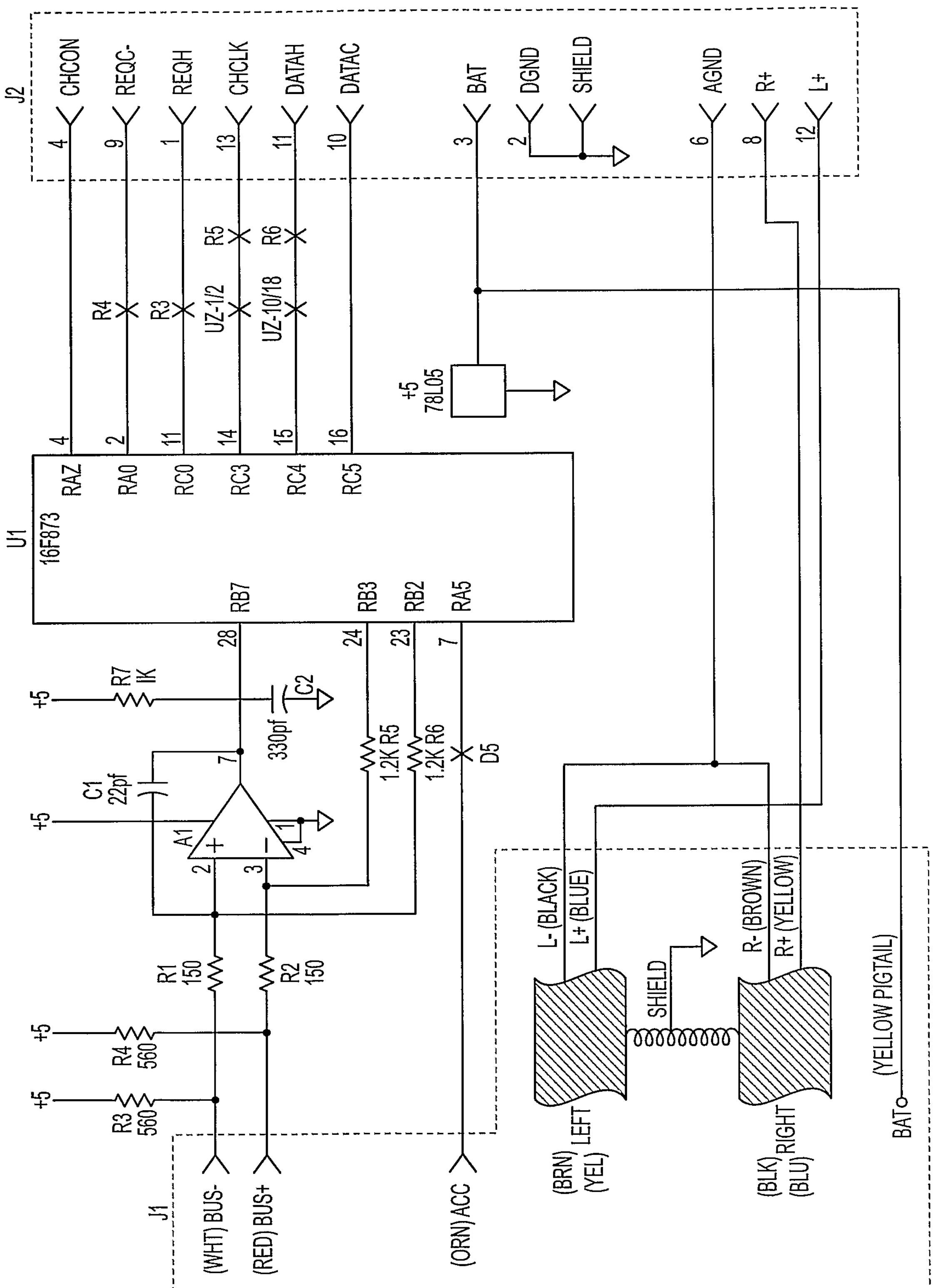
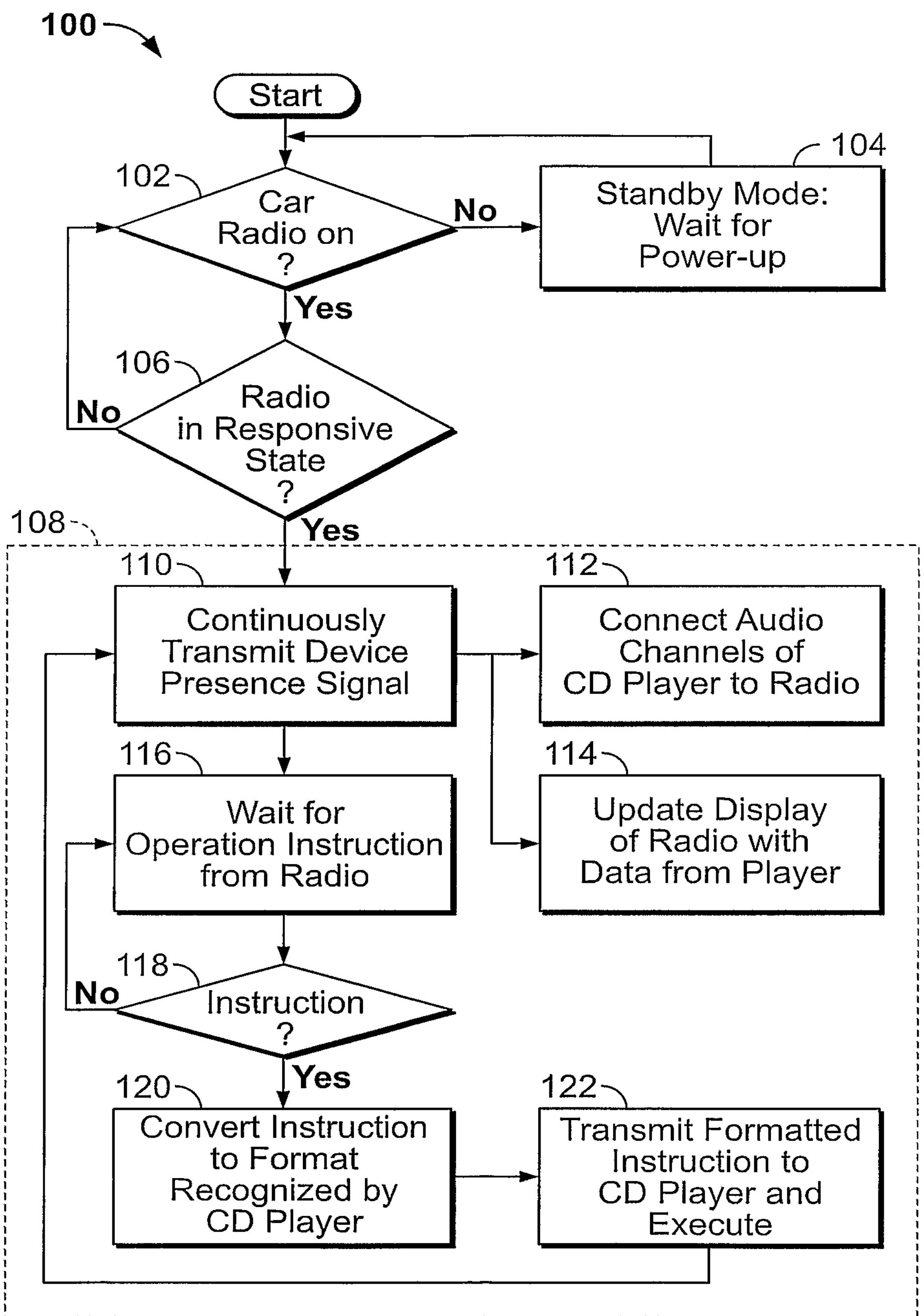

J2
CHCON
REQC-
REQH
CHCLK
DATAH
DATAC
BAT
DGND
SHIELD
AGND
R+
L+
4
9
1
13
11
10
3
2
6
8
12
R4
R3
UZ-1/2
UZ-10/18
R5
R6
+5
78L05
U1
16F873
RAZ
RA0
RC0
RC3
RC4
RC5
RB7
RB3
RB2
RA5
28
24
23
7
2
14
15
16
+5
R7
IK
C2
330pf
C1
22pf
A1
1.2K R5
1.2K R6
D5
R1
150
R2
150
R4
560
R3
560
J1
(WHT) BUS-
(RED) BUS+
(ORN) ACC
L- (BLACK)
L+ (BLUE)
R- (BROWN)
R+ (YELLOW)
SHIELD
(BRN)
(YEL)
LEFT
(BLK)
(BLU)
RIGHT
(YELLOW PIGTAIL)
BAT

FIG. 3D



100
Start
102
Car Radio on ?
No
104
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
106
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
108
110
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
112
Connect Audio Channels of CD Player to Radio
116
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
114
Update Display of Radio with Data from Player
118
Instruction ?
No
Yes
120
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by CD Player
122
Transmit Formatted Instruction to CD Player and Execute

FIG. 4A

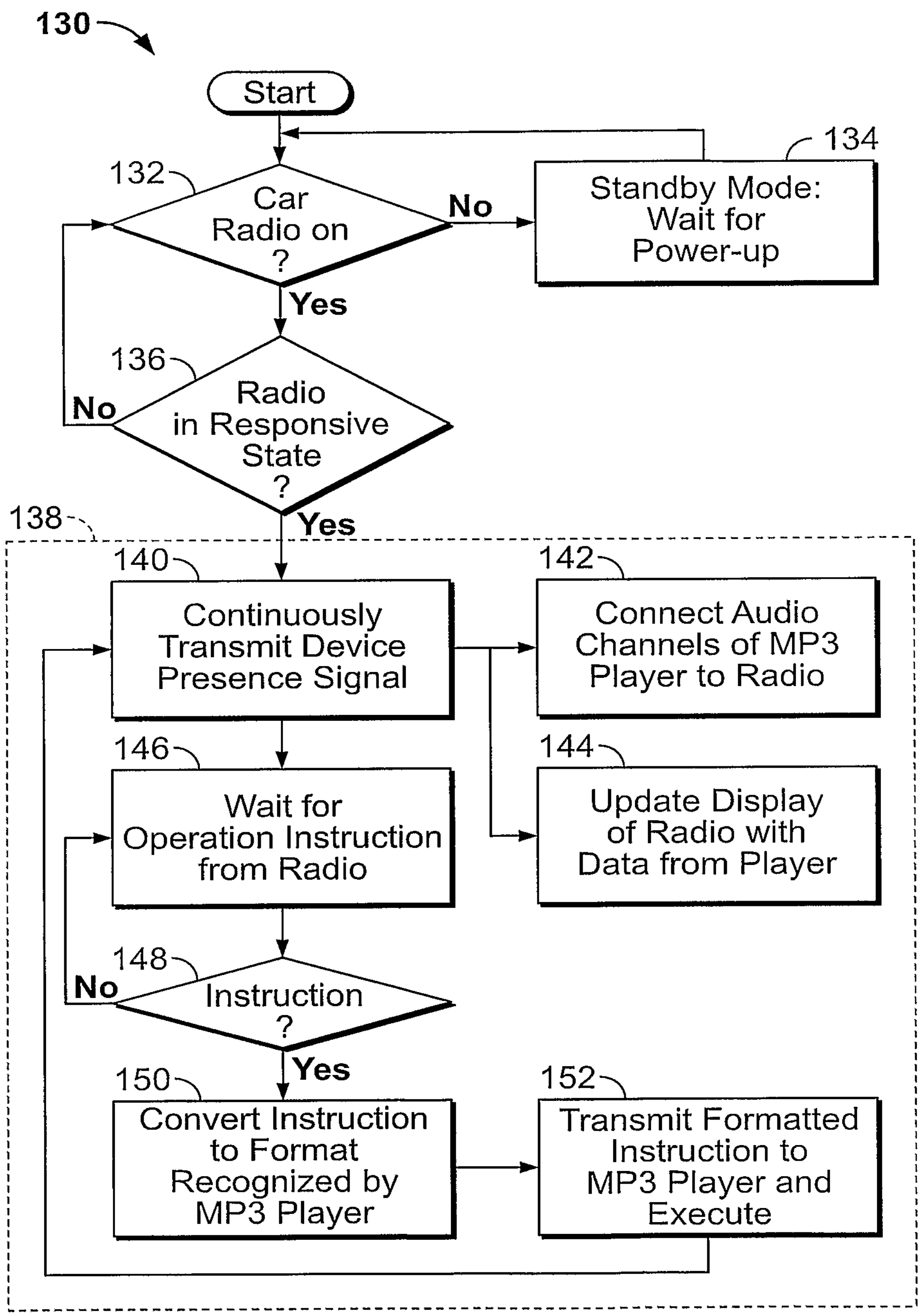

130
Start
132
Car Radio on ?
No
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
134
Yes
136
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
138
140
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
142
Connect Audio Channels of MP3 Player to Radio
146
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
144
Update Display of Radio with Data from Player
148
Instruction ?
No
Yes
150
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by MP3 Player
152
Transmit Formatted Instruction to MP3 Player and Execute

FIG. 4B

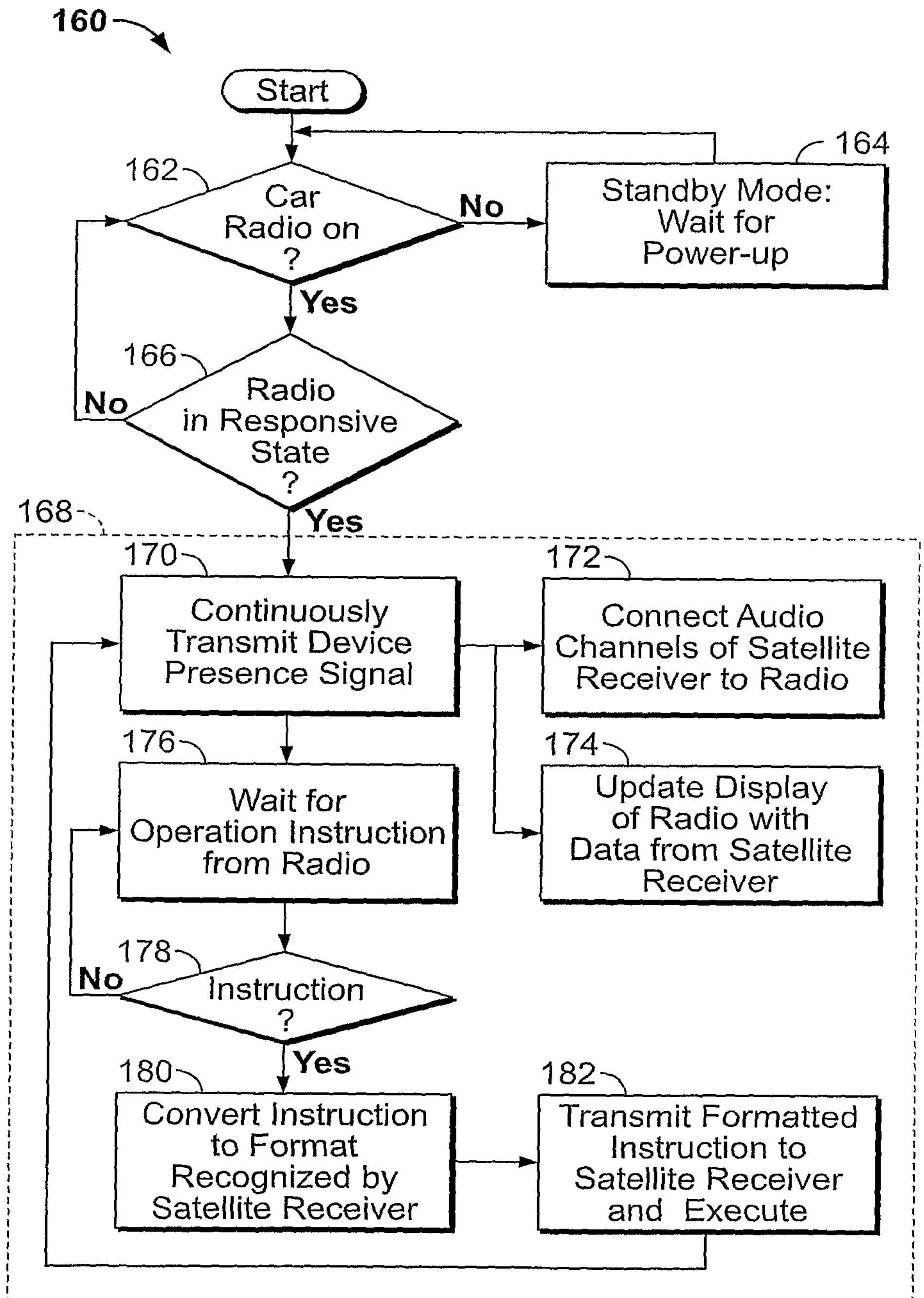

160
Start
162
Car Radio on ?
No
164
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
166
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
168
170
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
172
Connect Audio Channels of Satellite Receiver to Radio
174
Update Display of Radio with Data from Satellite Receiver
176
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
178
Instruction ?
No
Yes
180
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by Satellite Receiver
182
Transmit Formatted Instruction to Satellite Receiver and Execute

FIG. 4C

13/29

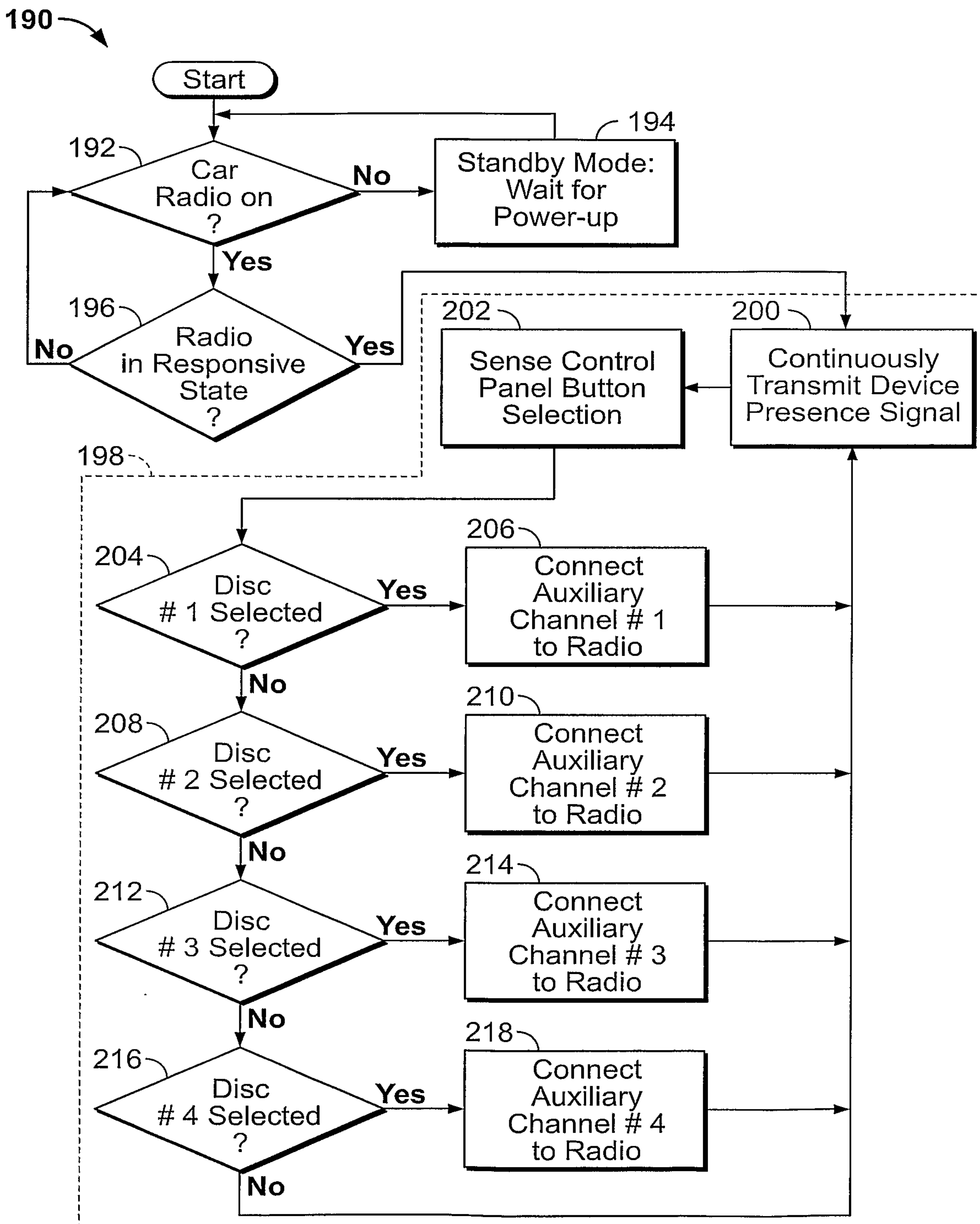

190
Start
192
Car Radio on ?
No
194
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
196
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
202
Sense Control Panel Button Selection
200
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
198
204
Disc # 1 Selected ?
Yes
206
Connect Auxiliary Channel # 1 to Radio
No
208
Disc # 2 Selected ?
Yes
210
Connect Auxiliary Channel # 2 to Radio
No
212
Disc # 3 Selected ?
Yes
214
Connect Auxiliary Channel # 3 to Radio
No
216
Disc # 4 Selected ?
Yes
218
Connect Auxiliary Channel # 4 to Radio
No

FIG. 4D

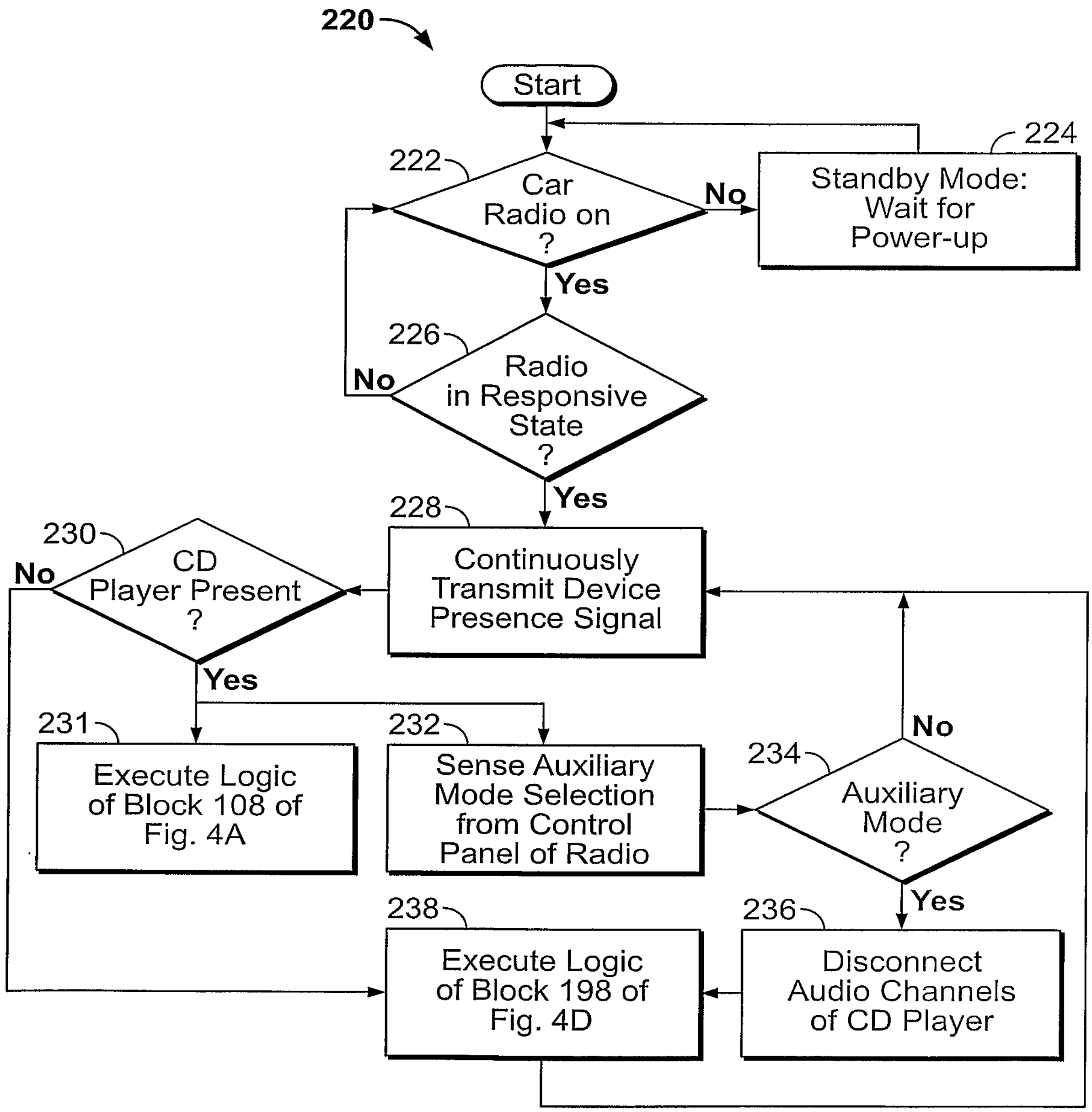

220
Start
222
Car Radio on ?
No
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
224
Yes
226
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
228
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
230
CD Player Present ?
No
Yes
231
Execute Logic of Block 108 of Fig. 4A
232
Sense Auxiliary Mode Selection from Control Panel of Radio
234
Auxiliary Mode ?
No
Yes
236
Disconnect Audio Channels of CD Player
238
Execute Logic of Block 198 of Fig. 4D

FIG. 4E

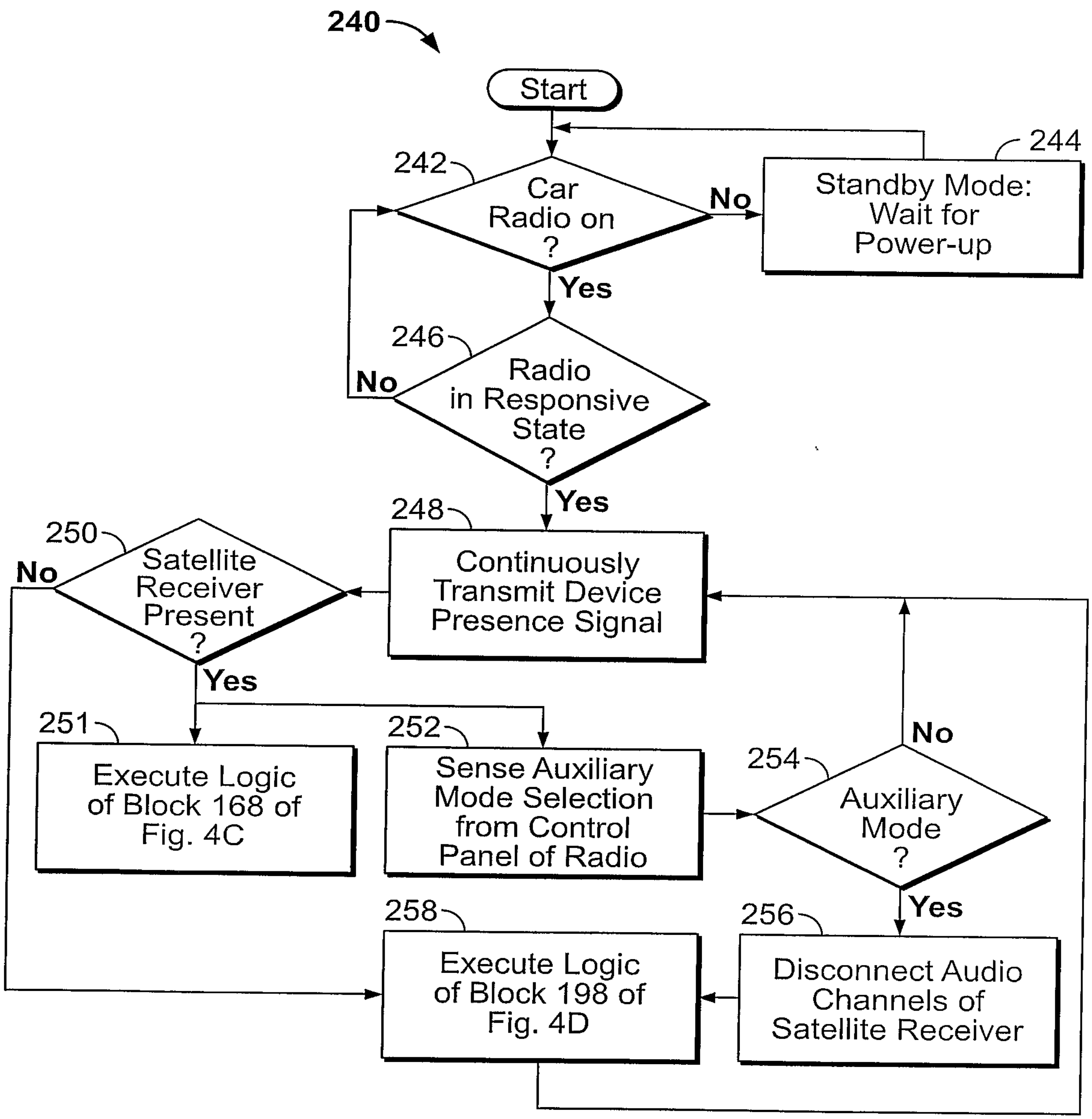

240
Start
242
Car Radio on ?
No
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
244
Yes
246
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
248
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
250
Satellite Receiver Present ?
No
Yes
251
Execute Logic of Block 168 of Fig. 4C
252
Sense Auxiliary Mode Selection from Control Panel of Radio
254
Auxiliary Mode ?
No
Yes
256
Disconnect Audio Channels of Satellite Receiver
258
Execute Logic of Block 198 of Fig. 4D

FIG. 4F

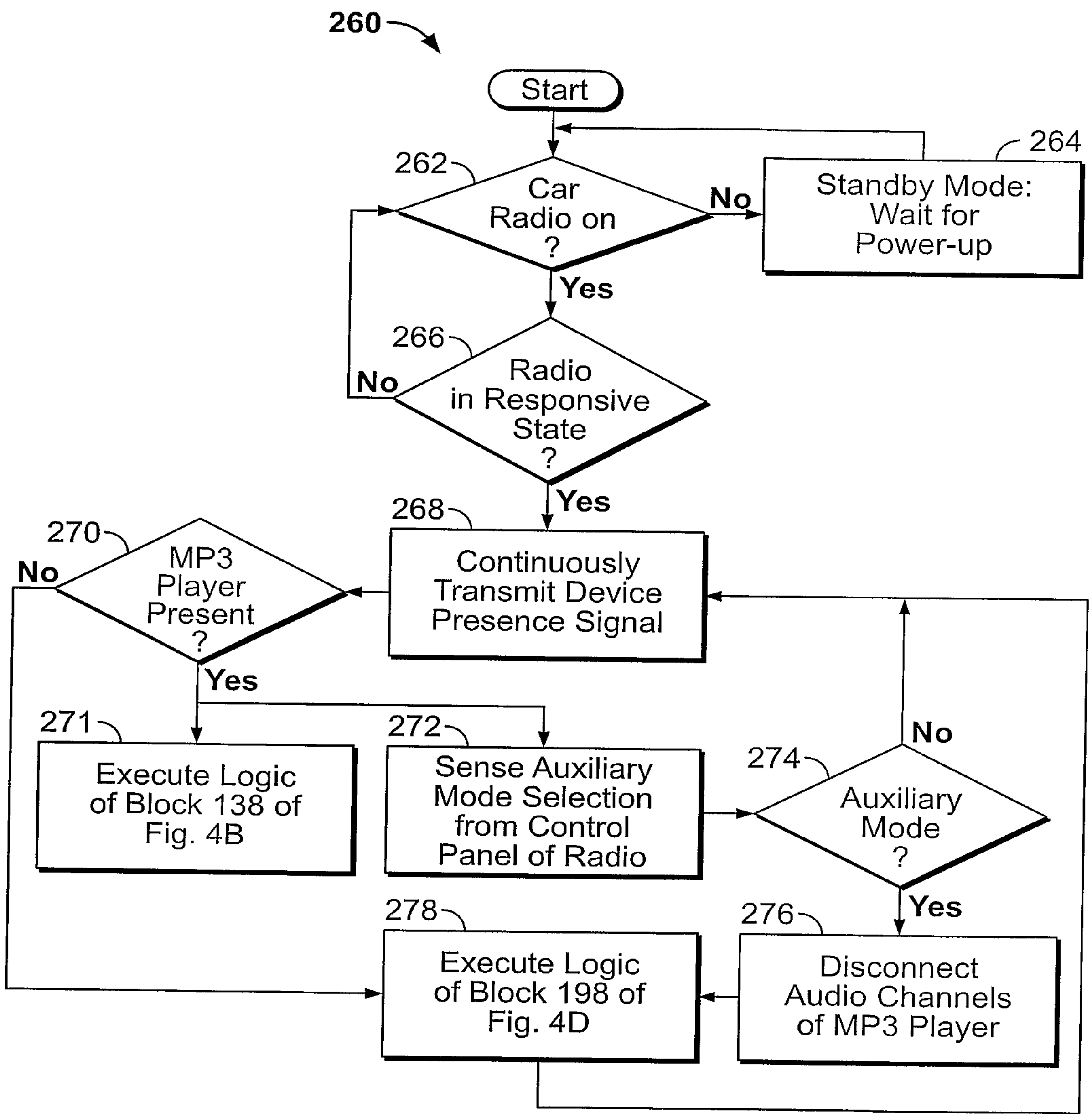

260
Start
262
Car Radio on ?
No
264
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
266
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
268
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
270
MP3 Player Present ?
No
Yes
271
Execute Logic of Block 138 of Fig. 4B
272
Sense Auxiliary Mode Selection from Control Panel of Radio
274
Auxiliary Mode ?
No
Yes
276
Disconnect Audio Channels of MP3 Player
278
Execute Logic of Block 198 of Fig. 4D

FIG. 4G

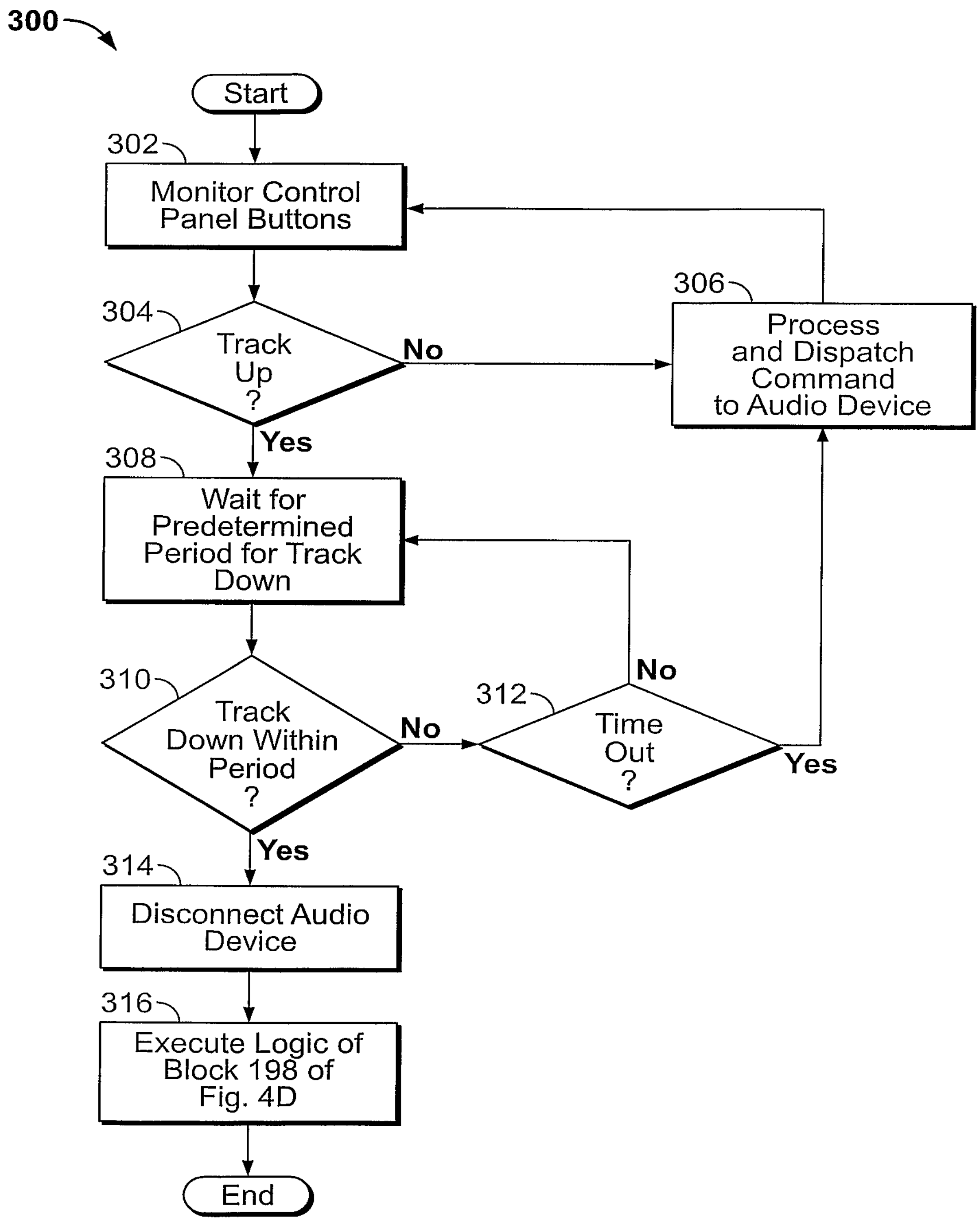

300
Start
302
Monitor Control Panel Buttons
304
Track Up ?
No
Yes
306
Process and Dispatch Command to Audio Device
308
Wait for Predetermined Period for Track Down
310
Track Down Within Period ?
No
Yes
312
Time Out ?
No
Yes
314
Disconnect Audio Device
316
Execute Logic of Block 198 of Fig. 4D
End

FIG. 5

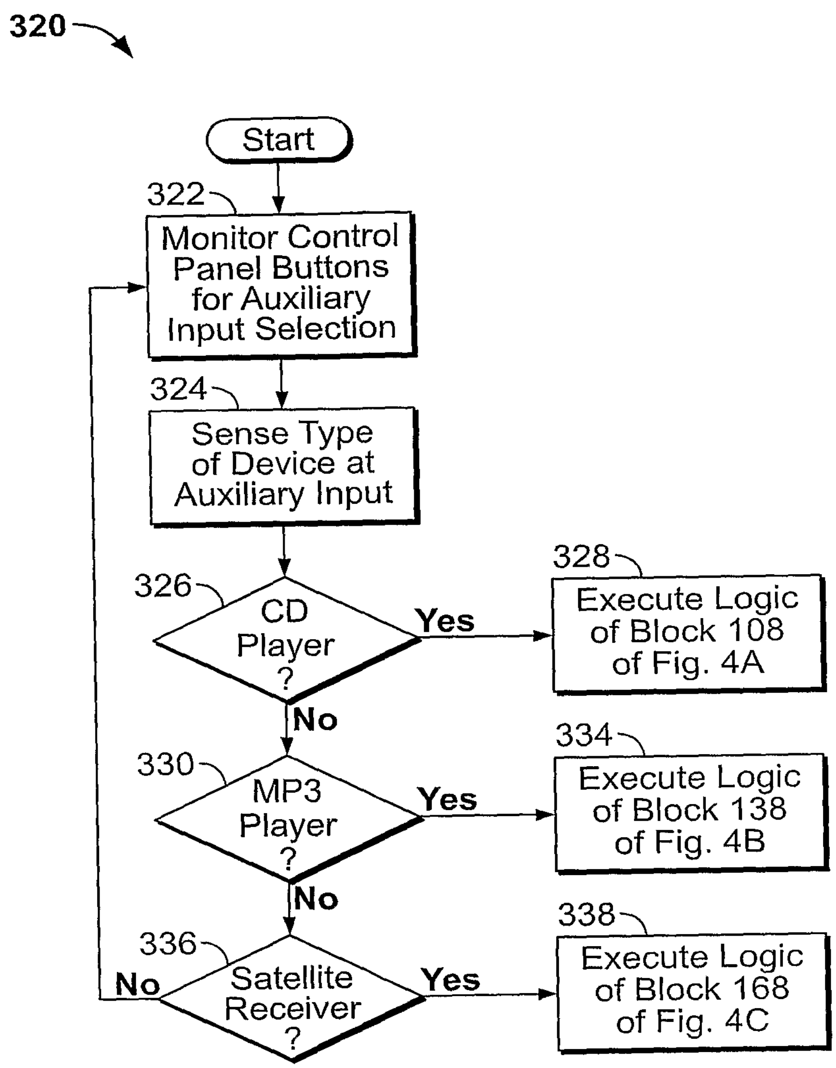

320
Start
322
Monitor Control Panel Buttons for Auxiliary Input Selection
324
Sense Type of Device at Auxiliary Input
326
CD Player ?
Yes
328
Execute Logic of Block 108 of Fig. 4A
No
330
MP3 Player ?
Yes
334
Execute Logic of Block 138 of Fig. 4B
No
336
Satellite Receiver ?
No
Yes
338
Execute Logic of Block 168 of Fig. 4C

FIG. 6

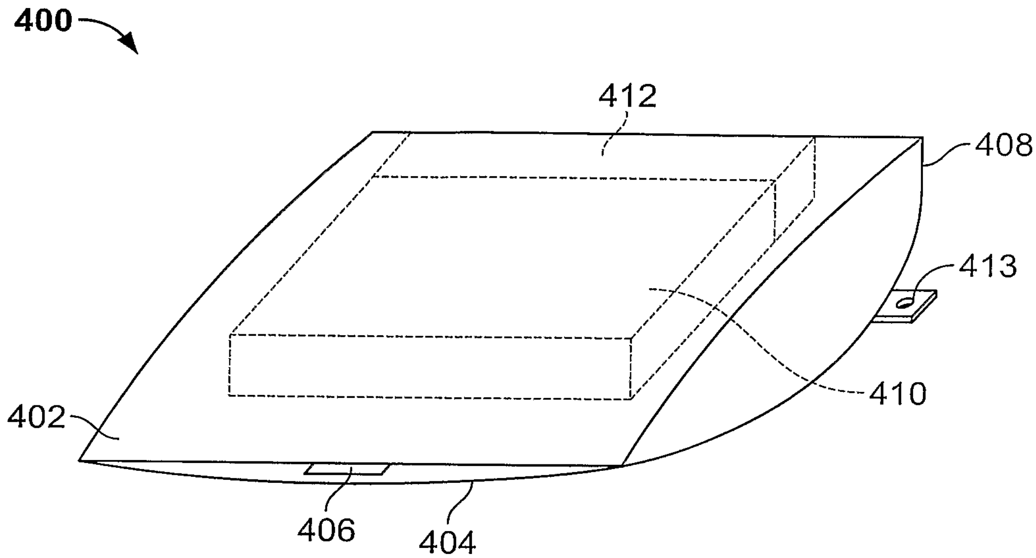


FIG. 7A

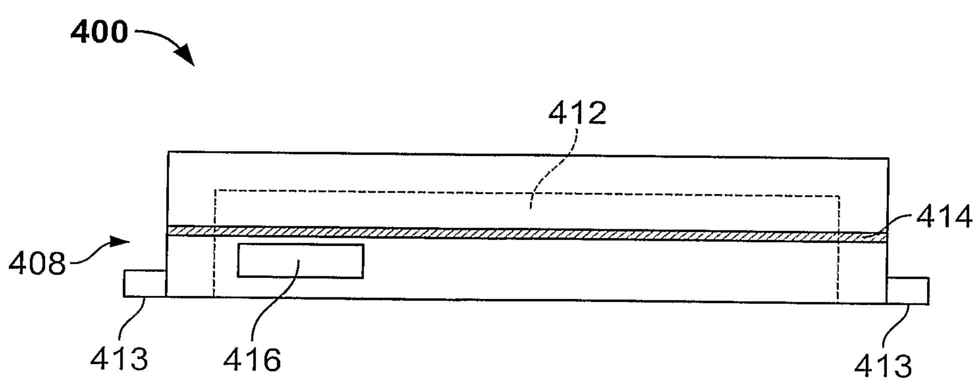


FIG. 7B

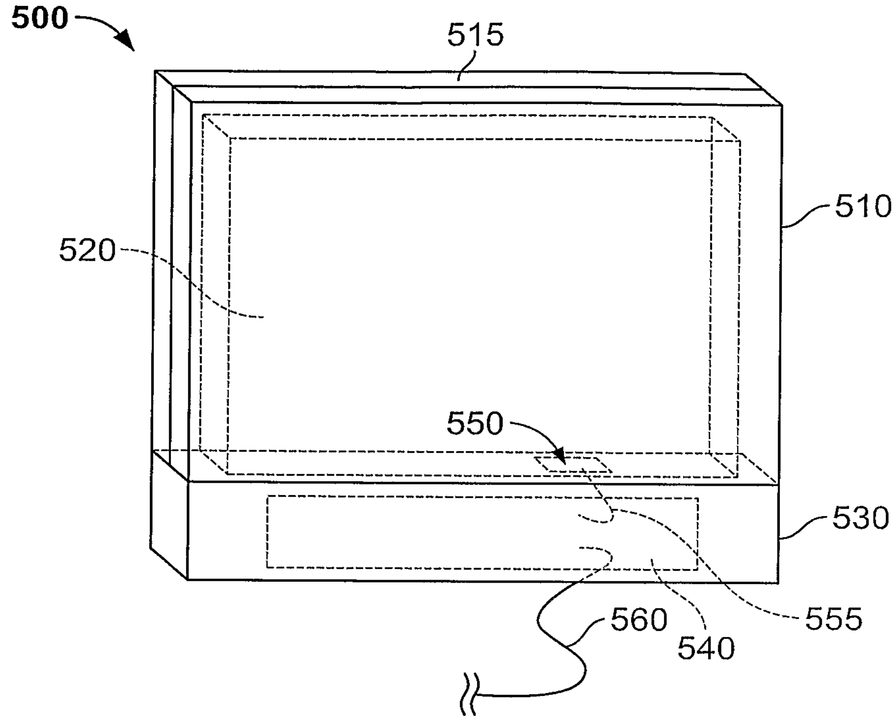


FIG. 8A

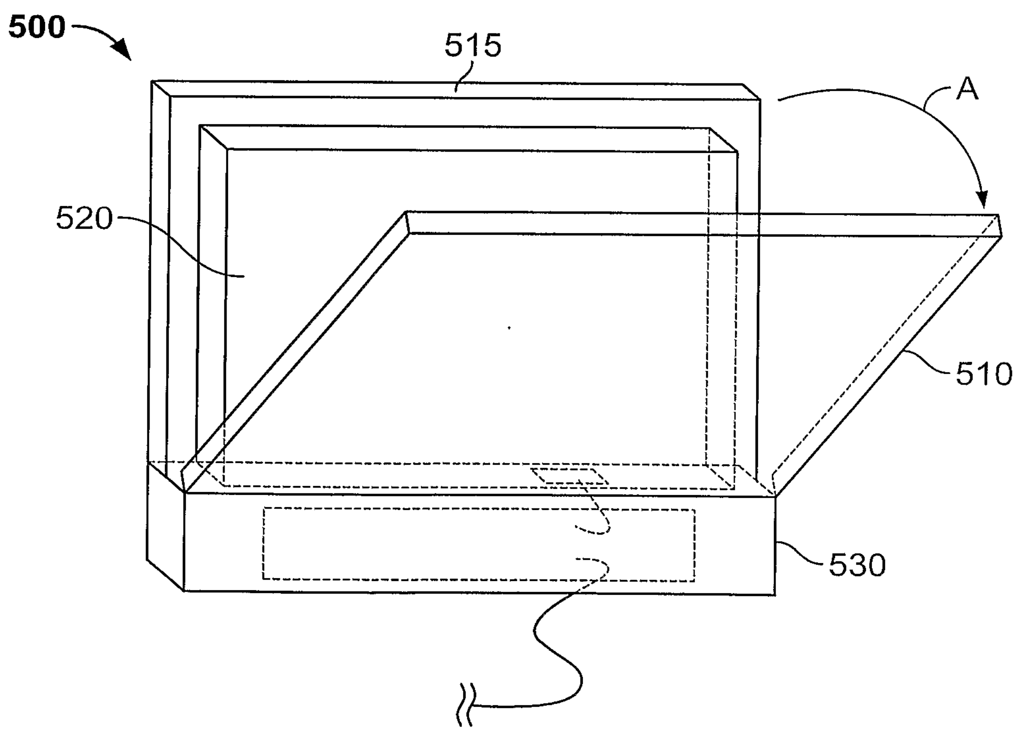


FIG. 8B

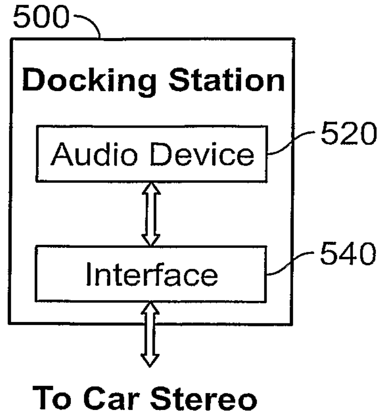

500
Docking Station
Audio Device
520
Interface
540
To Car Stereo

FIG. 9

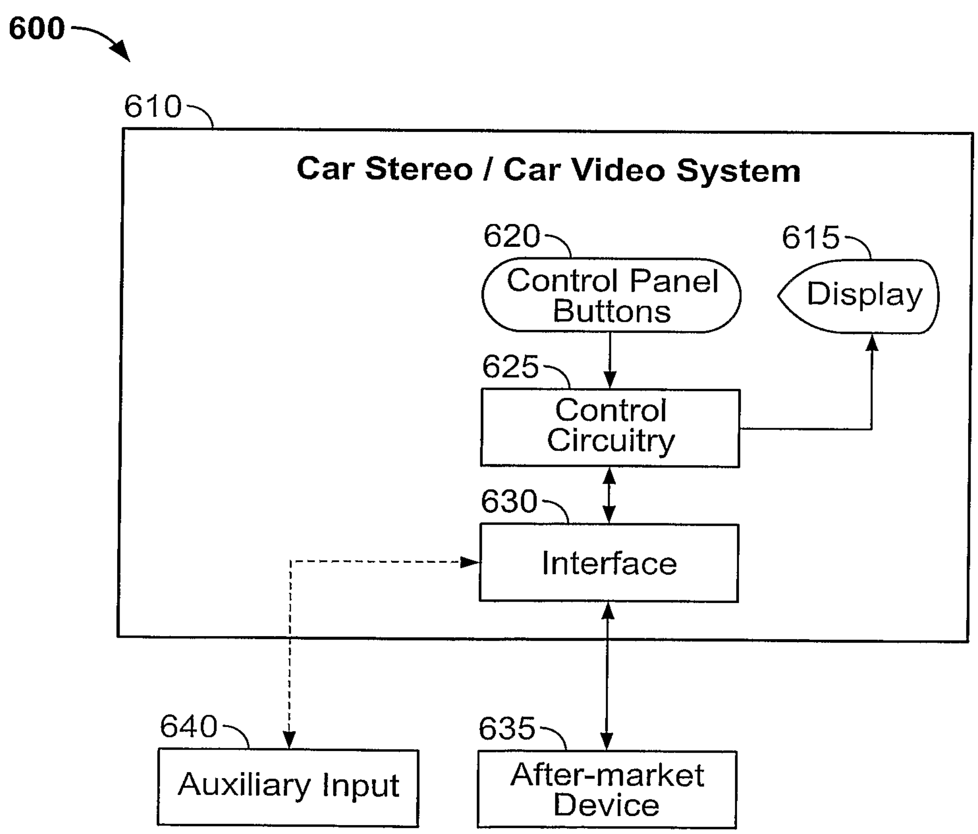

600
610
Car Stereo / Car Video System
620
Control Panel Buttons
615
Display
625
Control Circuitry
630
Interface
640
Auxiliary Input
635
After-market Device

FIG. 10

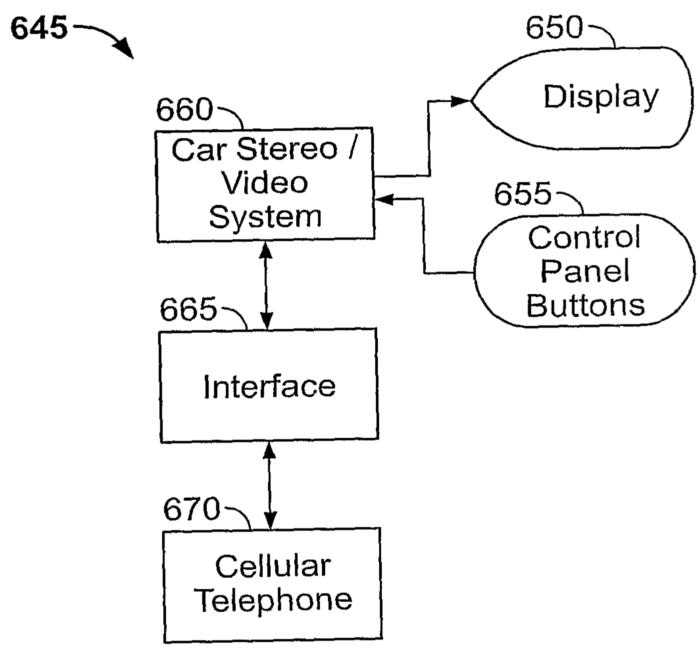

645
650
Display
660
Car Stereo / Video System
655
Control Panel Buttons
665
Interface
670
Cellular Telephone

FIG. 11A

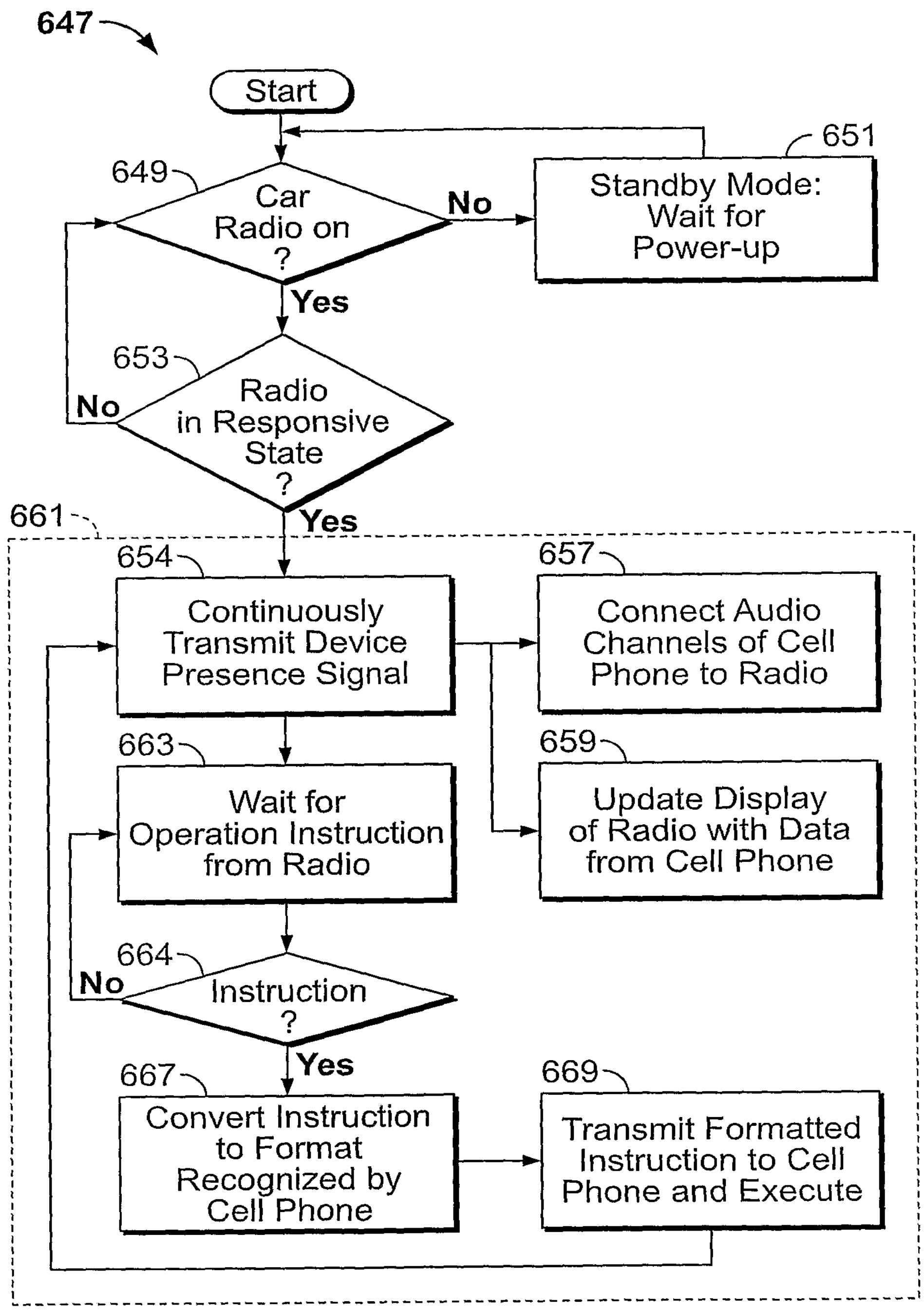

647
Start
649
Car Radio on ?
No
651
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
653
Radio in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
661
654
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
657
Connect Audio Channels of Cell Phone to Radio
663
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
659
Update Display of Radio with Data from Cell Phone
664
Instruction ?
No
Yes
667
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by Cell Phone
669
Transmit Formatted Instruction to Cell Phone and Execute

FIG. 11B

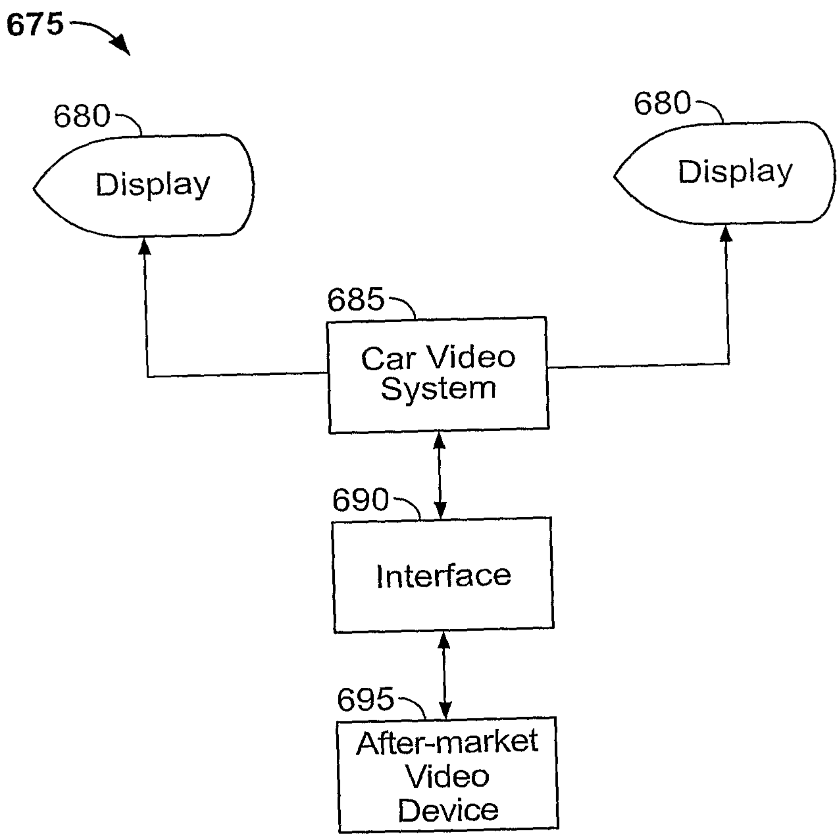

675
680
Display
680
Display
685
Car Video System
690
Interface
695
After-market Video Device

FIG. 12A

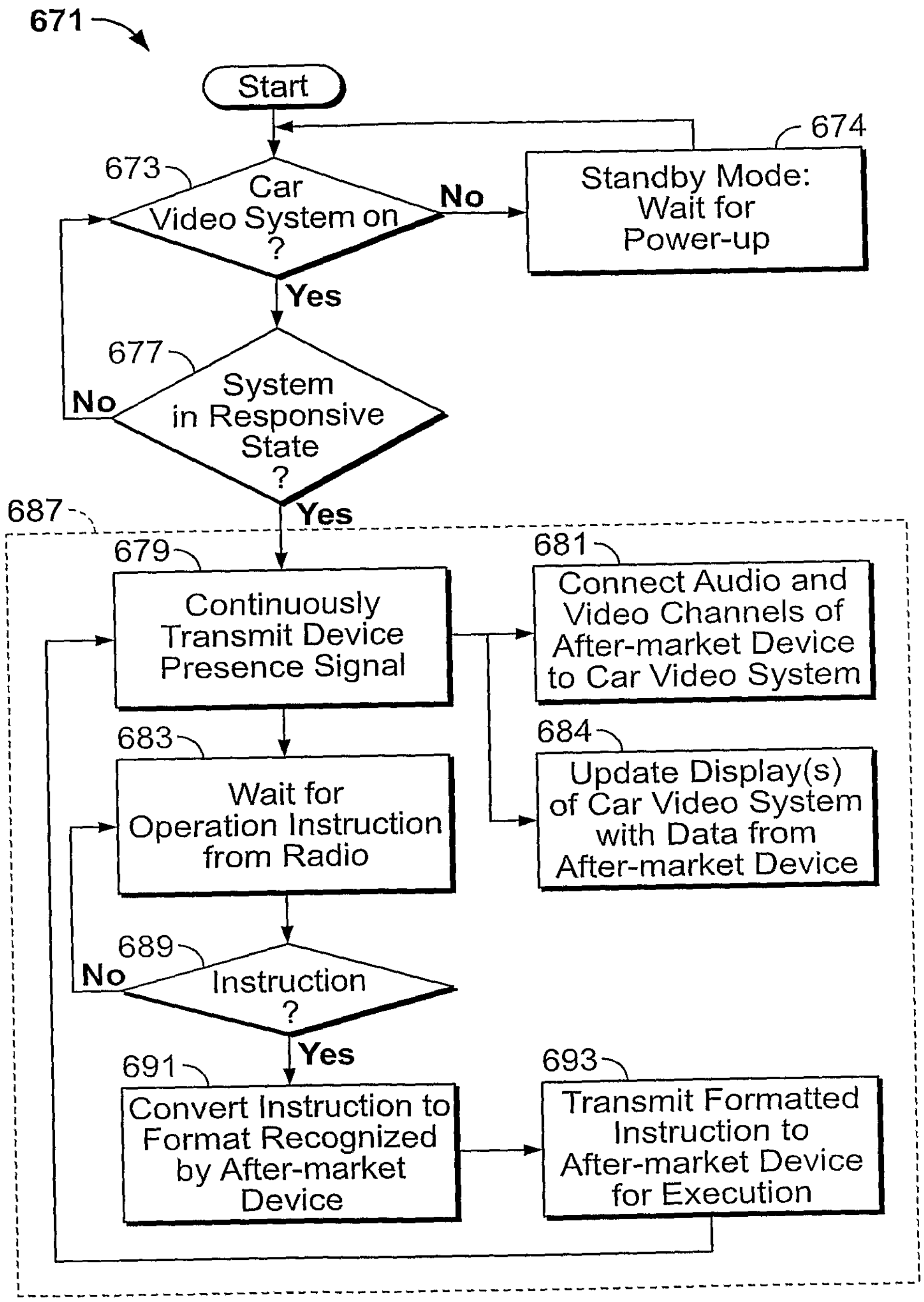

671
Start
673
Car Video System on ?
No
674
Standby Mode: Wait for Power-up
Yes
677
System in Responsive State ?
No
Yes
687
679
Continuously Transmit Device Presence Signal
681
Connect Audio and Video Channels of After-market Device to Car Video System
683
Wait for Operation Instruction from Radio
684
Update Display(s) of Car Video System with Data from After-market Device
689
Instruction ?
No
Yes
691
Convert Instruction to Format Recognized by After-market Device
693
Transmit Formatted Instruction to After-market Device for Execution

FIG. 12B

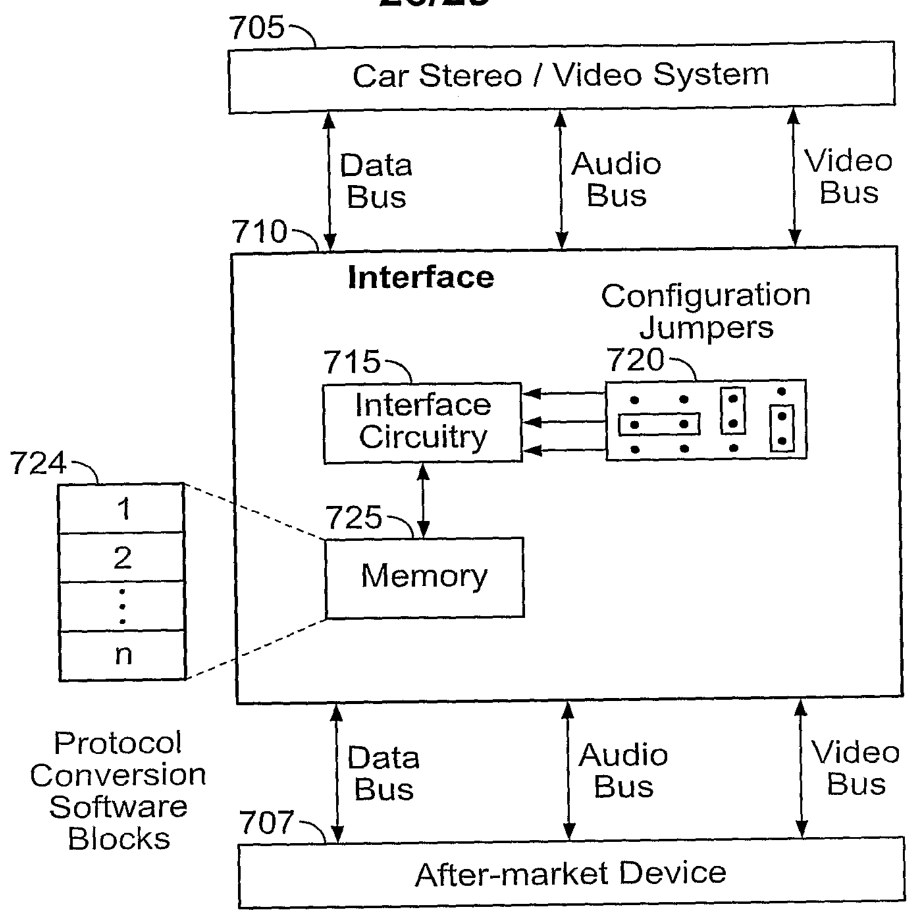


FIG. 13A

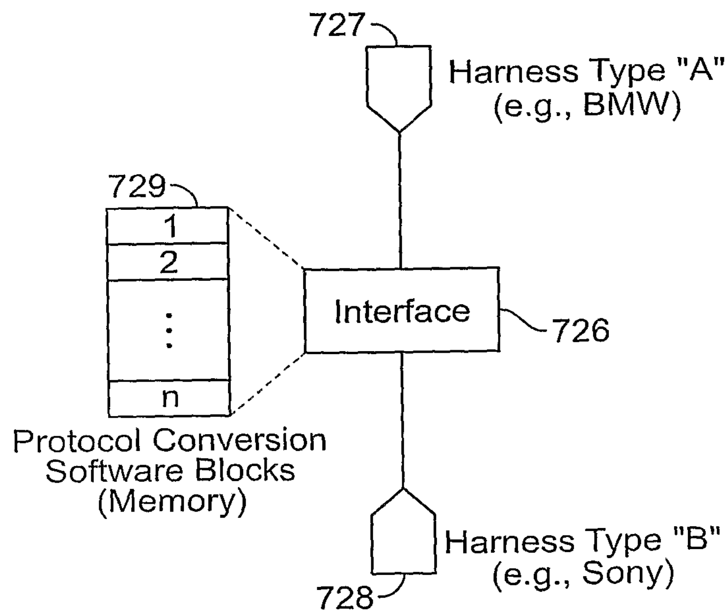


FIG. 13B

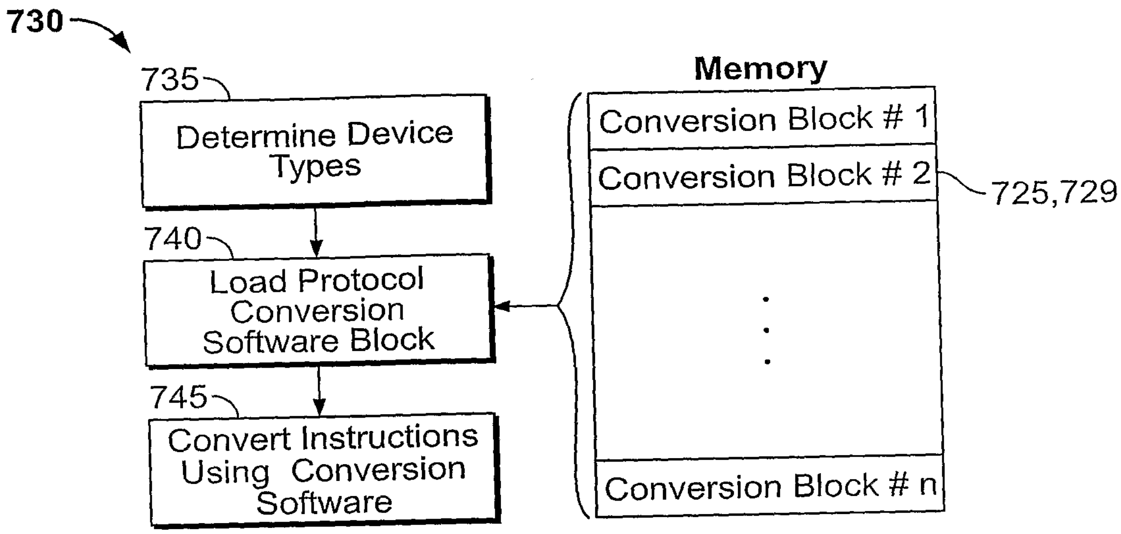

730
735
Determine Device Types
740
Load Protocol Conversion Software Block
745
Convert Instructions Using Conversion Software
Memory
Conversion Block # 1
Conversion Block # 2
Conversion Block # n
725,729

FIG. 14

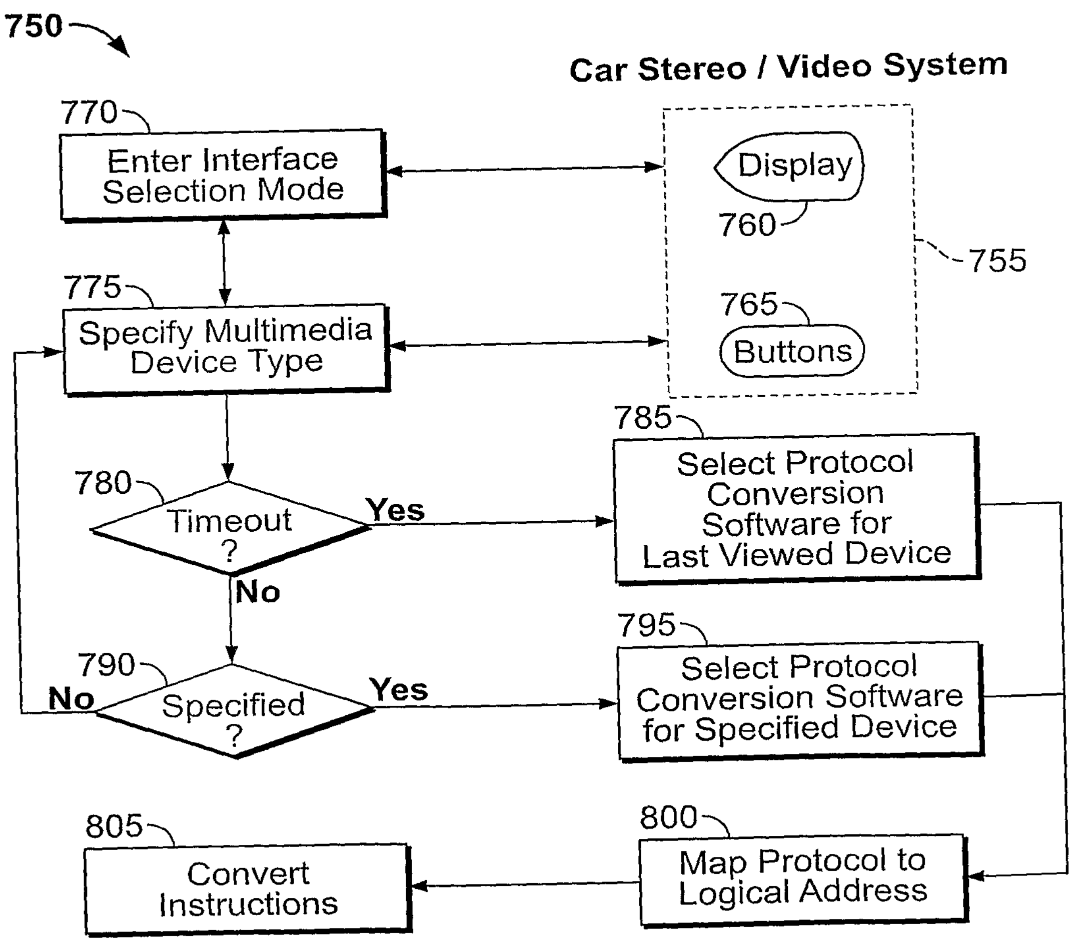

750
Car Stereo / Video System
770
Enter Interface Selection Mode
Display
760
755
765
Buttons
775
Specify Multimedia Device Type
785
Select Protocol Conversion Software for Last Viewed Device
780
Timeout ?
Yes
No
795
Select Protocol Conversion Software for Specified Device
790
No
Specified ?
Yes
805
Convert Instructions
800
Map Protocol to Logical Address

FIG. 15

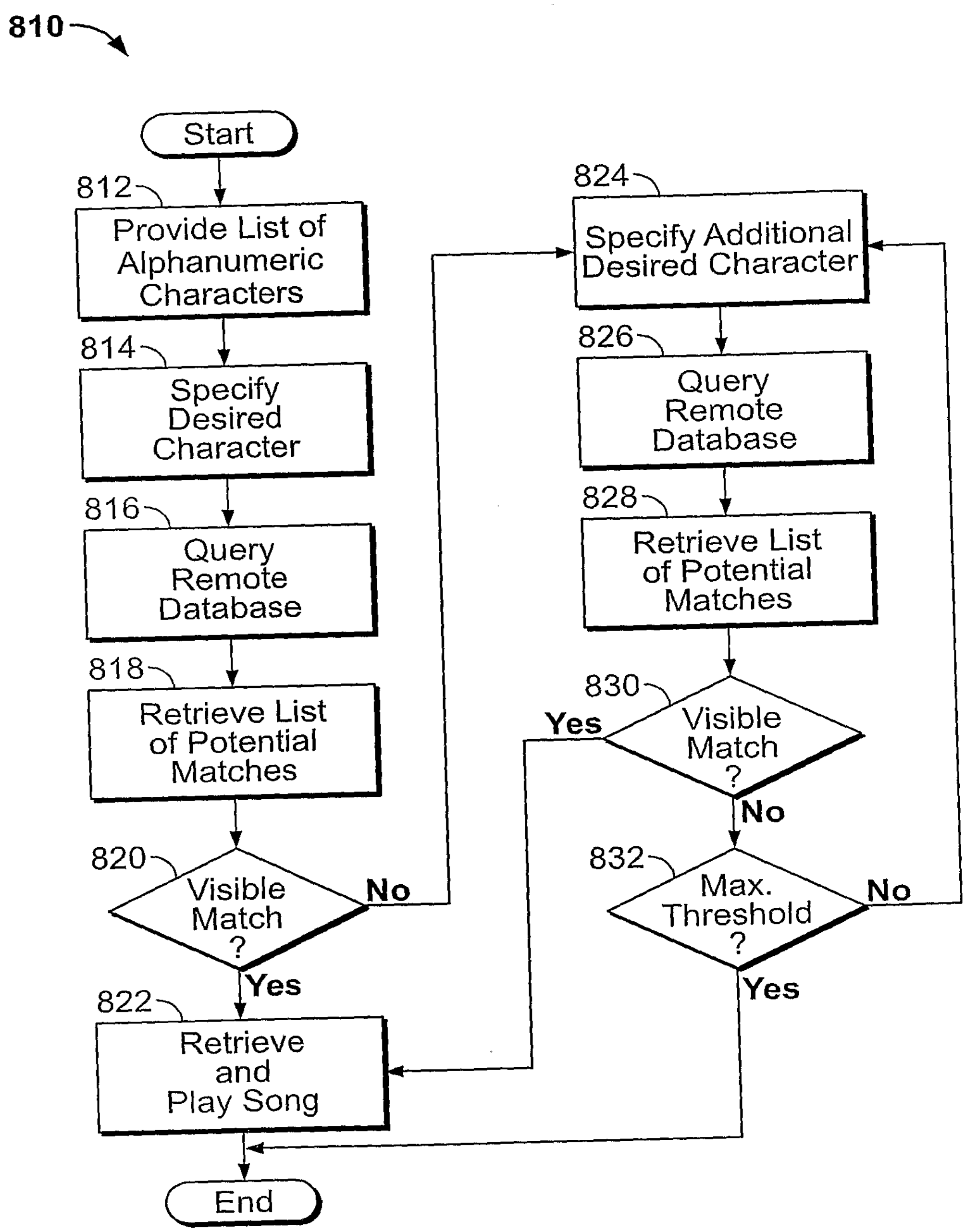
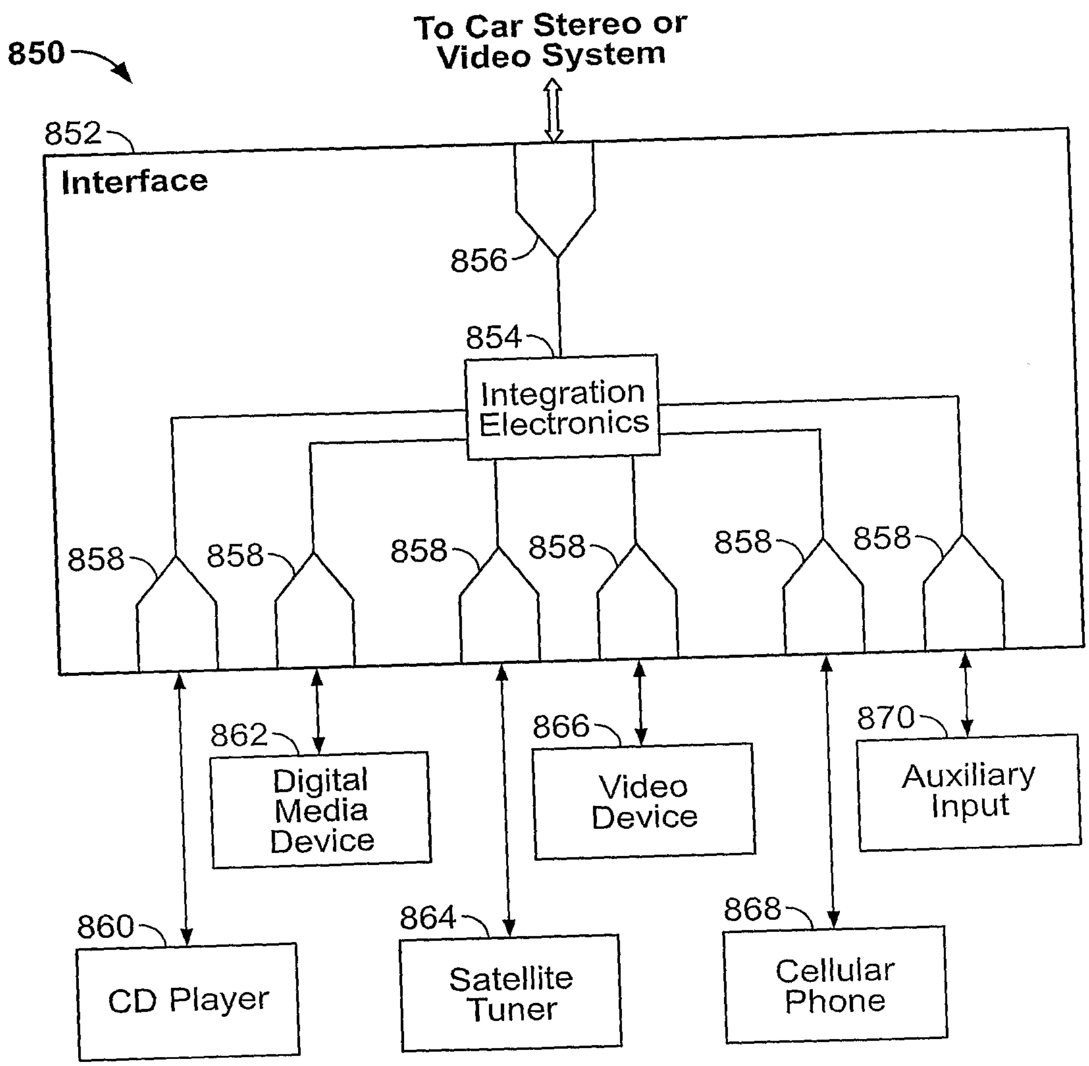

810
Start
812
Provide List of Alphanumeric Characters
814
Specify Desired Character
816
Query Remote Database
818
Retrieve List of Potential Matches
820
Visible Match ?
No
Yes
822
Retrieve and Play Song
End
824
Specify Additional Desired Character
826
Query Remote Database
828
Retrieve List of Potential Matches
830
Visible Match ?
Yes
No
832
Max. Threshold ?
No
Yes

FIG. 16



850
To Car Stereo or Video System
852
Interface
856
854
Integration Electronics
858
858
858
858
858
858
862
Digital Media Device
866
Video Device
870
Auxiliary Input
860
CD Player
864
Satellite Tuner
868
Cellular Phone

FIG. 17

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau

(43) International Publication Date
24 June 2004 (24.06.2004)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2004/053722 A1

(51) International Patent Classification[7]: G06F 17/00, H04B 1/00, 3/00

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US2003/039493

(22) International Filing Date: 11 December 2003 (11.12.2003)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:

10/316,961	11 December 2002 (11.12.2002)	US
60/523,714	20 November 2003 (20.11.2003)	US
10/732,909	10 December 2003 (10.12.2003)	US

(71) Applicant: BLITZSAFE OF AMERICA, INC. [US/US]; 33 Honeck Street, Englewood, NJ 07631 (US).

(72) Inventor: MARLOW, Ira; 6403 Hilltop Court, Fort Lee, NJ 07024 (US).

(74) Agent: FRISCIA, Michael, R.; Wolff & Samson, PC, One Boland Drive, West Orange, NJ 07052 (US).

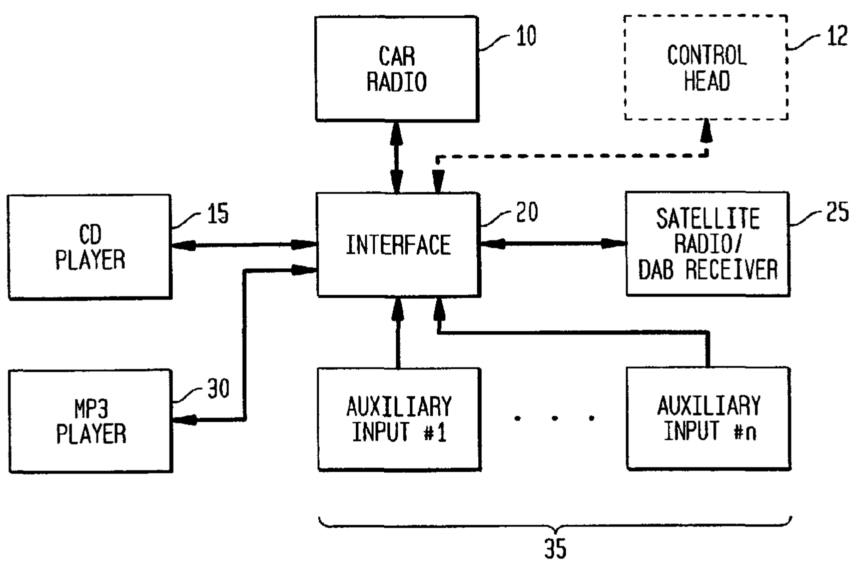
(81) Designated States *(national)*: AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States *(regional)*: ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:
— *with international search report*
— *before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments*

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: AUDIO DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM



(57) **Abstract:** An audio device integration system is provided. One or more after-market audio devices, such as a CD player (15), CD changer, MP3 player (30), satellite receiver (25), DAB receiver (25), or the like, is integrated for use with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system, wherein control commands can be issued at the car stereo (10) and responsive data from the audio device (15, 25, 30) can be displayed on the stereo. Control commands generated at the car stereo (10) are received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the audio device (15, 25, 30), and dispatched to the audio device (15, 25, 30) for execution. Information from the audio device (15, 25, 30), including track, disc, song, station, time, and other information, is received, processed, converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo, and dispatched to the car stereo (10) for display thereon.

WO 2004/053722 A1

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

AUDIO DEVICE INTEGRATION SYSTEM

SPECIFICATION

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to an audio device integration system. More specifically, the present invention relates to an audio device integration system for integrating after-market components such as satellite receivers, CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receivers, auxiliary audio sources, and the like with factory-installed (OEM) or after-market car stereo systems.

RELATED ART

Automobile audio systems have continued to advance in complexity and the number of options available to automobile purchasers. Early audio systems offered a simple AM and/or FM tuner, and perhaps an analog tape deck for allowing cassettes, 8-tracks, and other types of tapes to be played while driving. Such early systems were closed, in that external devices could not be easily integrated therewith.

With advances in digital technology, CD players have been included with automobile audio systems. Original Equipment Manufacturers (OEMs) often produce car stereos having CD players and/or changers for allowing CDs to be played while driving. However, such systems often include proprietary buses and protocols that do not allow after-market audio systems, such as satellite receivers (e.g., XM satellite tuners), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receivers, MP3 players, CD changers, auxiliary input sources, and the like, to be easily integrated therewith. Thus, automobile purchasers are frequently forced to either entirely replace the OEM audio system, or use same throughout the life of the vehicle or the duration of ownership. Even if the OEM radio is replaced with an after-market radio, the after-market radio also frequently is not operable with an external device.

A particular problem with integrating after-market audio systems with existing car stereos is that signals generated by the car stereo is in a proprietary format, and is not capable of being processed by the after-market system. Additionally, signals generated by the after-market system are also in a proprietary format that is not recognizable by the car stereo. Thus, in order to integrate after-market systems with car stereos, it is necessary to convert signals between such systems.

It known in the art to provide one or more expansion modules for OEM and after-market car stereos for allowing external audio products to be integrated with the car stereo. However, such expansion modules only operate with and allow integration of external audio products manufactured by the same manufacturer as the OEM / after-market car stereo. For example, a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc., cannot be integrated with an OEM car radio manufactured by TOYOTA or an after-market car radio manufactured by CLARION, Inc. Thus, existing expansion modules only serve the limited purpose of integrating equipment by the same manufacturer as the car stereo. Thus, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that allows any audio device of any manufacture to be integrated with any OEM or after-market radio system.

Moreover, it would be desirable to provide an integration system that not only achieves integration of various audio devices that are alien to a given OEM or after-market stereo system, but also allows for information to be exchanged between the after-market device and the car stereo. For example, it would be desirable to provide a system wherein station, track, time, and song information can be retrieved from the after-market device, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display thereby, such as at an LCD panel of the car stereo. Such information could be transmitted and displayed on both hardwired radio systems (*e.g.*, radios installed in dashboards or at other locations within the car), or integrated for display on one or more software or graphically-driven radio systems operable with graphical display panels. Additionally, it would be desirable to provide an audio integration system that allows a user to control more than one device, such as a CD or satellite receiver and one or more auxiliary sources, and to quickly and conveniently switch between same using the existing controls of the car stereo.

Accordingly, the present invention addresses these needs by providing an audio integration system that allows a plurality of audio devices, such as CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, satellite receivers, DAB receivers, auxiliary input sources, or a combination thereof, to be integrated into existing car stereos while allowing information to be displayed on, and control to be provided from, the car stereo.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to an audio device integration system. One or more after-market audio devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver (e.g., XM tuner), digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, or auxiliary input source, can be connected to and operate with an existing stereo system in an automobile, such as an OEM car stereo system or an after-market car stereo system installed in the automobile. The integration system connects to and interacts with the car stereo at any available port of the car stereo, such as a CD input port, a satellite input, or other known type of connector. If the car stereo system is an after-market car stereo system, the present invention generates a signal that is sent to the car stereo to keep same in an operational state and responsive to external data and signals. Commands generated at the control panel are received by the present invention and converted into a format recognizable by the after-market audio device. The formatted commands are executed by the audio device, and audio therefrom is channeled to the car stereo. Information from the audio device is received by the present invention, converted into a format recognizable by the car stereo, and forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby. The formatted information could include information relating to a CD or MP3 track being played, channel, song, and artist information from a satellite receiver or DAB receiver, or video information from one or more external devices connected to the present invention. The information can be presented as one or more menus, textual, or graphical prompts for display on an LCD display of the radio, allowing interaction with the user at the radio. A docking port is provided for allowing portable external audio devices to be connected to the interface of the present invention.

In an embodiment of the present invention, a dual-input device is provided for integrating both an external audio device and an auxiliary input with an OEM or after-market car stereo. The user can select between the external audio device and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. The invention can automatically detect the type of device connected to the auxiliary input, and integrate same with the car stereo.

In another embodiment of the present invention, an interface is provided for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with an existing car stereo system. A user can select between the auxiliary sources using the control panel of the car stereo. One or more after-market audio devices can be integrated with the auxiliary input sources, and a user can switch between the audio device and the auxiliary input sources using the car stereo. Devices connected to the auxiliary input sources are inter-operable with the car stereo, and are capable of exchanging commands and data via the interface.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

These and other important objects and features of the invention will be apparent from the following Detailed Description of the Invention, taken in connection with the accompanying drawings, in which:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the audio device integration system of the present invention.

FIG. 2a is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2c is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver is integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2d is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2e is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the audio device integration system of the present invention, wherein a CD player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2f is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite or DAB receiver and a plurality of auxiliary input source are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2g is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player and a plurality of auxiliary input sources are integrated with a car radio.

FIG. 2h is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces and an audio device are integrated with a car stereo.

FIG. 3a is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with a car radio.

FIG. 3b is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating both a CD player and an auxiliary input source with a car radio, wherein the CD player and the auxiliary input are switchable by a user.

FIG. 3c is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 3d is a circuit diagram showing a device according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4a is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player with a car radio.

FIG. 4b is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player with a car radio.

FIG. 4c is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a satellite receiver with a car radio.

FIG. 4d is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4e is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4f is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a satellite or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio.

FIG. 4g is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating a MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device and one or more auxiliary input sources.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention.

FIG. 7a is a perspective view of a docking station according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car.

FIG. 7b is an end view of the docking station of **FIG. 7a**.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, which includes the audio device integration system of the present invention incorporated therewith.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to an audio device integration system. One or more after-market audio devices, such as a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, digital audio broadcast (DAB) receiver, or the like, can be integrated with an existing car radio, such as an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo. Control of the audio device is enabled using the car radio, and information from the audio device, such as channel, artist, track, time, and song information, is retrieved form the audio device, processed, and forwarded to the car radio for display thereon. The information channeled to the car radio can include video from the external device, as well as graphical and menu-based information. A user can review and interact with information via the car stereo. Commands from the car radio are received, processed by the present invention into a format recognizable by the audio device, and transmitted thereto for execution. One or more auxiliary input channels can be integrated by the present invention with the car radio. The user can switch between one or more audio devices and one or more auxiliary input channels using the control panel buttons of the car radio.

As used herein, the term "integration" or "integrated" is intended to mean connecting one or more external devices or inputs to an existing car radio or stereo via an interface, processing and handling signals and audio channels, allowing a user to control the devices via the car stereo, and displaying data from the devices on the radio. Thus, for example, integration of a CD player with a car stereo system allows for the CD player to be remotely controlled via the control panel of the stereo system, and data from the CD player to be sent to the display of the stereo. Of course, control of audio devices can be provided at locations other than the control panel of the radio without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Further, as used herein, the term "inter-operable" is intended to mean allowing the external audio device to receive and process commands that have been formatted by the interface of the present invention, as well as allowing a car stereo to display information that is generated by the external audio device and processed by the present invention. Additionally, by the term "inter-operable," it is meant allowing a device that is alien to the environment of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo to be utilized thereby.

Also, as used herein, the terms "car stereo" and "car radio" are used interchangeably and are intended to include all presently existing car stereos and radios, such as physical devices that are present at any location within a vehicle, in addition to software and/or graphically- or display-driven receivers. An example of such a receiver is a software-driven receiver that operates on a universal LCD panel within a vehicle and is operable by a user via a graphical user interface displayed on the universal LCD panel. Further, any future receiver, whether a hardwired or a software/graphical receiver operable on one or more displays, is considered within the definition of the terms "car stereo" and "car radio," as used herein, and is within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 1 is a block diagram showing the audio device integration (or interface) system of the present invention, generally indicated at **20**. A plurality of devices and auxiliary inputs can be connected to the interface **20**, and integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. A CD player or changer **15** can be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. A satellite radio or DAB receiver **25**, such as an XM radio satellite receiver or DAB receiver known in the art, could be integrated with the radio **10**, via the interface **20**. Further, an MP3 player could also be integrated with the radio **10** via interface **20**. Moreover, a plurality of auxiliary input sources, illustratively indicated as auxiliary input sources **35** (comprising input sources 1 through *n*, *n* being any number), could also be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**. Optionally, a control head **12**, such as that commonly used with after-market CD changers and other similar devices, could be integrated with the car radio **10** via interface **20**, for controlling any of the car radio **10**, CD player/changer **15**, satellite/DAB receiver **25**, MP3 player **30**, and auxiliary input sources **35**. Thus, as can be readily appreciated, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for the integration of a multitude of devices and inputs with an OEM or after-market car radio or stereo.

FIG. 2a is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the audio device interface system of the present invention, wherein a CD player/changer **15** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The CD player **15** is electrically connected with the interface **20**, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. The interface **20** is electrically connected with the car radio **10**, and exchanges data and audio signals therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the car radio **10** includes a display **13** (such as an alphanumeric, electroluminescent display) for displaying information, and a plurality of control panel buttons **14** that normally operate to control the radio **10**. The interface **20** allows the CD player **15** to be controlled by the control buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Further, the interface **20** allows information from the CD player **15**, such as track, disc, time, and song information, to be retrieved therefrom, processed and formatted by the interface **20**, sent to the display **13** of the radio **10**.

Importantly, the interface **20** allows for the remote control of the CD player **15** from the radio **10** (e.g., the CD player **15** could be located in the trunk of a car, while the radio **10** is mounted on the dashboard of the car). Thus, for example, one or more discs stored within the CD player **15** can be remotely selected by a user from the radio **10**, and tracks on one or more of the discs can be selected therefrom. Moreover, standard CD operational commands, such as pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track forward, and track reverse (among other commands) can be remotely entered at the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10** for remotely controlling the CD player **15**.

FIG. 2b is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an MP3 player **30** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via interface **20**. As mentioned earlier, the interface **20** of the present invention allows for a plurality of disparate audio devices to be integrated with an existing car radio for use therewith. Thus, as shown in **FIG. 2b**, remote control of the MP3 player **30** via radio **10** is provided for via interface **20**. The MP3 player **30** is electronically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The interface **20** allows data and audio signals to be exchanged between the MP3 player **30** and the car radio **10**, and processes and formats signals accordingly so that instructions and data from the radio **10** are processable by the MP3 player **30**, and vice versa. Operational commands, such as track selection, pause, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, and other commands, are entered via the control panel buttons **14** of car radio **10**, processed by the interface **20**, and formatted for execution by the MP3 player **30**. Data from the MP3 player, such as track, time, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and sent to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Audio from the MP3 player **30** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** to the radio **10** for playing.

FIG. 2c is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver **25** is integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10** via the interface **20**. Satellite/DAB receiver **25** can be any satellite radio receiver known in the art, such as XM or Sirius, or any DAB receiver known in the art. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which itself is electrically interconnected with the car radio **10**. The satellite/DAB receiver **25** is remotely operable by the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. Commands from the radio **10** are received by the interface **20**, processed and formatted thereby, and dispatched to the satellite/DAB receiver **25** for execution thereby. Information from the satellite/DAB receiver **25**, including time, station, and song information, is received by the interface **20**, processed, and transmitted to the radio **10** for display on display **13**. Further, audio from the satellite/DAB receiver **25** is selectively forwarded by the interface **20** for playing by the radio **10**.

FIG. 2d is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. The auxiliary inputs **35** can be connected to analog sources, or can be digitally coupled with one or more audio devices, such as after-market CD players, CD changers, MP3 players, satellite receivers, DAB receivers, and the like, and integrated with an existing car stereo. Preferably, four auxiliary input sources are connectable with the interface **20**, but any number of auxiliary input sources could be included. Audio from the auxiliary input sources **35** is selectively forwarded to the radio **10** under command of the user. As will be discussed herein in greater detail, a user can select a desired input source from the auxiliary input sources **35** by depressing one or more of the control panel buttons **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** receives the command initiated from the control panel, processes same, and connects the corresponding input source from the auxiliary input sources **35** to allow audio therefrom to be forwarded to the radio **10** for playing. Further, the interface **20** determines the type of audio devices connected to the auxiliary input ports **35**, and integrates same with the car stereo **10**.

As mentioned previously, the present invention allows one or more external audio devices to be integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo, along with one or more auxiliary input sources, and the user can select between these sources using the controls of the car stereo. Such "dual input" capability allows operation with devices connected to either of the inputs of the device, or both. Importantly, the device can operate in "plug and play" mode, wherein any device connected to one of the inputs is automatically detected by the present invention, its device type determined, and the device automatically integrated with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. Thus, the present invention is not dependent any specific device type to be connected therewith to operate. For example, a user can first purchase a CD changer, plug same into a dual interface, and use same with the car stereo. At a point later in time, the user could purchase an XM tuner, plug same into the device, and the tuner will automatically be detected and integrated with the car stereo, allowing the user to select from and operate both devices from the car stereo. It should be noted that such plug and play capability is not limited to a dual input device, but is provided for in every embodiment of the present invention. The dual-input configuration of the preset invention is illustrated in **FIGS. 2e-2h** and described below.

FIG. 2e is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein an external CD player/changer **15** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Both the CD player **15** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** are electrically interconnected with the interface **20**, which, in turn, is electrically interconnected to the radio **10**. Using the controls **14** of the radio **10**, a user can select between the CD player **15** and one or more of the inputs **35** to selectively channel audio from these sources to the radio. The command to select from one of these sources is received by the interface **20**, processed thereby, and the corresponding source is channeled to the radio **10** by the interface **20**. As will be discussed later in greater detail, the interface **20** contains internal processing logic for selecting between these sources.

FIG. 2f is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio

10. Similar to the embodiment of the present invention illustrated in **FIG. 2e** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, described in greater detail below, for allowing switching between the satellite/DAB receiver **25** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2g is a block diagram of an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a MP3 player **30** and one or more auxiliary input sources **35** are integrated by the interface **20** with an OEM or after-market car radio **10**. Similar to the embodiments of the present invention illustrated in **FIGS. 2e** and **2f** and described earlier, the interface **20** allows a user to select between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35** using the controls **14** of the radio **10**. The interface **20** contains processing logic, as will be discussed later in greater detail, for allowing switching between the MP3 player **30** and one or more of the auxiliary input sources **35**.

FIG. 2h is a block diagram showing an alternate embodiment of the present invention, wherein a plurality of auxiliary interfaces **40** and **44** and an audio device **17** are integrated with an OEM or after-market car stereo **10**. Importantly, the present invention can be expanded to allow a plurality of auxiliary inputs to be connected to the car stereo **10** in a tree-like fashion. Thus, as can be seen in **FIG. 2h**, a first auxiliary interface **40** is connected to the interface **20**, and allows data and audio from the ports **42** to be exchanged with the car radio **10**. Connected to one of the ports **42** is another auxiliary interface **44**, which, in turn, provides a plurality of input ports **46**. Any device connected to any of the ports **42** or **46** can be integrated with the car radio **10**. Further, any device connected to the ports **42** or **46** can be inter-operable with the car radio **10**, allowing commands to be entered from the car radio **10** (*e.g.*, such as via the control panel **14**) for commanding the device, and information from the device to be displayed by the car radio **10**. Conceivably, by configuring the interfaces **40**, **44**, and successive interfaces in a tree configuration, any number of devices can be integrated using the present invention.

The various embodiments of the present invention described above and shown in **FIGS. 1** through **2h** are illustrative in nature and are not intended to limit the spirit or scope of the present invention. Indeed, any conceivable audio device or input source, in any desired combination, can be integrated by the present invention into existing car stereo systems. Further, it is conceivable that not only can data and audio signals be exchanged between the car stereo and any external device, but also video information that can be captured by the present invention, processed thereby, and transmitted to the car stereo for display thereby and interaction with a user thereat.

Various circuit configurations can be employed to carry out the present invention. Examples of such configurations are described below and shown in **FIGS. 3a-3d**.

FIG. 3a is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a CD player or an auxiliary input source with an existing car stereo system. A plurality of ports **J1C1, J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH** are provided for allowing connection of the interface system of the present invention between an existing car radio, an after-market CD player or changer, or an auxiliary input source. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J1C1** connects to the input port of an OEM car radio, such as that manufactured by TOYOTA, Inc. Conceivably, port **J1C1** could be modified to allow connection to the input port of an after-market car radio. Ports **J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH** connect to an after-market CD changer, such as that manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc., or to an auxiliary input source.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1C1, J2A1,** and **X2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player or auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J2A1, X2, RCH,** and **LCH**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J1C1**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the CD player or auxiliary input source via connector **J2A1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J1C1** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **J2A1, X2, RCH** and **LCH** is selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J1C1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F628 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F628 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having an internal, 4 MHz internal oscillator, 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, a capture/compare/PWM, a USART, 2 comparators, and a programmable voltage reference. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R13**, diodes **D1** through **D4**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1C1, J2A1, X2, RCH**, and **LCH**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3a** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3b is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration according to the present invention, wherein one or more after-market CD changers / players and an auxiliary input source are integrated with an existing car stereo, and wherein the user can select between the CD changer/player and the auxiliary input using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**. Ports **J4A, J4B,** and **J3** allow the audio device interface system of the present invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos, such as an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, ports **J4A** and **J4B** can be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by BMW, Inc. Port **J3** can be connected to a car stereo manufactured by LANDROVER, Inc. Of course, any number of car stereos, by any manufacturer, could be provided. Ports **J1** and **J2** allow connection to an after-market CD changer or player, such as that manufactured by ALPINE, Inc., and an auxiliary input source.

Optionally, ports **J5L1** and **J5R1** allow integration of a standard analog (line-level) source. Of course, a single standalone CD player or auxiliary input source could be connected to either of ports **J1** or **J2**.

Microcontroller **DD1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the CD player and auxiliary input source connected to the ports **J1** and **J2** with the car stereo connected to the ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**. For example, microcontroller **DD1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **DD1** receives information provided by the CD player and auxiliary input source via connectors **J1** or **J2**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connectors **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** for display on the display of the car stereo. Further, the microcontroller **DD1** controls multiplexer **DA3** to allow selection between the CD player/changer and the auxiliary input. Audio signals provided at the ports **J1, J2, J5L1** and **J5R1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at ports **J4A** and **J4B** or **J3** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **DD1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **DD1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F872 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 64 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, capture/compare/PWM functions, a USART, and a synchronous serial port configurable as either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **DD1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexer **DA3** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer manufactured by FAIRCHILD SEMICONDUCTOR, Inc. Any other suitable multiplexer can be substituted for **DA3** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R18**, diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C11**, and **G1-G3**, transistors **Q1-Q3**, transformers **T1** and **T2**, amplifiers **LCH:A** and **LCH:B**, oscillator **XTAL1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **DD1** and the multiplexer **DA3** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J4A**, **J4B**, **J3**, **J5L1**, **J5R1**, **J1**, and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3b** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3c is a diagram showing an illustrative circuit configuration for integrating a plurality of auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. A plurality of connectors are provided, illustratively indicated as ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**. Port **J1** allows the audio device integration system of the present invention to be connected to one or more existing car stereos. Each of these ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. For example, port **J1** could be connected to an OEM car stereo manufactured by HONDA, Inc., or any other manufacturer. Ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** allow connection with the left and right channels of four auxiliary input sources. Of course, any number of auxiliary input sources and ports/connectors could be provided.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**, and provides functionality for integrating one or more auxiliary input sources connected to the ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** with the car stereo connected to the port **J1**. Further, the microcontroller **U1** controls multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** to allow selection amongst any of the auxiliary inputs using the controls of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the ports **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4** are selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J1** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F872 microcontroller discussed earlier. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** comprises the CD4053 triple, two-channel analog multiplexer/demultiplexer, discussed earlier. Any other suitable microcontroller and multiplexers can be substituted for **U1, DA3,** and **DA4** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R15**, diodes **D1** through **D3**, capacitors **C1-C5,** transistors **Q1-Q2,** amplifiers **DA1:A** and **DA1:B,** and oscillator **Y1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** and the multiplexers **DA3** and **DA4** with the hardware connected to the ports **J1**, **RCH1**, **LCH1**, **RCH2**, **LCH2**, **RCH3**, **LCH3**, **RCH4**, and **LCH4**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers and multiplexers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers and multiplexers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3c** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIG. 3d is an illustrative circuit diagram according to the present invention for integrating a satellite receiver with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Ports **J1** and **J2** are provided for allowing connection of the integration system of the present invention between an existing car radio and a satellite receiver. These ports could be embodied by any suitable electrical connector known in the art. Port **J2** connects to the input port of an existing car radio, such as that manufactured by KENWOOD, Inc. Port **1** connects to an after-market satellite receiver, such as that manufactured by PIONEER, Inc.

Microcontroller **U1** is in electrical communication with each of the ports **J1** and **J2**, and provides functionality for integrating the satellite receiver connected to the port **J1** with the car stereo connected to the port **J2**. For example, microcontroller **U1** receives control commands, such as button or key sequences, initiated by a user at control panel of the car radio and received at the connector **J2**, processes and formats same, and dispatches the formatted commands to the satellite receiver via connector **J2**. Additionally, the microcontroller **U1** receives information provided by the satellite receiver via connector **J1**, processes and formats same, and transmits the formatted data to the car stereo via connector **J2** for display on the display of the car stereo. Audio signals provided at the port **J1** is selectively channeled to the car radio at port **J2** under control of one or more user commands and processing logic, as will be discussed in greater detail, embedded within microcontroller **U1**.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the microcontroller **U1** comprises the 16F873 microcontroller manufactured by MICROCHIP, Inc. The 16F873 chip is a CMOS, flash-based, 8-bit microcontroller having 128 bytes of EEPROM data memory, self-programming capability, an ICD, 5 channels of 10 bit Analog-to-Digital (A/D) converters, 2 timers, 2 capture/compare/PWM functions, a synchronous serial port that can be configured as a either a 3-wire serial peripheral interface or a 2-wire inter-integrated circuit bus, and a USART. Of course, any suitable microcontroller known in the art can be substituted for microcontroller **U1** without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

A plurality of discrete components, such as resistors **R1** through **R7**, capacitors **C1** and **C2**, and amplifier **A1**, among other components, are provided for interfacing the microcontroller **U1** with the hardware connected to the connectors **J1** and **J2**. These components, as will be readily appreciated to one of ordinary skill in the art, can be arranged as desired to accommodate a variety of microcontrollers, and the numbers and types of discrete components can be varied to accommodate other similar controllers. Thus, the circuit shown in **FIG. 3d** and described herein is illustrative in nature, and modifications thereof are considered to be within the spirit and scope of the present invention.

FIGS. 4a through **6** are flowcharts showing processing logic according to the present invention. Such logic can be embodied as software and/or instructions stored in a read-only memory circuit (*e.g.*, and EEPROM circuit), or other similar device. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the processing logic described herein is stored in one or more microcontrollers, such as the microcontrollers discussed earlier with reference to **FIGS. 3a-3d**. Of course, any other suitable means for storing the processing logic of the present invention can be employed.

FIG. 4a is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **100**, for integrating a CD player or changer with an existing OEM or after-market car stereo system. Beginning in step **100**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **104** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **106** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **106** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **106**, a CD handling process, indicated as block **108**, is invoked, allowing the CD player/changer to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **110**, a signal is generated by the present invention indicating that a CD player/changer is present, and the signal is continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Importantly, this signal prevents the car stereo from shutting off, entering a sleep mode, or otherwise being unresponsive to signals and/or data from an external source. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. Concurrently with step **110**, or within a short period of time before or after the execution of step **110**, steps **112** and **114** are invoked. In step **112**, the audio channels of the CD player/changer are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the CD player/changer to be played through the car stereo. In step **114**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the CD player/changer, including track and time information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the external CD player/changer can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **110**, **112**, and **114** have been executed, control passes to step **116**.

In steps **116**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for CD operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step **118**, if a command is not detected, step **116** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **118** invokes step **120**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the CD player/changer connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a GM car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a CD player/changer manufactured by ALPINE, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by a CD player/changer of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **122** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the CD player/changer and executed. Step **110** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4b is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **130**, for integrating an MP3 player with an existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **132**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **134** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **136** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **136** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **136**, an MP3 handling process, indicated as block **138**, is invoked, allowing the MP3 player to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **140**, the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. In step **142**, the audio channels of the MP3 player are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the MP3 player to be played through the car stereo. In step **144**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the MP3 player, including track, time, title, and song information, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the MP3 player can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **140**, **142**, and **144** have been executed, control passes to step **146**.

In steps **146**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for MP3 operational commands. Examples of such commands include track forward, track reverse, play, stop, fast forward, rewind, track program, random track play, and other similar commands. In step **148**, if a command is not detected, step **146** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **148** invokes step **150**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the MP3 player connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a HONDA car radio is converted into a format recognizable by an MP3 player manufactured by PANASONIC, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by an MP3 player of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **152** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the MP3 player and executed. Step **140** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4c is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **160**, for integrating a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver with an existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **162**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **164** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **166** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **166** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **166**, a satellite/DAB receiver handling process, indicated as block **168**, is invoked, allowing the satellite/DAB receiver to exchange data and audio signals with any existing car stereo system. Beginning in step **170**, the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. In step **172**, the audio channels of the satellite/DAB receiver are connected (channeled) to the car stereo system, allowing audio from the satellite receiver or DAB receiver to be played through the car stereo. In step **174**, data is retrieved by the present invention from the satellite/DAB receiver, including channel number, channel name, artist name, song time, and song title, formatted, and transmitted to the car stereo for display by the car stereo. The information could be presented in one or more menus, or via a graphical interface viewable and manipulable by the user at the car stereo. Thus, information produced by the receiver can be quickly and conveniently viewed by a driver by merely viewing the display of the car stereo. After steps **170**, **172**, and **174** have been executed, control passes to step **176**.

In steps **176**, the present invention monitors the control panel buttons of the car stereo for satellite/DAB receiver operational commands. Examples of such commands include station up, station down, station memory program, and other similar commands. In step **178**, if a command is not detected, step **176** is re-invoked. Otherwise, if a command is received, step **178** invokes step **180**, wherein the received command is converted into a format recognizable by the satellite/DAB receiver connected to the present invention. For example, in this step, a command issued from a FORD car radio is converted into a format recognizable by a satellite receiver manufactured by PIONEER, Inc. Any conceivable command from any type of car radio can be formatted for use by a satellite/DAB receiver of any type or manufacture. Once the command has been formatted, step **182** is invoked, wherein the formatted command is transmitted to the satellite/DAB receiver and executed. Step **170** is then re-invoked, so that additional processing can occur.

FIG. 4d is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **190**, for integrating a plurality of auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **192**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **194** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **196** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **196** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **196**, an auxiliary input handling process, indicated as block **198**, is invoked, allowing one or more auxiliary inputs to be connected (channeled) to the car stereo. Further, if a plurality of auxiliary inputs exist, the logic of block **198** allows a user to select a desired input from the plurality of inputs. Beginning in step **200**, the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. If the car radio is an OEM car radio, the CD player presence signal need not be generated. Then, in step **202**, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, each of the one or more auxiliary input sources are selectable by selecting a CD disc number on the control panel of the car radio. Thus, in step **204**, a determination is made as to whether the first disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **206** is invoked, wherein the first auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **208** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the second disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **210** is invoked, wherein the second auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **212** is invoked, wherein a third determination is made as to whether the third disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **214** is invoked, wherein the third auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **216** is invoked, wherein a fourth determination is made as to whether the fourth disc number has been selected. If a positive determination is made, step **218** is invoked, wherein the fourth auxiliary input source is connected (channeled) to the car stereo. If a negative determination is made, step **200** is re-invoked, and the process disclosed for block **198** repeated. Further, if any of steps **206**, **210**, **214**, or **218** are executed, then step **200** is re-invoked and block **198** repeated.

The process disclosed in block **198** allows a user to select from one of four auxiliary input sources using the control buttons of the car stereo. Of course, the number of auxiliary input sources connectable with and selectable by the present invention can be expanded to any desired number. Thus, for example, 6 auxiliary input sources could be provided and switched using corresponding selection key(s) or keystroke(s) on the control panel of the radio. Moreover, any desired keystroke, selection sequence, or button(s) on the control panel of the radio, or elsewhere, can be utilized to select from the auxiliary input sources without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

FIG. 4e is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **220**, for integrating a CD player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **222**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **224** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **226** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **226** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **226**, then step **228** is invoked, wherein the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Then, in step **230**, a determination is made as to whether a CD player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external CD player or changer is connected to the audio device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **231** and **232** are invoked. In step **231**, the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4a** (the CD handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **232**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **234** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **234** re-invokes step **228**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external CD player/changer to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **236** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the CD player/changer are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **238** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **230** (no external CD player/changer is connected to the present invention), then step **238** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4f is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **240**, for integrating a satellite receiver or DAB receiver and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car radio. Beginning in step **242**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **244** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **246** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **246** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **246**, then step **248** is invoked, wherein the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Then, in step **250**, a determination is made as to whether a satellite receiver or DAB receiver is present (*i.e.*, whether an external satellite receiver or DAB receiver is connected to the audio device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **231** and **232** are invoked. In step **251**, the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4c** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the satellite receiver can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **252**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external satellite receiver to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **254** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **254** re-invokes step **258**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external satellite/DAB receiver to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **256** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the satellite receiver are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **258** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **250** (no external satellite/DAB receiver is connected to the present invention), then step **258** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

FIG. 4g is a flowchart showing processing logic according to the present invention for integrating an MP3 player and one or more auxiliary input sources with a car stereo. Beginning in step **262**, a determination is made as to whether the existing car stereo is powered on. If a negative determination is made, step **264** is invoked, wherein the present invention enters a standby mode and waits for the car stereo to be powered on. If a positive determination is made, step **266** is invoked, wherein a second determination is made as to whether the car stereo is in CD player mode. If a negative determination is made, step **266** is re-invoked.

If a positive determination is made in step **266**, then step **268** is invoked, wherein the CD player presence signal, described earlier, is generated by the present invention and continuously transmitted to the car stereo. Then, in step **270**, a determination is made as to whether an MP3 player is present (*i.e.*, whether an external MP3 player is connected to the audio device integration system of the present invention). If a positive determination is made, steps **271** and **272** are invoked. In step **271**, the logic of block **138** of **FIG. 4b** (the MP3 handling process), described earlier, is invoked, so that the CD player/changer can be integrated with the car stereo and utilized by a user. In step **272**, a sensing mode is initiated, wherein the present invention monitors for a selection sequence (as will be discussed in greater detail) initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo for switching from the external CD player/changer to one or more auxiliary input sources. Step **274** is then invoked, wherein a determination is made as to whether such a sequence has been initiated. If a negative determination is made, step **274** re-invokes step **278**, so that further processing can occur. Otherwise, if a positive determination is made (*i.e.*, the user desires to switch from the external MP3 player to one of the auxiliary input sources), step **276** is invoked, wherein the audio channels of the MP3 player are disconnected from the car stereo. Then, step **278** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, allowing the user to select from one of the auxiliary input sources. In the event that a negative determination is made in step **270** (no external MP3 player is connected to the present invention), then step **278** is invoked, and the system goes into auxiliary mode. The user can then select from one or more auxiliary input sources using the controls of the radio.

As mentioned previously, to enable integration, the present invention contains logic for converting command signals issued from an after-market or OEM car stereo into a format compatible with one or more external audio devices connected to the present invention. Such logic can be applied to convert any car stereo signal for use with any external device. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 1**, below, for converting control signals from a BMW car stereo into a format understandable by a CD changer:

Table 1

```
;       =============================================
;       Radio requests changer to STOP (exit PLAY mode)
;       Decoding 6805183801004C message
;       =============================================

Encode_RD_stop_msg:

        movlw 0x68
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x05
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+1,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x18
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+2,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x38
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+3,W
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x01
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+4,W
        skpz
        return

        tstf  BMW_Recv_buff+5
        skpz
        return

        movlw 0x4C
        xorwf BMW_Recv_buff+6,W
        skpz
        return

        bsf   BMW_Recv_STOP_msg
        return
```

The code portion shown in **Table 1** receives a STOP command issued by a BMW stereo, in a format proprietary to BMW stereos. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Recv_buff. The procedure "Encode_RD_stop_msg" repetitively applies an XOR function to the STOP command, resulting in a new command that is in a format compatible with the after-market CD player. The command is then stored in an output buffer for dispatching to the CD player.

Additionally, the present invention contains logic for retrieving information from an after-market audio device, and converting same into a format compatible with the car stereo for display thereby. Such logic can be applied to convert any data from the external device for display on the car stereo. For purposes of illustration, a sample code portion is shown in **Table 2**, below, for converting data from a CD changer into a format understandable by a BMW car stereo:

Table 2

```
;       ========================================
;       Changer replies with STOP confirmation
;       Encoding 180A68390002003F0001027D message
;       ========================================

Load_CD_stop_msg:
        movlw 0x18
        movwf BMW_Send_buff

        movlw 0x0A
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+1

        movlw 0x68
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+2

        movlw 0x39
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+3

        movlw 0x00              ;current status_XX=00, power off
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+4

        movlw 0x02              ;current status_YY=02, power off
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+5

        clrf  BMW_Send_buff+6         ;separate field, always =0

        movfw BMW_MM_stat       ;current   status_MM   ,   magazine
config
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+7

        clrf  BMW_Send_buff+8         ;separate field, always =0

        movfw BMW_DD_stat       ;current status_DD , current disc
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+9

        movfw BMW_TT_stat       ;current   status_TT   ,   current
track
        movwf BMW_Send_buff+10

        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+9,W ;calculate check sum
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+8,W
        xorwf BMW_Send_buff+7,W
```

```
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+6,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+5,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+4,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+3,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+2,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff+1,W
xorwf BMW_Send_buff,W

movwf BMW_Send_buff+11  ;store check sum
movlw D'12'             ;12 bytes total
movwf BMW_Send_cnt
bsf   BMW_Send_on       ;ready to send
return
```

The code portion shown in **Table 2** receives a STOP confirmation message from the CD player, in a format proprietary to the CD player. Preferably, the received command is stored in a first buffer, such as BMW_Send_buff. The procedure "Load_CD_stop_msg" retrieves status information, magazine information, current disc, and current track information from the CD changer, and constructs a response containing this information. Then, a checksum is calculated and stored in another buffer. The response and checksum are in a format compatible with the BMW stereo, and are ready for dispatching to the car stereo.

While the above code portions are shown using assembler language, it is to be expressly understood that any low or high level language known in the art, such as C or C++, could be utilized without departing from the spirit or scope of the invention. It will be appreciated that various other code portions can be developed for converting signals from any after-market or OEM car stereo for use by an after-market external audio device, and vice versa.

FIG. 5 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **300** for allowing a user to switch between an after-market audio device, and one or more auxiliary input sources. As was discussed earlier, the present invention allows a user to switch from one or more connected audio devices, such as an external CD player/changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, DAB receiver, or the like, and activate one or more auxiliary input sources. A selection sequence, initiated by the user at the control panel of the car stereo, allows such switching. Beginning in step **302**, the buttons of the control panel are monitored. In step **304**, a determination is made as to whether a "Track Up" button or sequence has been initiated by the user. The "Track Up" button or sequence can for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step **306** is invoked, wherein the sensed button or sequence is processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the external audio device for execution. Then, step **302** is re-invoked, so that additional buttons or sequences can be monitored.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step **304**, step **308** is invoked, wherein the present invention waits for a predetermined period of time while monitoring the control panel buttons for additional buttons or sequences. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the predetermined period of time is 750 milliseconds, but of course, other time durations are considered within the spirit and scope of the present invention. In step **310**, a determination is made as to whether the user has initiated a "Track Down" button or sequence at the control panel of the car stereo within the predetermined time period. The track down button or sequence can be for a CD player, MP3 player, or any other device. If a negative determination is made, step **312** is invoked. In step **312**, a determination is made as to whether a timeout has occurred (*e.g.*, whether the predetermined period of time has expired). If a negative determination is made, step **308** is re-invoked. Otherwise, is a positive determination is made, step **312** invokes step **306**, so that any buttons or key sequences initiated by the user that are not a "Track Down" command are processed in accordance with the present invention and dispatched to the audio device for execution.

In the event that a positive determination is made in step **310** (a "Track Down" button or sequence has been initiated within the predetermined time period), then step **314** is invoked. In step **314**, the audio channels of the audio device are disconnected, and then step **316** is invoked. In step **316**, the logic of block **198** of **FIG. 4d** (the auxiliary input handling process), discussed earlier, is invoked, so that the user can select from one of the auxiliary input sources in accordance with the present invention. Thus, at this point in time, the system has switched, under user control, from the audio device to a desired auxiliary input. Although the foregoing description of the process **300** has been described with reference to "Track Up" and "Track Down" buttons or commands initiated by the user, it is to be expressly understood that any desired key sequence, keystroke, button depress, or any other action, can be sensed in accordance with the present invention and utilized for switching modes.

When operating in auxiliary mode, the present invention provides an indication on the display of the car stereo corresponding to such mode. For example, the CD number could be displayed as "1", and the track number displayed as "99," thus indicating to the user that the system is operating in auxiliary mode and that audio and data is being supplied from an auxiliary input source. Of course, any other indication could be generated and displayed on the display of the car stereo, such as a graphical display (*e.g.*, an icon) or textual prompt.

FIG. 6 is a flowchart showing processing logic, indicated generally at **320**, for determining and handling various device types connected to the auxiliary input ports of the invention. The present invention can sense device types connected to the auxiliary input ports, and can integrate same with the car stereo using the procedures discussed earlier. Beginning in step **322**, the control panel buttons of the car stereo are monitored for a button or sequence initiated by the user corresponding to an auxiliary input selection (such as the disc number method discussed earlier with reference to **FIG. 4d**). In response to an auxiliary input selection, step **324** is invoked, wherein the type of device connected to the selected auxiliary input is sensed by the present invention. Then, step **326** is invoked.

In step **326**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a CD player/changer. If a positive determination is made, step **328** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **108** of **FIG. 4a** (the CD handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the CD player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **326**, then step **330** is invoked. In step **330**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is an MP3 player. If a positive determination is made, step 334 is invoked, wherein the logic of block **138** if **FIG. 4b** (the MP3 handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the MP3 player is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **330**, then step **336** is invoked. In step **336**, a determination is made as to whether the device connected to the auxiliary input is a satellite receiver or a DAB receiver. If a positive determination is made, step **338** is invoked, wherein the logic of block **168** of **FIG. 4c** (the satellite/DAB receiver handling process), discussed earlier, is executed, and the satellite receiver is integrated with the car stereo. If a negative determination is made in step **336**, step **322** is re-invoked, so that additional auxiliary input selections can be monitored and processed accordingly. Of course, process **320** can be expanded to allow other types of devices connected to the auxiliary inputs of the present invention to be integrated with the car stereo.

The present invention can be expanded for allowing video information generated by an external device to be integrated with the display of an existing OEM or after-market car stereo. In such a mode, the invention accepts RGB input signals from the external device, and converts same to composite signals. The composite signals are then forwarded to the car stereo for display thereby, such as on an LCD panel of the stereo. Further, information from the external device can be formatted and presented to the user in one or more graphical user interfaces or menus capable of being viewed and manipulated on the car stereo.

FIG. 7a is a perspective view of a docking station **400** according to the present invention for retaining an audio device within a car. Importantly, the present invention can be adapted to allow portable audio devices to be integrated with an existing car stereo. The docking station **400** allows such portable devices to be conveniently docked and integrated with the car stereo. The docking station **400** includes a top portion **402** hingedly connected at a rear portion **408** to a bottom portion **404**, preferably in a clam-like configuration. A portable audio device **410**, such as the SKYFI radio distributed by DELPHI, Inc., is physically and electrically connected with the docking portion **412**, and contained within the station **100**. A clasp **406** can be provided for holding the top and bottom portions in a closed position to retain the device **410**. Optionally, a video device could also be docked using the docking station **400**, and tabs **413** can be provided for holding the docking station **400** in place against a portion of a car. Conceivably, the docking station **400** could take any form, such as a sleeve-like device for receiving and retaining a portable audio device and having a docking portion for electrically and mechanically mating with the audio device.

FIG. 7b is an end view showing the rear portion **408** of the docking station **400** of **FIG. 7a**. A hinge **414** connects the top portion and the bottom portions of the docking station **400**. A data port **416** is provided for interfacing with the audio device docked within the station **400**, and is in electrical communication therewith. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the data port **416** is an RS-232 serial or

USB data port that allows for the transmission of data with the audio device, and which connects with the audio device integration system of the present invention for integrating the audio device with an OEM or after-market car stereo. Any known bus technology can be utilized to interface with any portable audio or video device contained within the docking station **400**, such as FIREWIRE, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB/USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or any other bus technology known in the art.

FIGS. 8a-8b are perspective views of another embodiment of the docking station of the present invention, indicated generally at **500**, which includes the audio device integration system of the present invention, indicated generally at **540**, incorporated therewith. As shown in **FIG. 8a**, the docking station **500** includes a base portion **530**, a bottom member **515** interconnected with the base portion **530** at an edge thereof, and a top member **510** hingedly interconnected at an edge to the base portion **530**. The top member **510** and the bottom member **515** define a cavity for docking and storing a portable audio device **520**, which could be a portable CD player, MP3 player, satellite (*e.g.*, XM, SIRIUS, or other type) tuner, or any other portable audio device. The docking station **500** would be configured to accommodate a specific device, such as an IPOD from Apple Computer, Inc., or any other portable device.

The audio device integration system **540**, in the form of a circuit board, is housed within the base portion **530** and performs the integration functions discussed herein for integrating the portable audio device **520** with an existing car stereo. The integration system **540** is in communication with the portable audio device **520** via a connector **550**, which is connected to a port on the audio device **520**, and a cable **555** interconnected between the connector **550** and the integration system **540**. The connector **550** could be any suitable connector and can vary according to the device type. For example, a MOLEX, USB, or any other connector could be used, depending on the portable device. The integration system **540** is electrically connected with a car stereo by cable **560**. Alternatively, the integration system could wirelessly communicate with the car stereo. A transmitter could be used at the integration system to communicate with a receiver at the car stereo. Where automobiles include Bluetooth systems, such systems can be used to communicate with the integration system. As can be readily appreciated, the docking station **500** provides a convenient device for docking, storing, and integrating a portable audio device for use with a car stereo. Further, the docking station **500** could be positioned at any desired location within a vehicle, including, but not limited to, the vehicle trunk.

As shown in **FIG. 8b**, the top member **510** can be opened in the general direction indicated by arrow **A** to allow for access to the portable audio device **520**. In this fashion, the device **520** can be quickly accessed for any desired purpose, such as for inserting and removing the device **520** from the docking station **500**, as well as for providing access to the controls of the device **520**.

FIG. 9 is a block diagram showing the components of the docking station of **FIGS. 8a-8b**. The docking station **500** houses both a portable audio device **520** and an audio device integration system (or interface) **540**. The shape and configuration of the docking station **500** can be varied as desired without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

The integration system of the present invention provides for control of a portable audio device, or other device, through the controls of the car stereo system. As such, controls on the steering wheel, where present, may also be used to control the portable audio device or other device.

Having thus described the invention in detail, it is to be understood that the foregoing description is not intended to limit the spirit and scope thereof.

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. An audio device integration system comprising:

a car stereo;

an audio device external to the car stereo;

an interface connected between the car stereo and the audio device for exchanging data and audio signals between the car stereo and the audio device;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling the audio device from the car stereo in a format compatible with the audio device; and

means for processing and displaying data from the audio device on a display of the car stereo in a format compatible with the car stereo.

2. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the car stereo is an OEM car stereo.

3. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the car stereo is an after-market car stereo.

4. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the audio device comprises a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receiver, or satellite receiver.

5. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the interface further comprises a plug-and-play mode for automatically detecting a device type of the audio device and integrating the audio device based upon the device type.

6. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the interface generates a CD player presence signal for maintaining the car stereo in a state responsive to processed data and audio signals.

7. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data comprises track and time information.

8. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data comprises song title and artist information.

9. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data comprises channel number and channel name information.

10. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data comprises video information.

11. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data is displayed as a menu on the display of the car stereo.

12. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the data is displayed in a graphical interface on a graphic panel.

13. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the commands are input by a user using one or more control buttons or presets on the car stereo.

14. The apparatus of claim 1, further comprising one or more auxiliary input sources connected to the interface.

15. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein audio signals from the one or more auxiliary input sources are selectively channeled to the car stereo by the interface.

16. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select between the one or more auxiliary input sources by depressing keys on the car stereo.

17. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select one of the auxiliary input sources by entering a disc number at the car stereo.

18. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select one of the auxiliary input sources by entering a track number at the car stereo.

19. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select one of the auxiliary input sources by entering both disc and track numbers at the car stereo.

20. The apparatus of claim 14, wherein a user can select between the audio device and the one or more auxiliary input sources by entering a sequence at the car stereo.

21. The apparatus of claim 20, wherein the sequence comprises a track up selection followed by a track down selection.

22. The apparatus of claim 1, further comprising a second interface connected to the first interface for providing a plurality of auxiliary input sources.

23. The apparatus of claim 22, wherein both the first interface and the second interface are controllable using the car stereo.

24. An audio device integration system comprising:

a car stereo;

a plurality of auxiliary input sources;

an interface connected between the car stereo and the plurality of auxiliary input sources;

means for processing and dispatching commands for controlling an audio device connected to one of the plurality of auxiliary input sources from the car stereo in a format compatible with the audio device;

means for processing and displaying data from the audio device on a display of the car stereo in a format compatible with the car stereo; and means for selecting one of the plurality of auxiliary input sources from the car stereo.

25. The apparatus of claim 24, wherein the means for selecting one of the plurality of auxiliary input sources comprises a disc or track selection entered by a user using control buttons of the car stereo.

26. The apparatus of claim 24, wherein the audio device comprises a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, or DAB receiver.

27. The apparatus of claim 24, wherein a device type of the audio device is automatically detected by the interface and the audio device is automatically integrated with the car stereo based upon the device type.

28. The apparatus of claim 24, wherein the interface is switchable into an auxiliary input mode by issuing a control sequence at the car stereo.

29. The apparatus of claim 28, wherein the control sequence comprises a track up command followed by a track down command.

30. A method for integrating a device with a car stereo comprising:

connecting an interface to the car stereo and the device to the interface;

receiving control commands from the car stereo at the interface;

processing the control commands into a format compatible with the device and dispatching processed control commands to the device;

receiving data and audio from the device at the interface;

processing the data into a second format compatible with the car stereo and dispatching the audio and processed data to the car stereo; and

displaying the processed data on the car stereo and playing the audio through the car stereo.

31. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of receiving data from the device comprises retrieving CD track and time information from the device.

32. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of receiving data from the device comprises retrieving MP3 song, title, track, and time information from the device.

33. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of receiving data from the device comprises retrieving channel number, channel name, artist, and song information from the device.

34. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of receiving data from the device comprises retrieving video information from the device.

35. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of displaying the processed data comprises displaying the data in an LCD panel.

36. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of displaying the processed data comprises displaying the data in a graphical user interface at the car stereo.

37. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of displaying processed data comprises displaying video at the car stereo.

38. The method of claim 30, wherein the step of connecting the audio device to the interface comprises connecting a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, satellite receiver, or DAB receiver to the interface.

39. The method of claim 30, further comprising connecting an auxiliary input source to the interface.

40. The method of claim 39, further comprising receiving a selection command from the car stereo and channeling data and audio from the auxiliary input source to the interface in response to the selection command.

41. The method of claim 40, further comprising processing the data from the auxiliary input source for display on the car stereo.

42. An apparatus for docking a portable device for integration with a car stereo comprising:

a top member interconnected with a bottom member and defining a storage area for storing the portable device;

a docking portion within the storage area for electrically communicating and physically mating with the portable device; and

a data port disposed on the top member or the bottom member and in electrical communication with the docking portion, the data port connectable with a device for integrating the portable device with the car stereo.

43. The apparatus of claim 42, further comprising a hinge for connecting the top member and bottom member at an edge thereof.

44. The apparatus of claim 42, wherein the data port comprises an RS-232 or USB port.

45. The apparatus of claim 42, wherein the top portion and the bottom portion define a sleeve for holding the portable audio device.

46. The apparatus of claim 42, further comprising a clasp for retaining the top and bottom members in a closed position.

47. A method of integrating an after-market device with an OEM or after-market car stereo comprising:

connecting the after-market device to an interface;

connecting the interface to a car stereo;

determining whether the car stereo is an OEM car stereo or an after-market car stereo;

if the car stereo is an after-market car stereo, generating and transmitting a presence signal to the car stereo to maintain the car stereo in an operational state responsive to external signals; and

selectively channeling data and audio signals from the after-market device to the car stereo using the interface.

48. The method of claim 47, further comprising receiving control commands from the car stereo at the interface.

49. The method of claim 48, further comprising converting the control commands into a format recognizable by the after-market audio device.

50. The method of claim 49, further comprising dispatching formatted commands to the after-market audio device for execution thereby.

51. The method of claim 47, further comprising converting data received at the interface from the after-market audio device into a format compatible with the car stereo.

52. The method of claim 51, further comprising displaying formatted data on the car stereo.

53. The method of claim 52, wherein the step of displaying formatted data comprises displaying channel numbers, channel names, titles, tracks, song names, or artist names on the car stereo.

54. The method of claim 52, wherein the step of displaying formatted data comprises displaying video on the car stereo.

55. A docking station for docking and integrating a portable audio device for use with a car stereo, comprising:

a base portion;

a bottom member connected to the base portion;

a top member connected to the base portion, the base portion, bottom member, and top member defining a cavity for receiving a portable device; and

an integration device positioned within the base portion for integrating the portable device with a car stereo.

56. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the top member is hingedly connected at an edge to the base portion.

57. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the base portion comprises a connector for connecting the integration device with the portable device.

58. The apparatus of claim 55, further comprising a cable interconnected at one end to the integration device and at an opposite end to the car stereo.

59. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the integration device is wirelessly connected to the car stereo.

60. The apparatus of claim 59, wherein the integration device is connected to the car stereo by a Bluetooth wireless connection.

61. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the portable device comprises a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receiver, or satellite receiver.

62. The apparatus of claim 61, wherein the satellite tuner comprises an XM or SIRIUS satellite tuner.

63. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the integration device comprises a circuit board housed in the base portion.

64. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the apparatus is mountable in a vehicle trunk.

65. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the top member is pivotable away from the bottom member to allow access to the portable device.

66. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the integration device is connected to the car stereo using a Firewire, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB, USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or serial connection.

67. The apparatus of claim 55, wherein the car stereo is an OEM or after-market car stereo.

68. The apparatus of claim 55, further comprising one or more auxiliary input ports connected to the integration device for integrating additional portable devices external to the docking station.

69. A method for docking and integrating a portable audio device for use with a car stereo, comprising:

providing a docking station having a base portion, a bottom member connected to the base portion, a top member connected to the base portion, and an integration device housed within the base portion;

inserting a portable device into the docking station and connecting the portable device to a connector on the base portion; and

integrating the portable device with the integration device for use with a car stereo.

70. The method of claim 69, further comprising opening the top member away from the bottom member prior to inserting the portable device into the docking station.

71. The method of claim 69, further comprising closing the top member to retain the portable device in the docking station.

72. The method of claim 69, further comprising interconnecting the integration device with the car stereo with a cable.

73. The method of claim 69, further comprising establishing a wireless connection between the integration device and the car stereo.

74. The method of claim 73 further comprising establishing a Bluetooth wireless connection between the integration device and the car stereo.

75. The method of claim 69, further comprising integrating a CD player, CD changer, MP3 player, Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) receiver, or satellite receiver with the car stereo.

76. The method of claim 69, further comprising integrating an XM or SIRIUS satellite tuner with the car stereo.

77. The method of claim 69, further comprising mounting the docking station in a vehicle trunk.

78. The method of claim 69, further comprising connecting the integration device to the car stereo using a Firewire, D2B, MOST, CAN, USB, USB2, IE Bus, T Bus, I Bus, or serial connection.

79. The method of claim 69, further comprising integrating the portable device with an after-market or OEM car stereo.

80. The method of claim 69, further comprising connecting an external portable device to an auxiliary input port on the docking station and integrating the external portable device with the car stereo.

1/23

FIG. 1

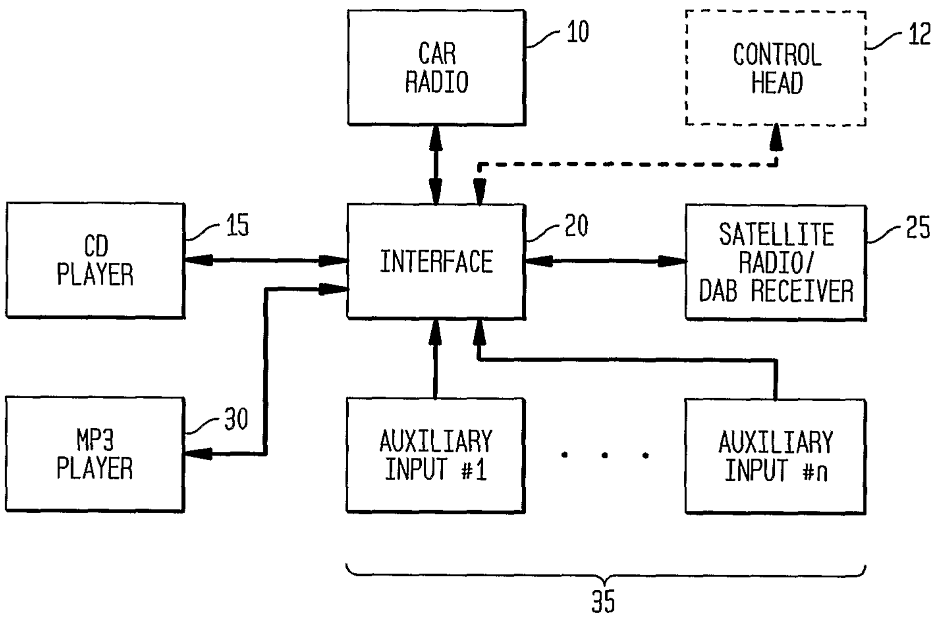
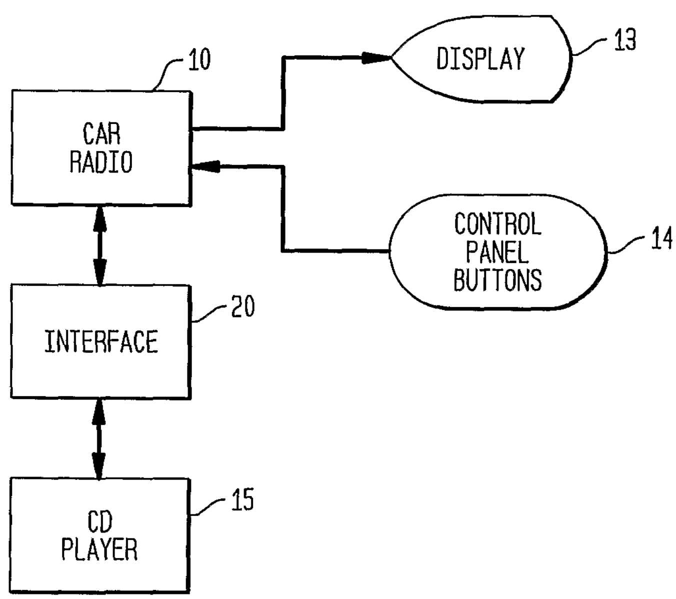


FIG. 2A



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 2B

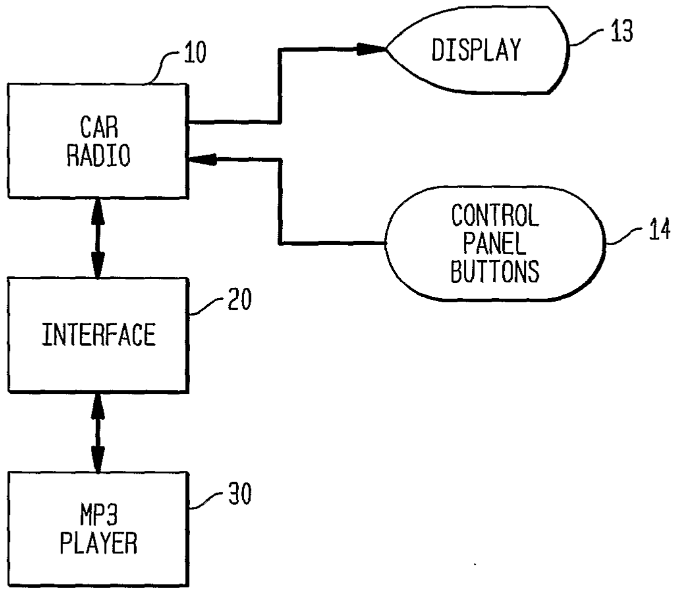

CAR
RADIO
10
DISPLAY
13
CONTROL
PANEL
BUTTONS
14
INTERFACE
20
MP3
PLAYER
30

FIG. 2C

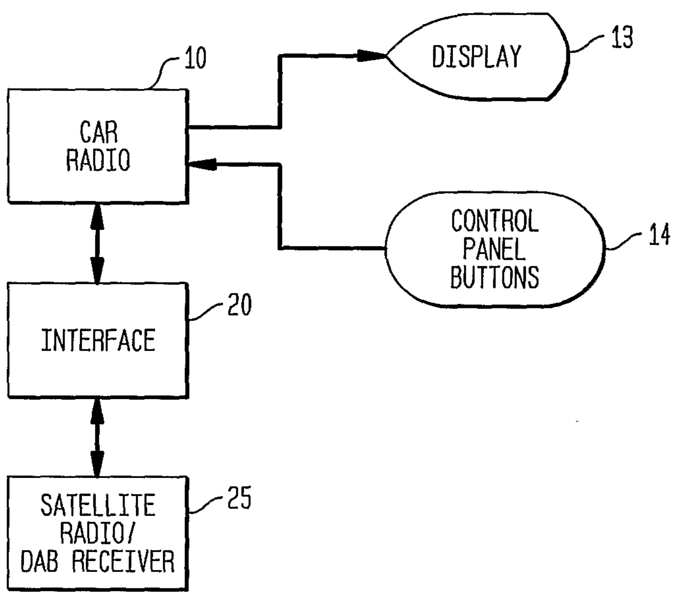

CAR
RADIO
10
DISPLAY
13
CONTROL
PANEL
BUTTONS
14
INTERFACE
20
SATELLITE
RADIO/
DAB RECEIVER
25

FIG. 2D

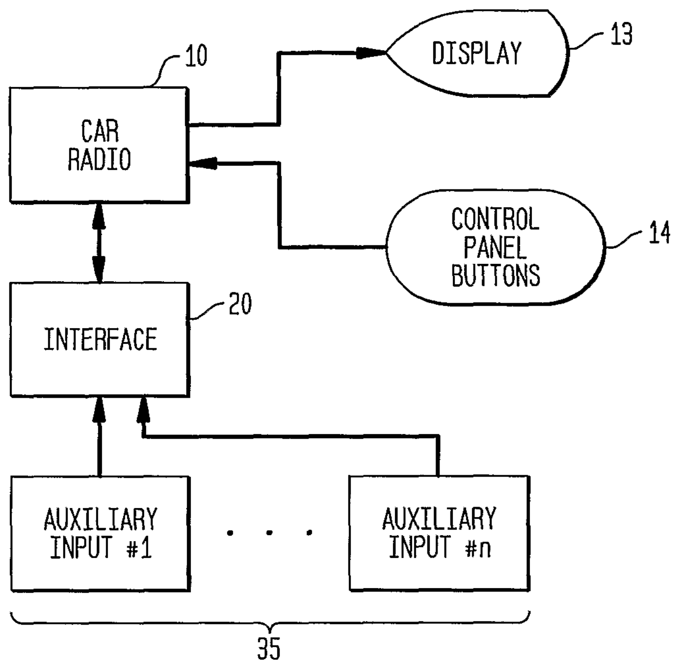
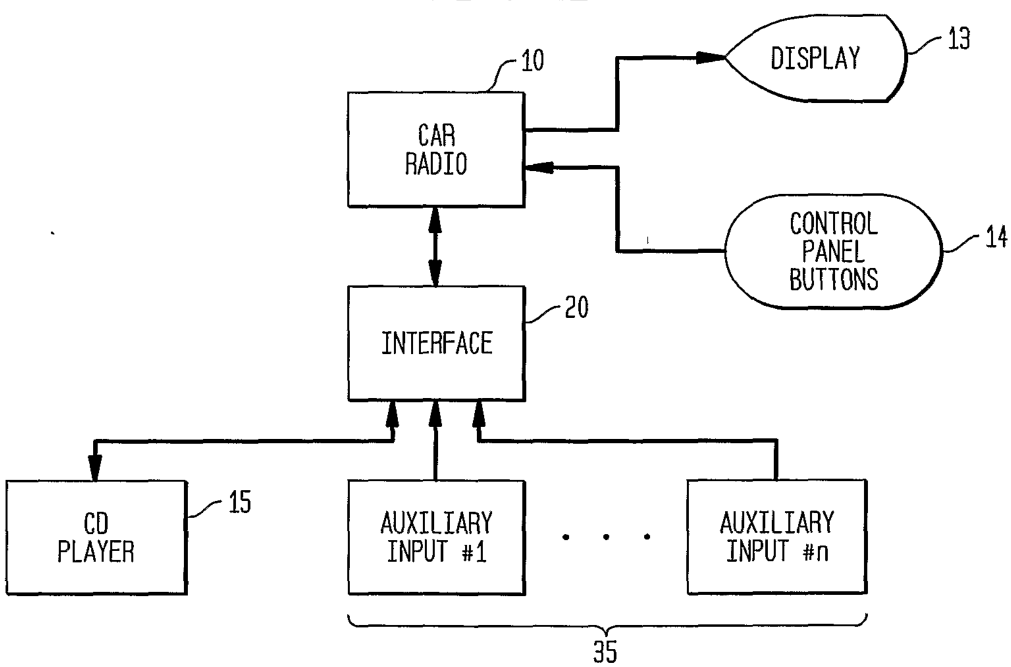


FIG. 2E



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 2F

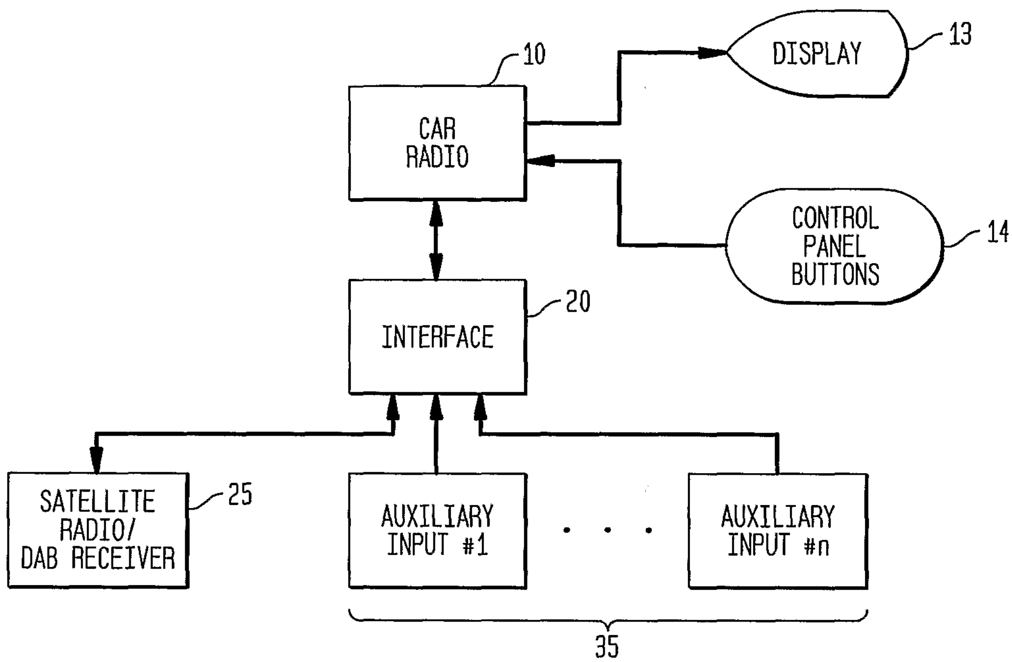

CAR
RADIO
10
DISPLAY
13
CONTROL
PANEL
BUTTONS
14
INTERFACE
20
SATELLITE
RADIO/
DAB RECEIVER
25
AUXILIARY
INPUT #1
. . .
AUXILIARY
INPUT #n
35

FIG. 2G

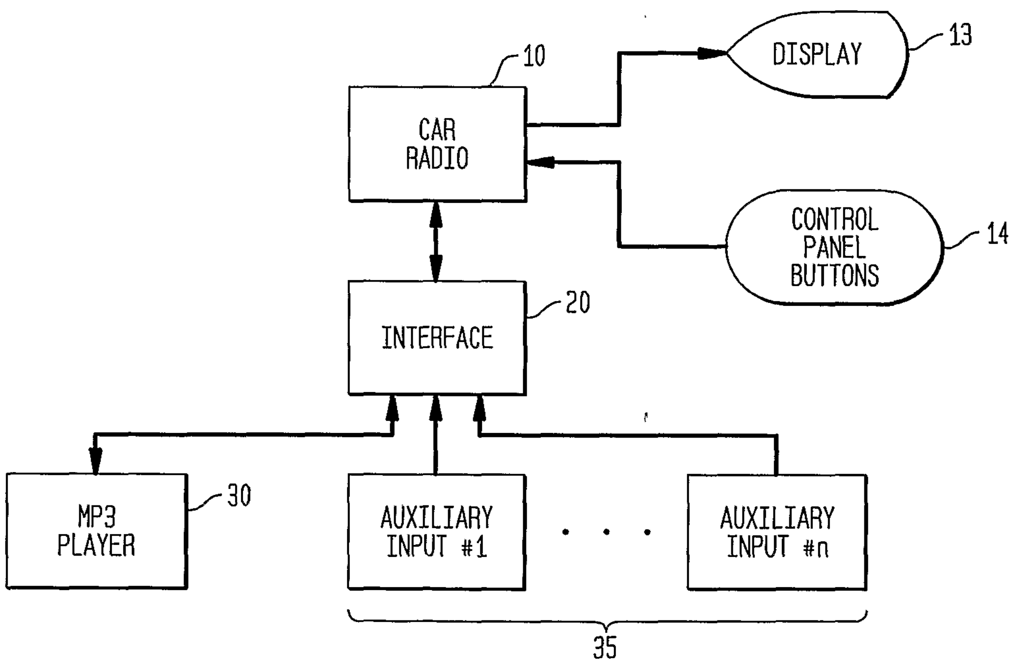

CAR
RADIO
10
DISPLAY
13
CONTROL
PANEL
BUTTONS
14
INTERFACE
20
MP3
PLAYER
30
AUXILIARY
INPUT #1
. . .
AUXILIARY
INPUT #n
35

FIG. 2H

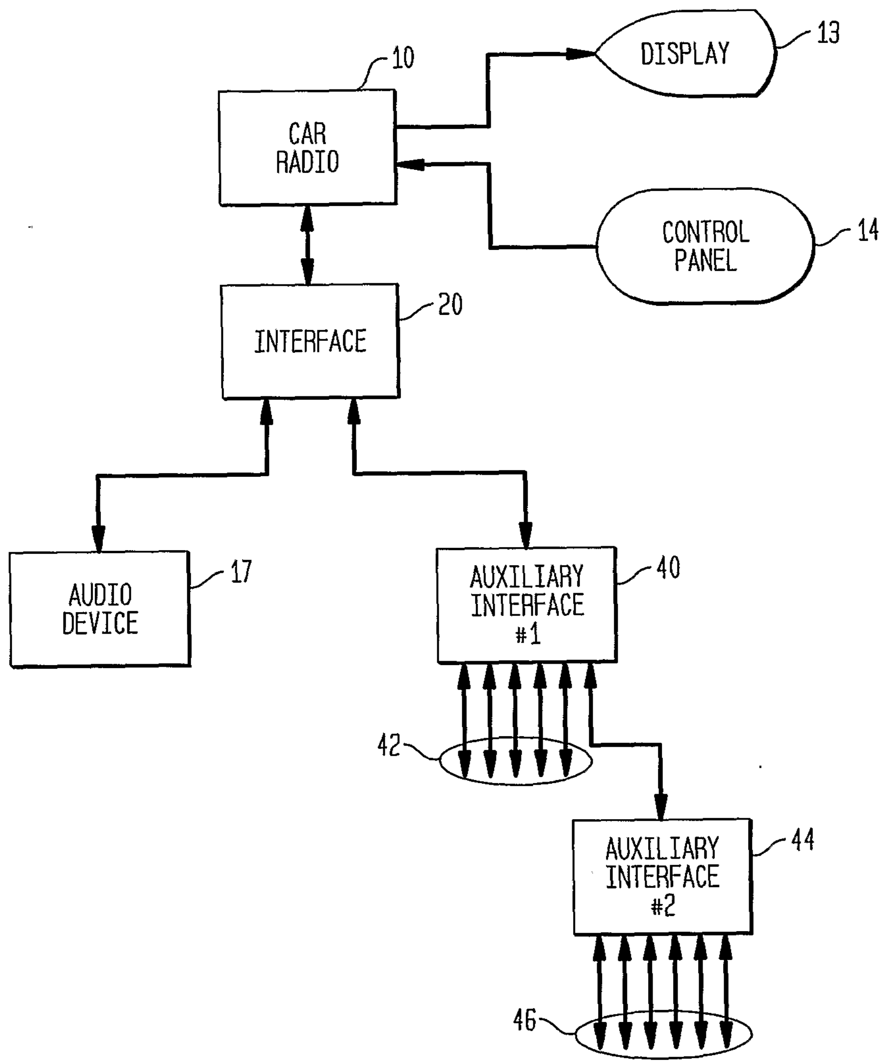

10
CAR RADIO
DISPLAY
13
CONTROL PANEL
14
INTERFACE
20
AUDIO DEVICE
17
AUXILIARY INTERFACE #1
40
42
AUXILIARY INTERFACE #2
44
46

FIG. 3A

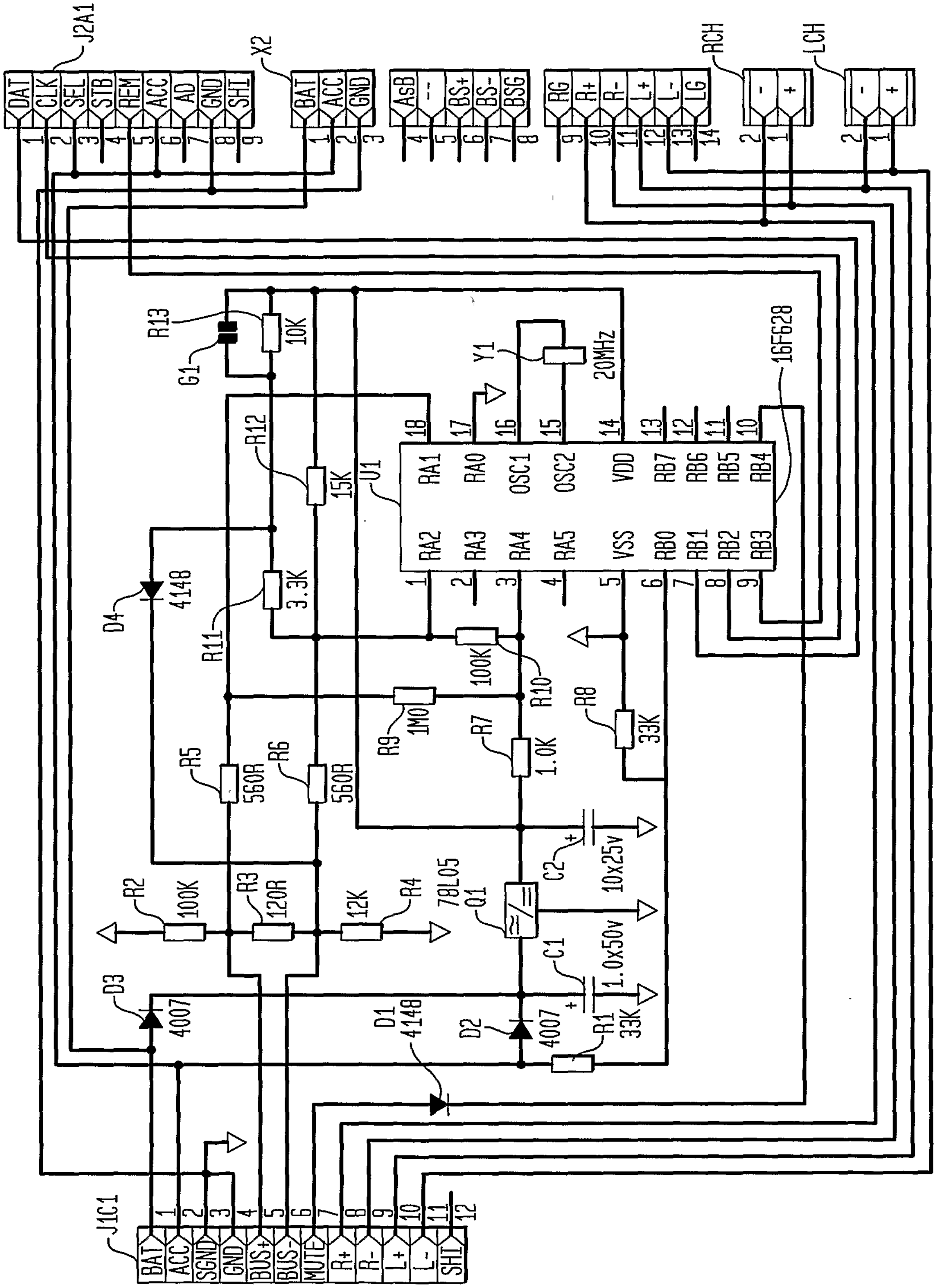
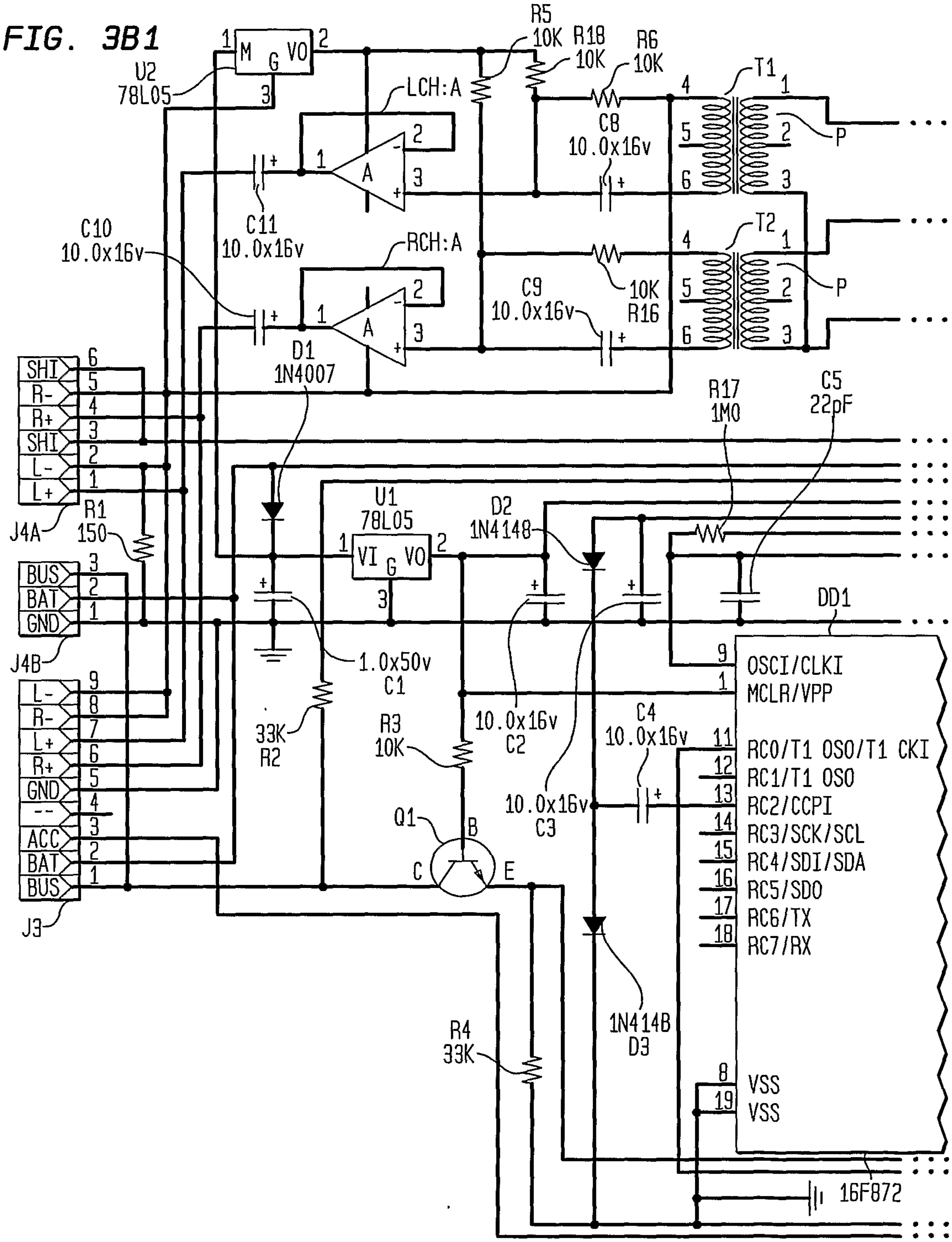
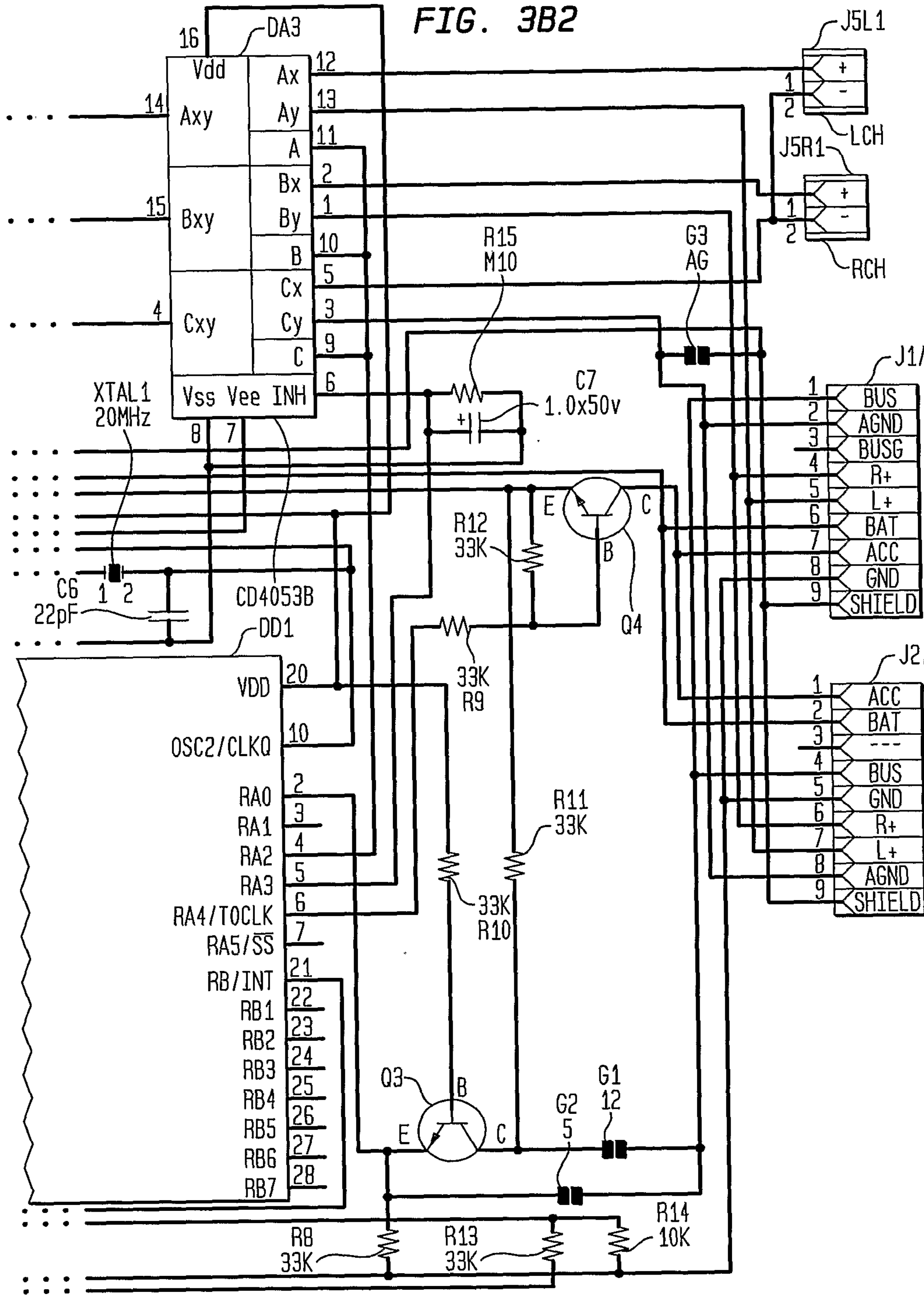

J2A1
DAT
CLK
SEL
STB
REM
ACC
AD
GND
SHI
X2
BAT
ACC
GND
AsB
--
BS+
BS-
BSG
RG
R+
R-
L+
L-
LG
RCH
LCH
R13
G1
10K
R12
15K
U1
RA1
RA0
OSC1
OSC2
VDD
RB7
RB6
RB5
RB4
RA2
RA3
RA4
RA5
VSS
RB0
RB1
RB2
RB3
16F628
Y1
20MHz
D4
4148
R11
3.3K
100K
R10
R8
33K
R9
1M0
R7
1.0K
R5
560R
R6
560R
C2
10x25v
78L05
Q1
R2
100K
R3
120R
12K
R4
C1
1.0x50v
D3
4007
D1
4148
D2
4007
R1
33K
J1C1
BAT
ACC
SGND
GND
BUS+
BUS-
MUTE
R+
R-
L+
L-
SHI

FIG. 3B1



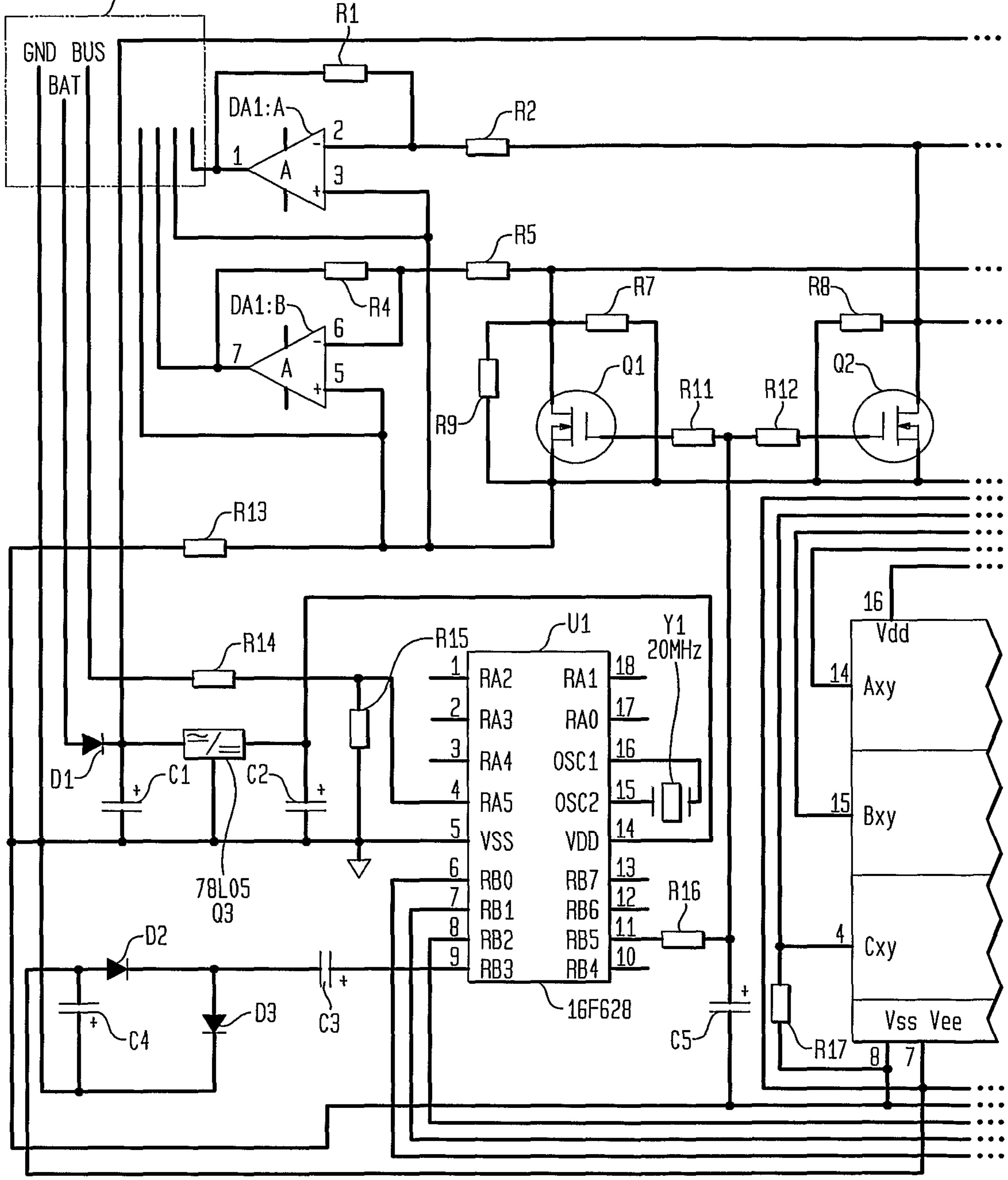
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 3B2



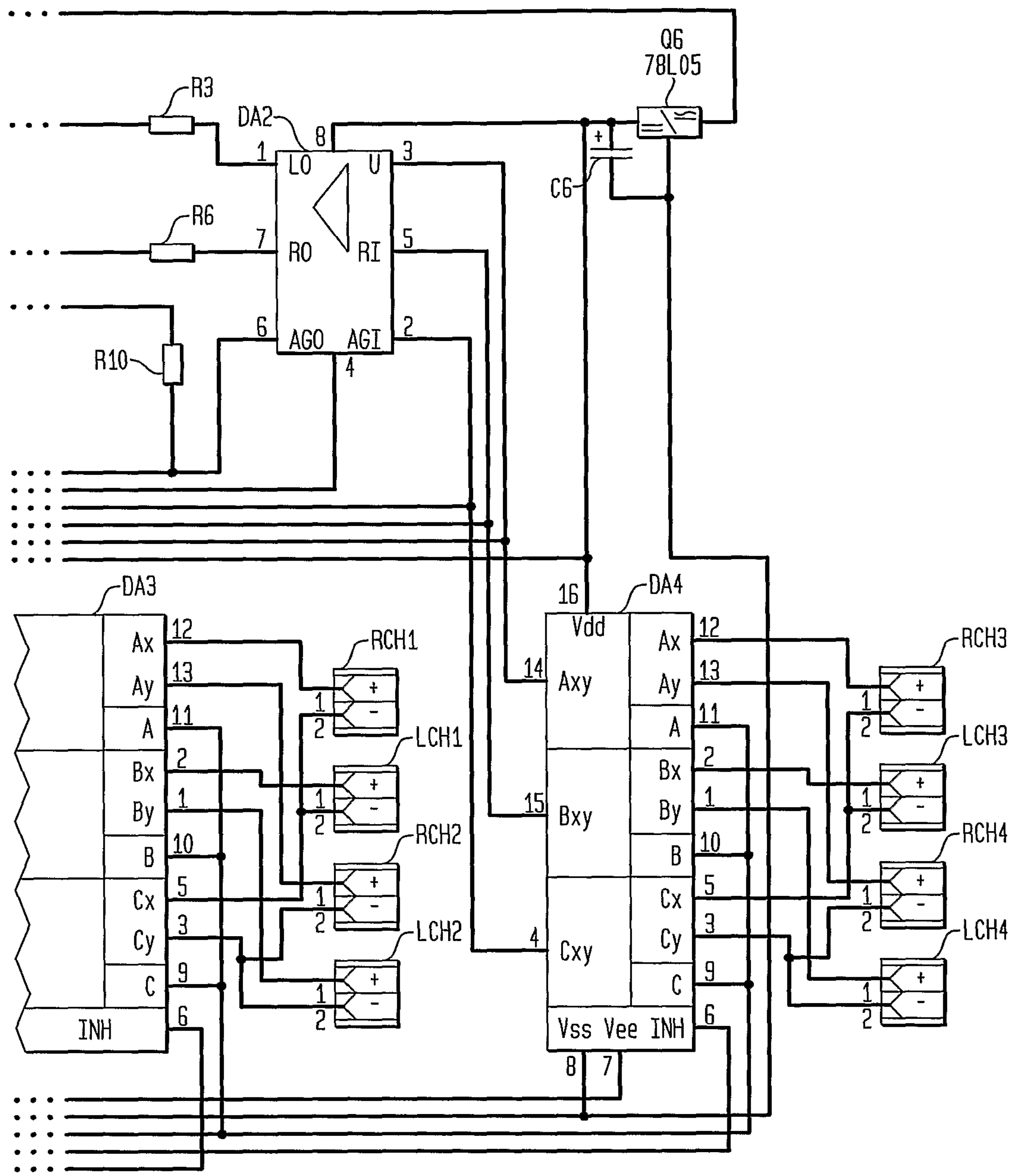
SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 3C1



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

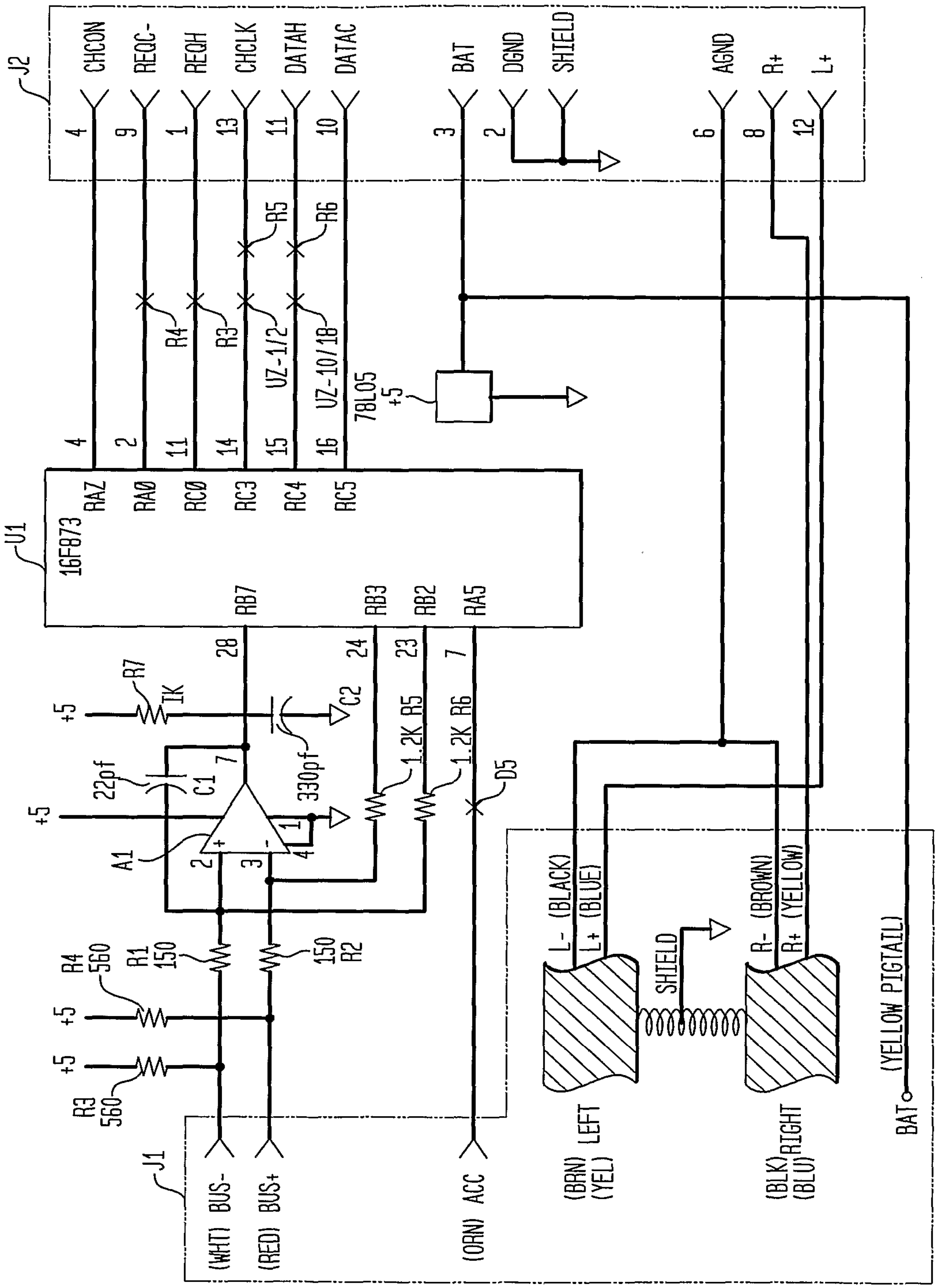
FIG. 3C2



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

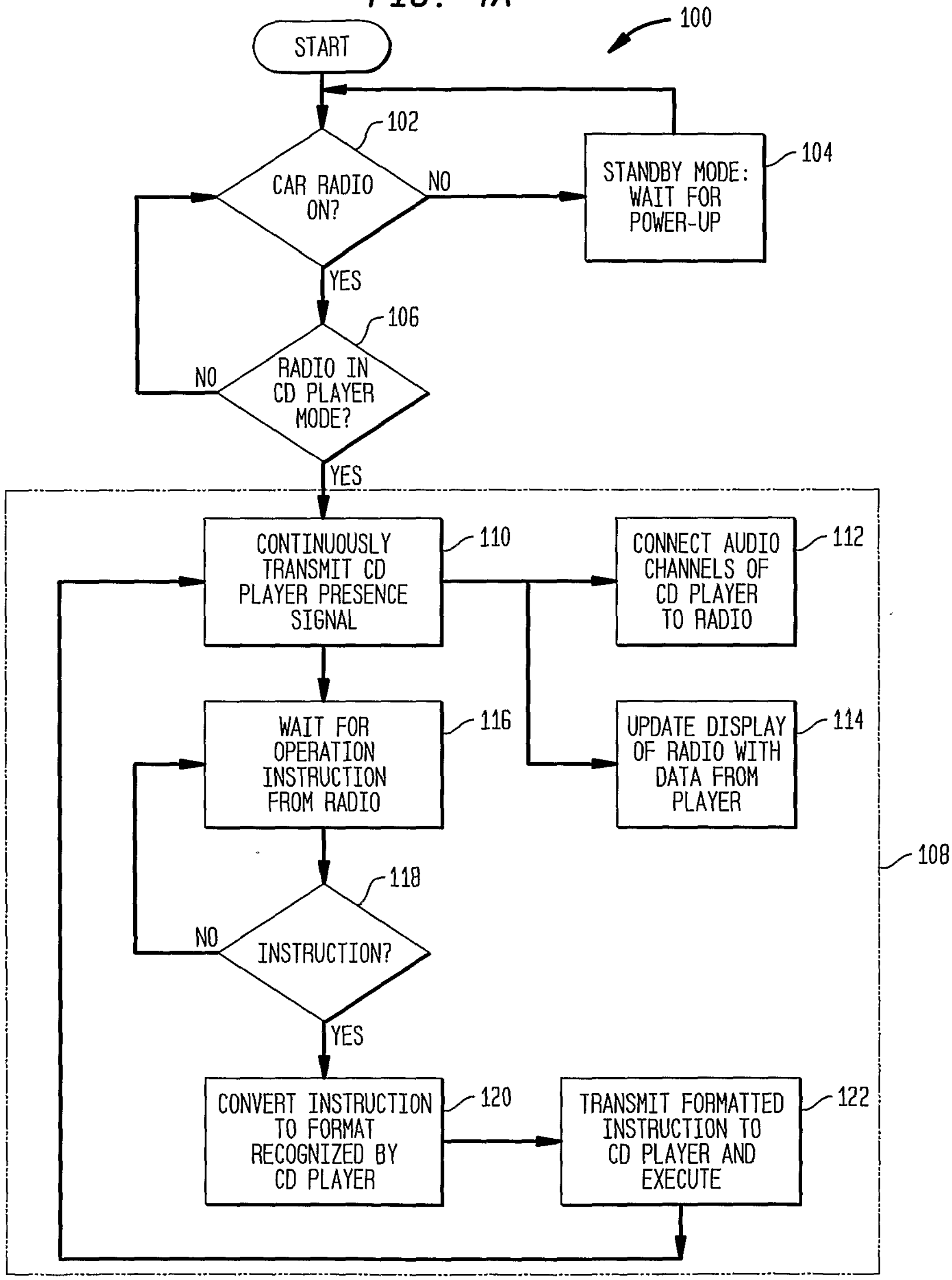
11/23

FIG. 3D



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 4A



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 4B

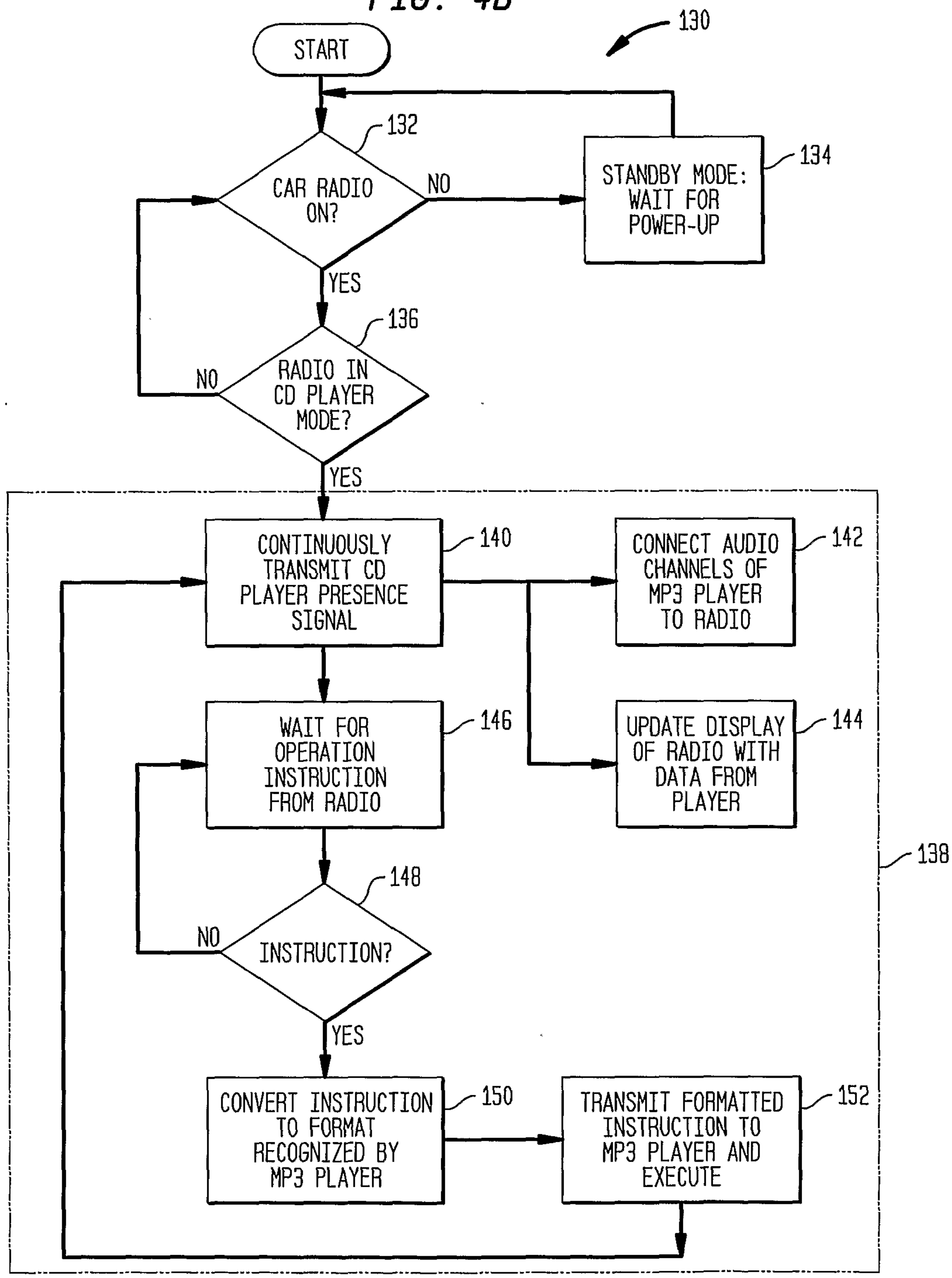

130
START
132
CAR RADIO ON?
NO
STANDBY MODE: WAIT FOR POWER-UP
134
YES
136
RADIO IN CD PLAYER MODE?
NO
YES
CONTINUOUSLY TRANSMIT CD PLAYER PRESENCE SIGNAL
140
CONNECT AUDIO CHANNELS OF MP3 PLAYER TO RADIO
142
WAIT FOR OPERATION INSTRUCTION FROM RADIO
146
UPDATE DISPLAY OF RADIO WITH DATA FROM PLAYER
144
138
148
NO
INSTRUCTION?
YES
CONVERT INSTRUCTION TO FORMAT RECOGNIZED BY MP3 PLAYER
150
TRANSMIT FORMATTED INSTRUCTION TO MP3 PLAYER AND EXECUTE
152

FIG. 4C

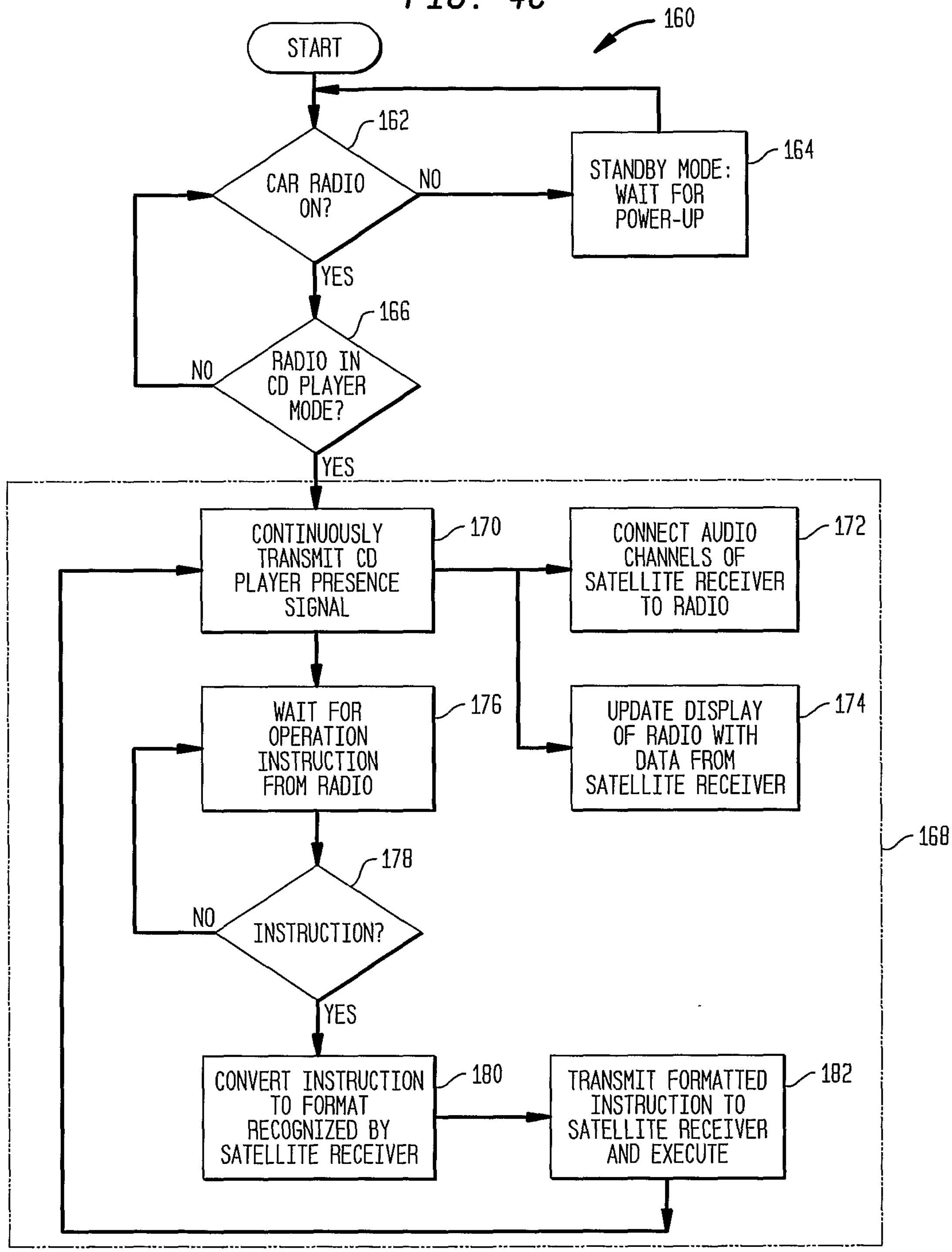
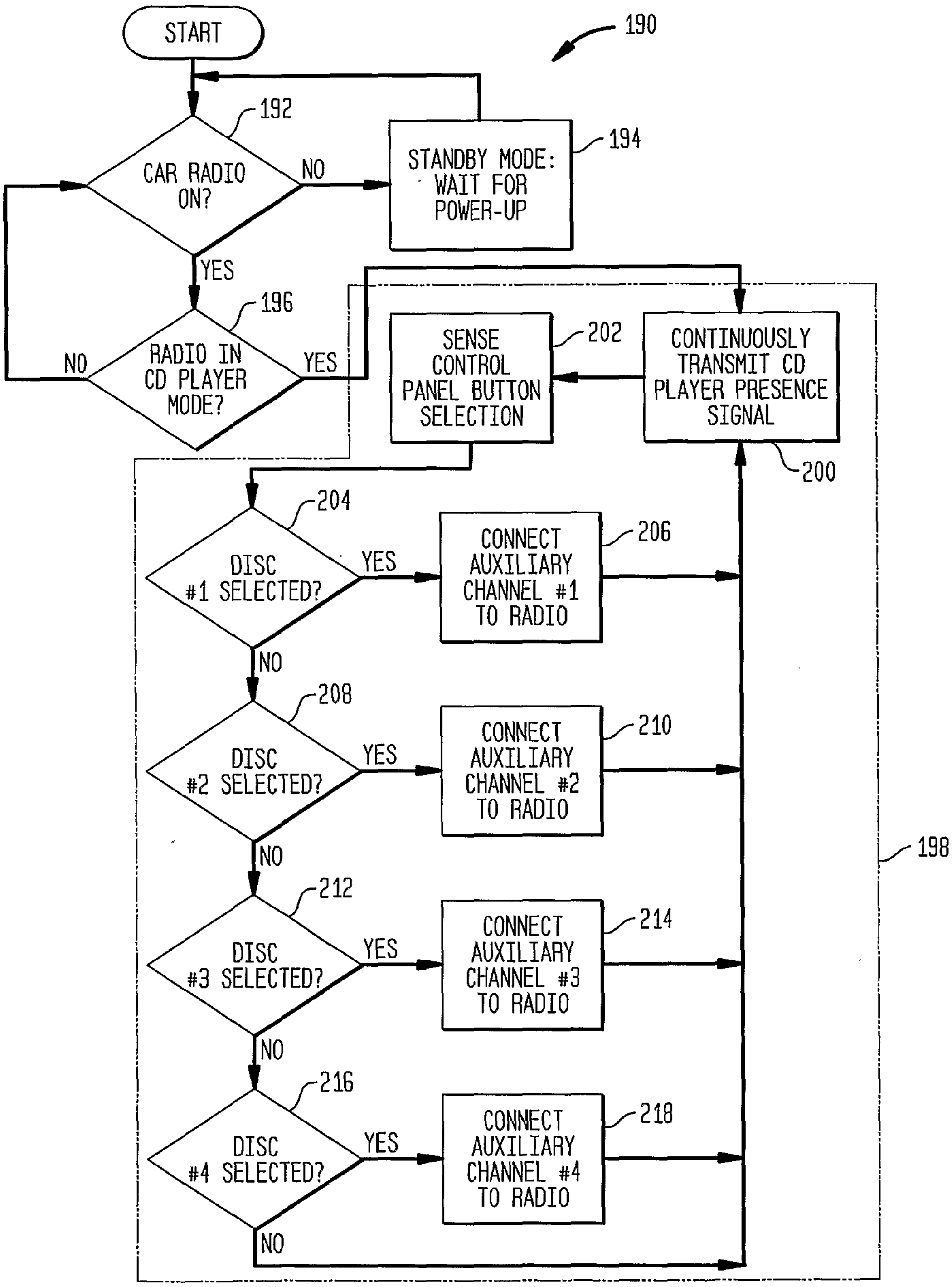
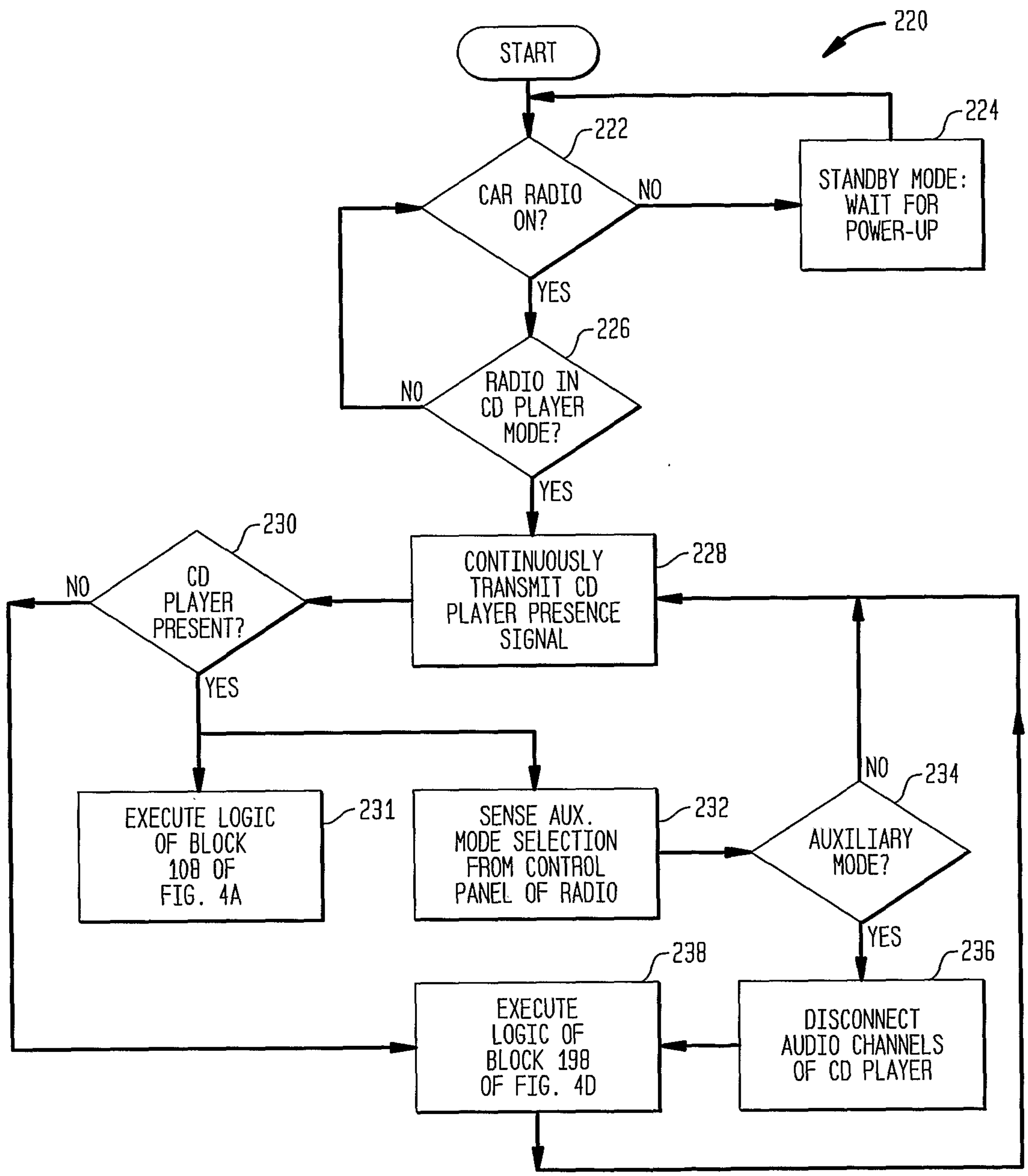

160
START
162
CAR RADIO ON?
NO
STANDBY MODE: WAIT FOR POWER-UP
164
YES
166
RADIO IN CD PLAYER MODE?
NO
YES
CONTINUOUSLY TRANSMIT CD PLAYER PRESENCE SIGNAL
170
CONNECT AUDIO CHANNELS OF SATELLITE RECEIVER TO RADIO
172
WAIT FOR OPERATION INSTRUCTION FROM RADIO
176
UPDATE DISPLAY OF RADIO WITH DATA FROM SATELLITE RECEIVER
174
168
178
INSTRUCTION?
NO
YES
CONVERT INSTRUCTION TO FORMAT RECOGNIZED BY SATELLITE RECEIVER
180
TRANSMIT FORMATTED INSTRUCTION TO SATELLITE RECEIVER AND EXECUTE
182

FIG. 4D



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 4E



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 4F

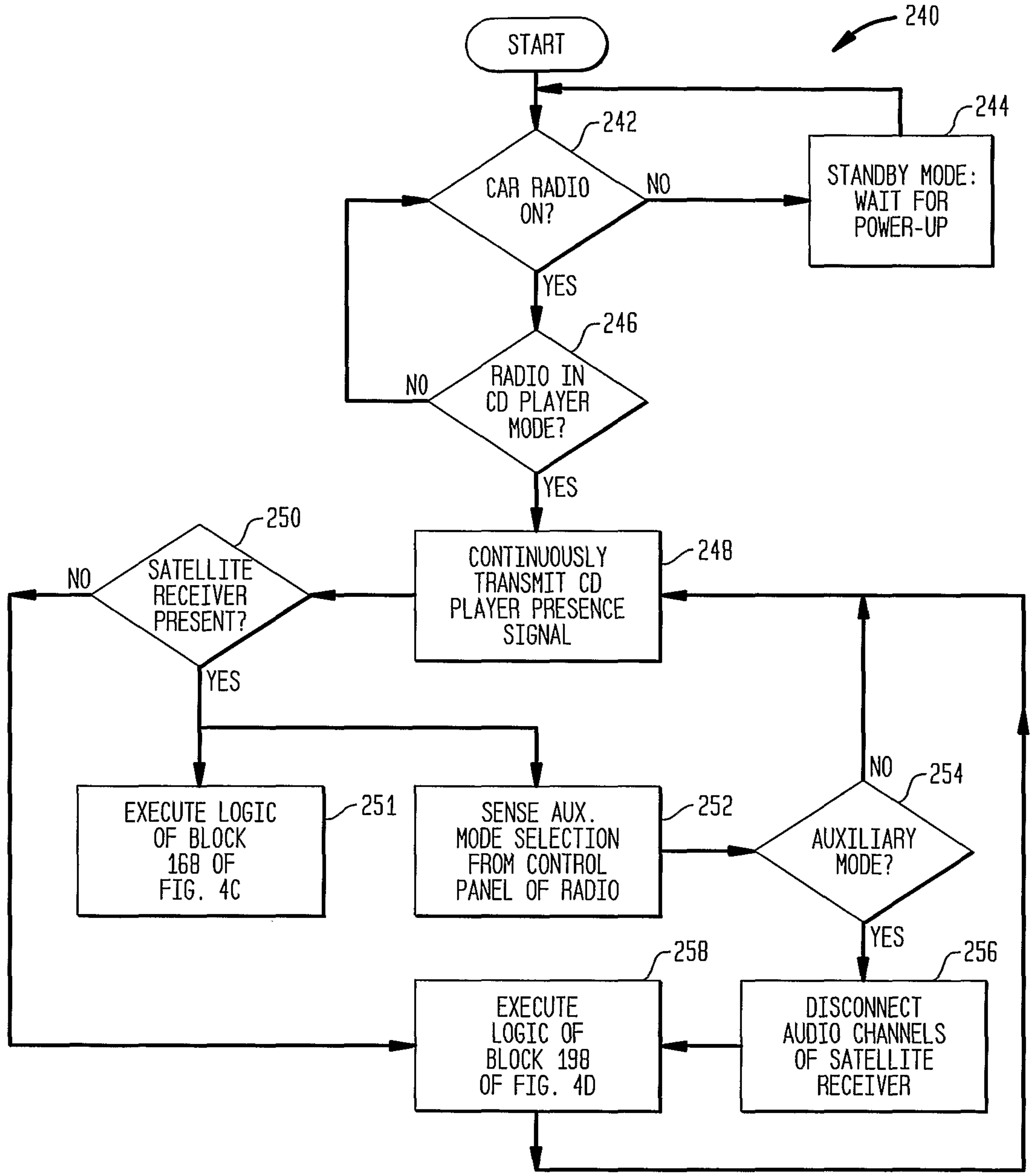
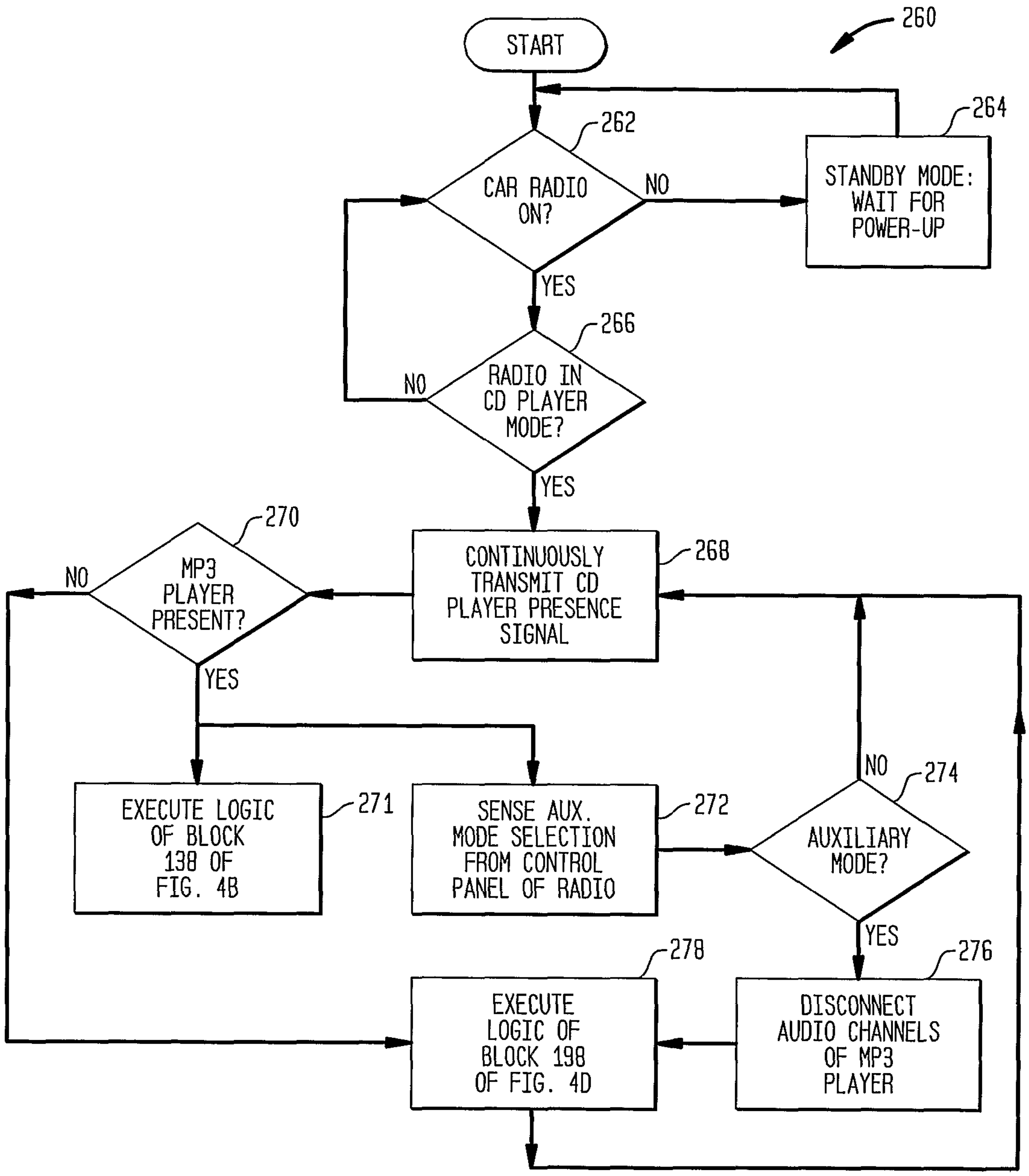

240
START
242
CAR RADIO ON?
NO
244
STANDBY MODE: WAIT FOR POWER-UP
YES
246
RADIO IN CD PLAYER MODE?
NO
YES
250
SATELLITE RECEIVER PRESENT?
NO
248
CONTINUOUSLY TRANSMIT CD PLAYER PRESENCE SIGNAL
YES
EXECUTE LOGIC OF BLOCK 168 OF FIG. 4C
251
SENSE AUX. MODE SELECTION FROM CONTROL PANEL OF RADIO
252
NO
254
AUXILIARY MODE?
YES
258
256
EXECUTE LOGIC OF BLOCK 198 OF FIG. 4D
DISCONNECT AUDIO CHANNELS OF SATELLITE RECEIVER

FIG. 4G



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 5

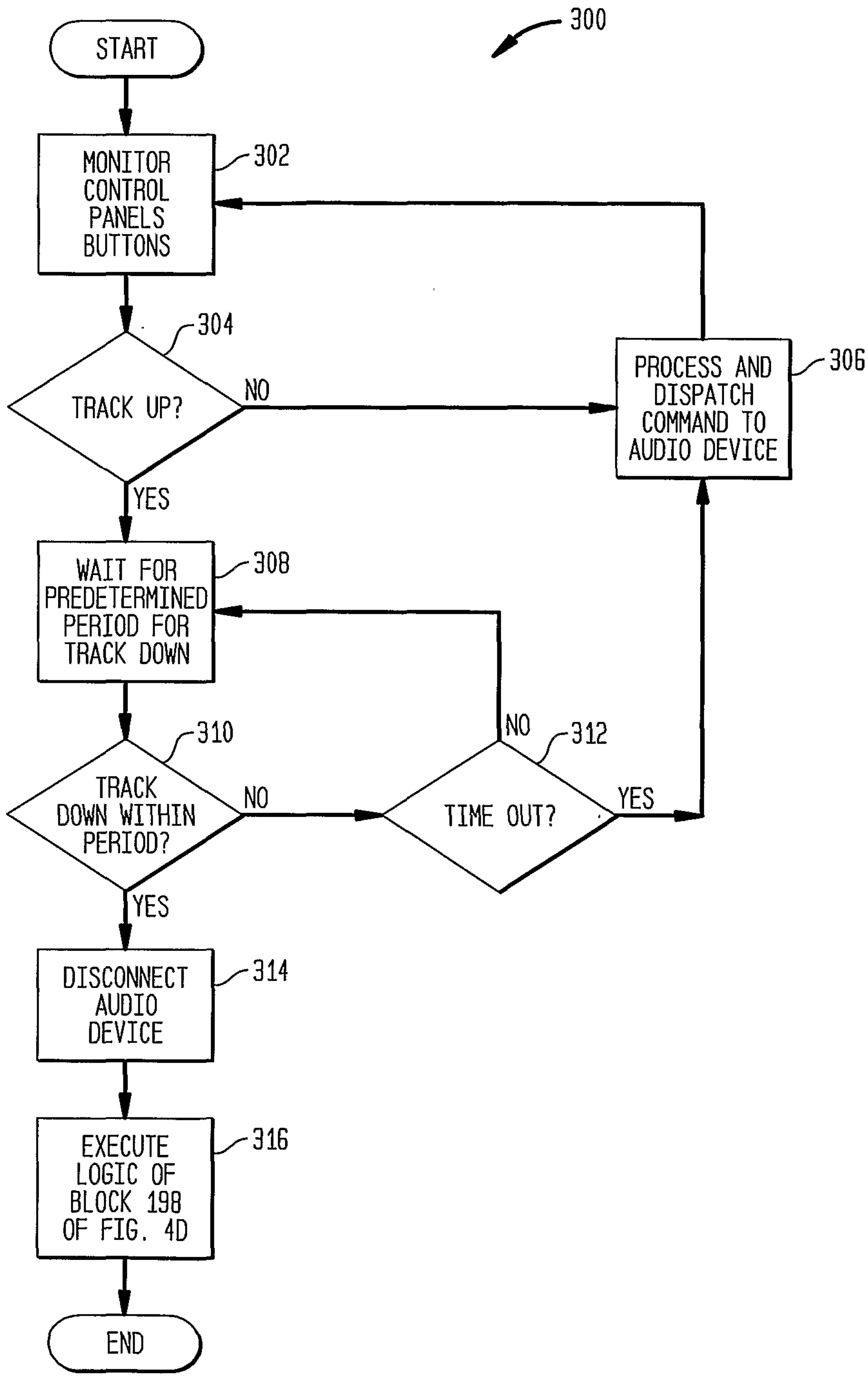
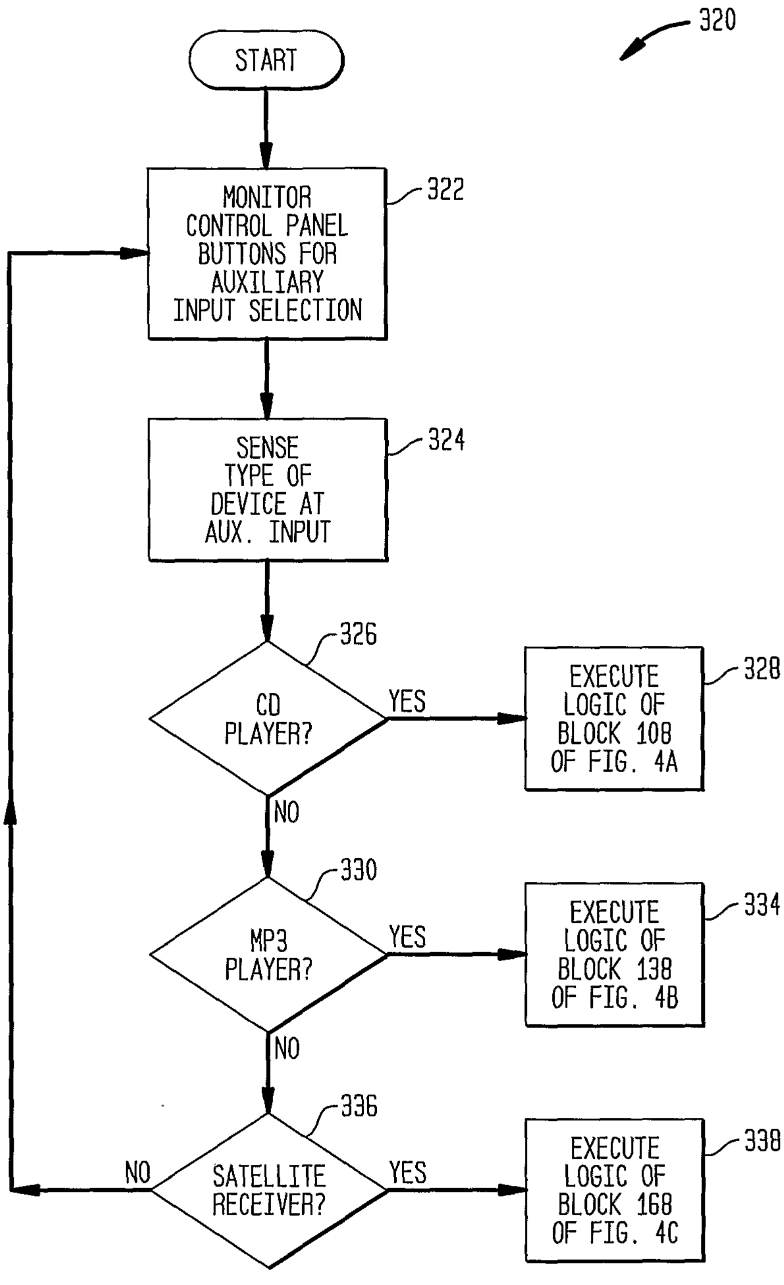

300
START
MONITOR CONTROL PANELS BUTTONS
302
TRACK UP?
304
NO
YES
PROCESS AND DISPATCH COMMAND TO AUDIO DEVICE
306
WAIT FOR PREDETERMINED PERIOD FOR TRACK DOWN
308
TRACK DOWN WITHIN PERIOD?
310
NO
TIME OUT?
312
NO
YES
YES
DISCONNECT AUDIO DEVICE
314
EXECUTE LOGIC OF BLOCK 198 OF FIG. 4D
316
END

FIG. 6



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 7A

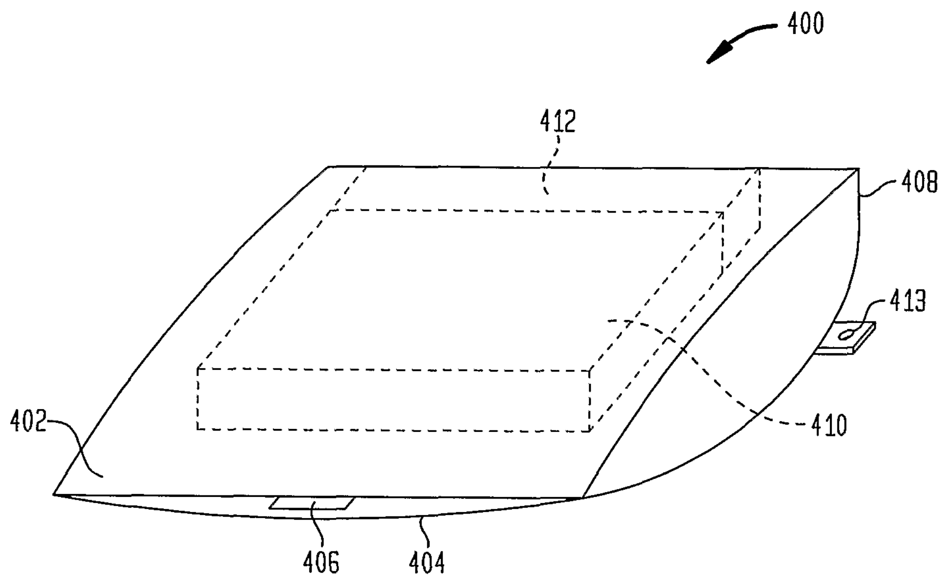
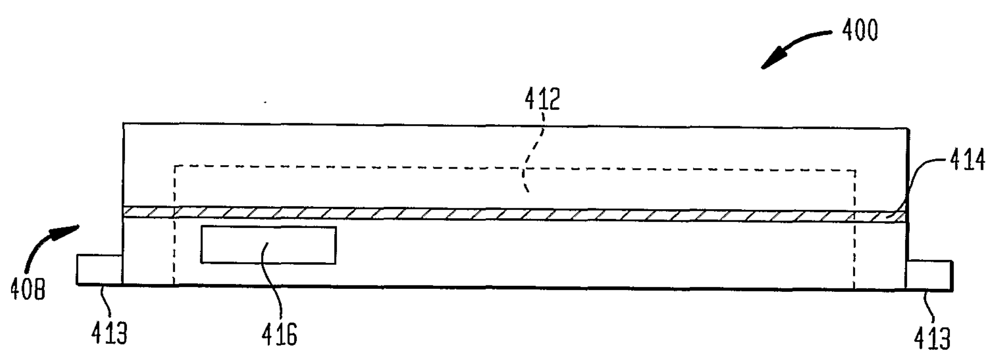
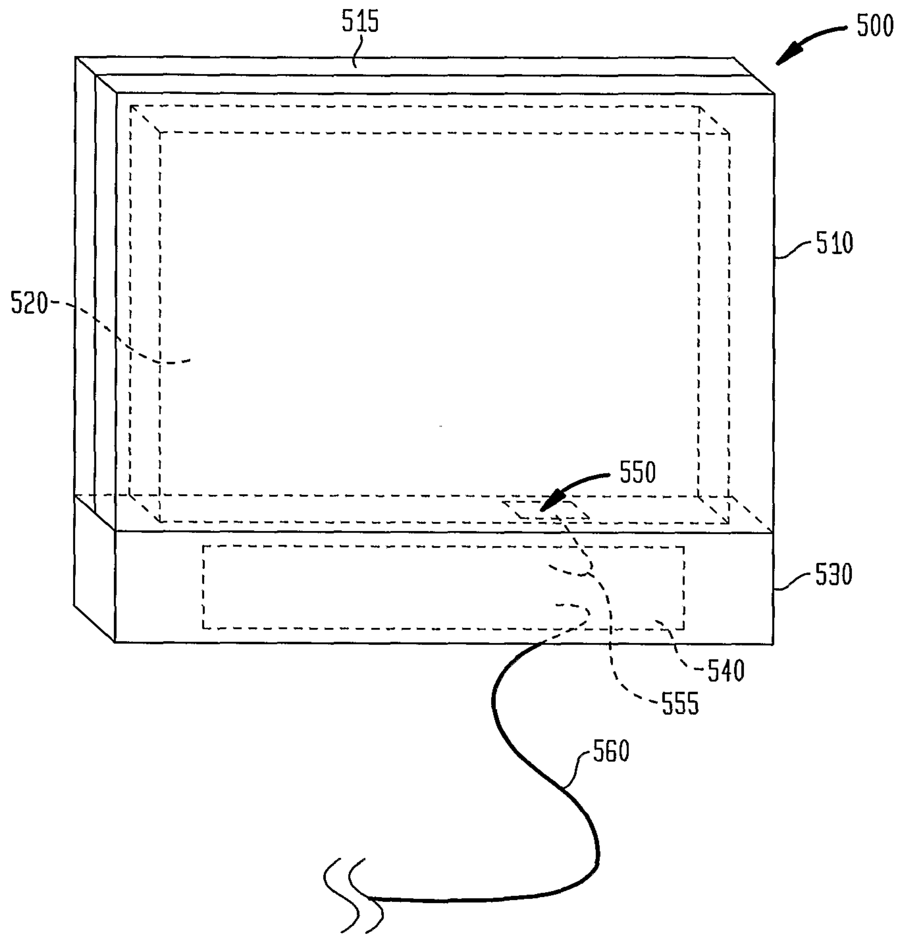


FIG. 7B



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 8A



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 8B

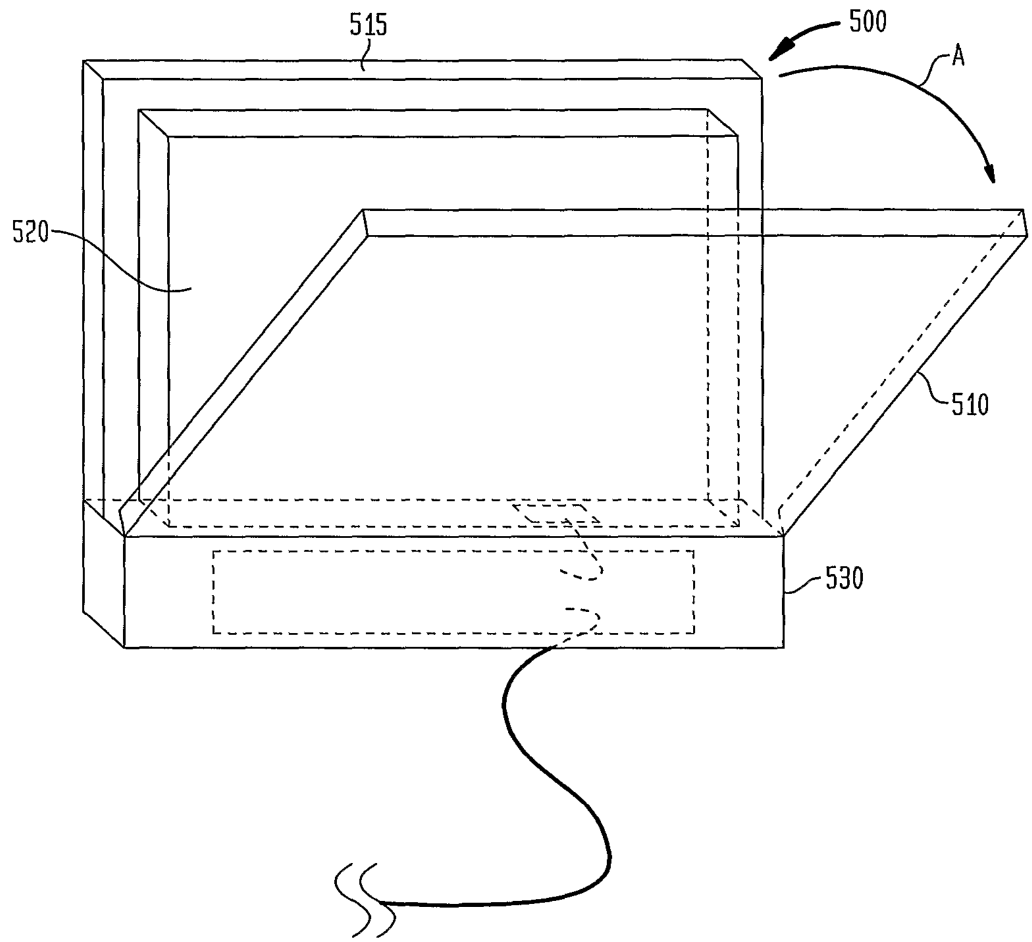
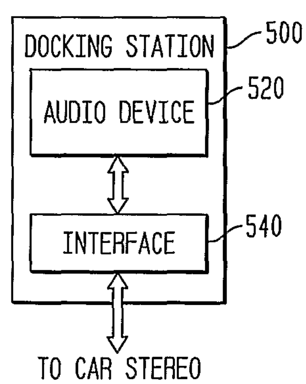

515
500
A
520
510
530

FIG. 9


DOCKING STATION
500
AUDIO DEVICE
520
INTERFACE
540
TO CAR STEREO

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US03/39493

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC(7) : G06F 17/00; H04B 1/00, 3/00;
US CL : 700/94; 381/86, 77
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
U.S. : 700/94; 381/86, 77; 455/346,347; D14/434

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)
Databases available through EAST (USPAT, US-PGPUB, EPO, JPO, DERWENT)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X --- Y	US 6,396,164 B1 (BARNEA ET AL) 28 May 2002 (28.05.2002), see entire document.	1,2,5,11-21,24-25,27-30,35-36,39-41 ----------- 3,4,6-10,22-23,26,31-34,37-38,42-80
Y, P	US 2003/0007649 A1 (RIGGS) 09 January 2003 (09.01.2003), paragraphs 0037-0040 and 0092-0099.	4,26,38,48-50,57,64, 67,73-76, 79
Y	US 6,157,725 A (BECKER) 05 December 2000 (05.12.2000), col. 4, lines 41-58; col. 6, lines 6-46; col 8, line 20-col. 10, line 58.	3,4,6,9-10,26,34-38,44,47-54,61-62,64,66-67,72,75-79
Y	US 5,339,362 A (HARRIS) 16 August 1994 (16.08.1994), col. 3, line 25-col. 4, line 61 and Figures 2,3.	42-46,55-80
Y	US 2001/0044664 A1 (MUELLER et al) 22 November 2001 (22.11.2001), paragraphs 0020-0028,0034-0035.	4,7-12,26,31-38,51-54,61-67,75-76
Y	US 6,330,337 B1 (NICHOLSON) 11 December 2001 (11.12.2001), Figure 2 and col. 3, line 32-col. 4,1 line 28.	22-23,68,80

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier application or patent published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
07 April 2004 (07.04.2004)	12 MAY 2004

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US	Authorized officer
Mail Stop PCT, Attn: ISA/US Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230	Bill Isen Eugenia Logan Telephone No. 703-305-3900

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1998)

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

PCT/US03/39493

C. (Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 4,772,079 A (DOUGLAS et al) 20 September 1988 (20.09.1988), col. 3, lines 25-64.	42-46,55-80

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1998)

(19) KOREAN INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY OFFICE

KOREAN PATENT ABSTRACTS

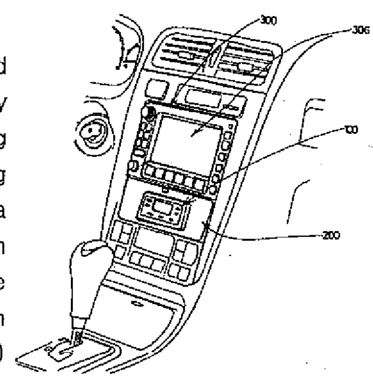
(11)Publication number: 1020010035788 A
(43)Date of publication of application: 07.05.2001

(21)Application number: 1019990042524
(22)Date of filing: 02.10.1999
(30)Priority: ..
(51)Int. Cl G11B 20/10

(71)Applicant: PARK, GYU JIN
(72)Inventor: PARK, GYU JIN

(54) CAR DIGITAL COMBINATION SYSTEM

(57) Abstract:



PURPOSE: A car digital combination system is provided to enhance performance of a car A/V system by permitting a digital data each genre, such as a learning data, a car repair guide, a data for so called singing room realization, and so on which are processed in a caption player by organically coupling a digital caption player to a car A/V system, to be displayed on a large size screen for a car A/V system or a car navigation system. CONSTITUTION: A digital caption player(100) downloads various digital data including a caption synchronized with a digital audio, reproduce the digital data, and digital-records a voice inputted from the outside. A docking station(200) accommodates the digital caption player(100) to fix it on a front face panel of a car and connects a digital caption character output signal and an audio output signal and a control signal for function selection/control from the digital caption layer(100) to a car A/V system(300). The car A/V system(300) receives digital data of the digital caption player (100) inputted through the docking station(200) and outputs the audio and caption data to display devices for a speaker and a monitor, respectively. The digital caption player(100) and the car A/V system(300) having a display device(306) of a large size screen are arranged in the vicinity of centerpesia of the car. The digital caption player(100) is organically coupled to the car A/V system(300) through the docking station(200) for holding the digital caption player(100). The car A/V system(300) may include a car navigation.

Legal Status
Date of request for an examination (19991002)
Notification date of refusal decision (00000000)

Final disposal of an application (rejection)
Date of final disposal of an application (20020621)
Patent registration number ( )
Date of registration (00000000)
Number of opposition against the grant of a patent ( )
Date of opposition against the grant of a patent (00000000)
Number of trial against decision to refuse ( )
Date of requesting trial against decision to refuse ( )

KOREAN PATENT ABSTRACTS XML 2(1-2)

Save

Please Click here to view the drawing

Korean FullDoc. English Fulltext

(19) KOREAN INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY OFFICE

KOREAN PATENT ABSTRACTS

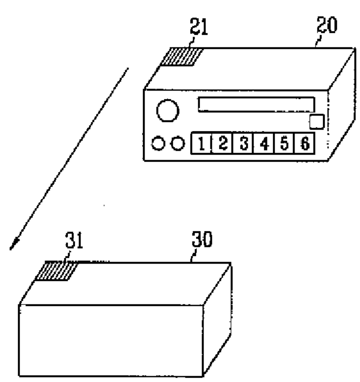
(11)Publication number: 1020010059192 A
(43)Date of publication of application: 06.07.2001

(21)Application number: 1019990066582
(22)Date of filing: 30.12.1999
(30)Priority: ..
(51)Int. Cl G11B 17/02

(71)Applicant: HYUNDAI MOTOR COMPANY
(72)Inventor: LEE, JAE GWANG

(54) COMPACT DISK CHANGER OPERATING SYSTEM

(57) Abstract:



PURPOSE: A compact disk changer operating system is provided to reduce inconvenience caused by installing a cable and a cost by deleting DIN cable. CONSTITUTION: An audio head unit(20) is installed in a vehicle and has a wireless transmitting apparatus to be able to transmit by a wireless. A CD changer(30) has a wireless receiving apparatus receives a signal from the wireless transmitting apparatus and is made an operating control by the audio head unit(20). The wireless transmitting apparatus of the audio head unit(20) is composed of an infrared emitting diode(21). The wireless receiving apparatus of the CD changer(30) is composed of a photo diode(31). The infrared emitting diode(21) and the photo diode(31) are just only one example of practice and is not restricted by practice example if only transmission and reception can be possible by the wireless. In the same manner installation position of the infrared emitting diode(21) and the photo diode(31) also are not limited to a special position.

(19)日本国特許庁（ＪＰ）　(12) 公開特許公報（Ａ）　(11)特許出願公開番号
特開2000－286874
（P2000－286874A）
(43)公開日　平成12年10月13日(2000.10.13)

(51)Int.Cl.⁷	識別記号	ＦＩ		テーマコード゛(参考)
Ｈ０４Ｌ　12/40		Ｈ０４Ｌ　11/00	３２０	３Ｄ０２０
Ｂ６０Ｒ　11/02		Ｂ６０Ｒ　11/02	Ｂ	５Ｋ０３２
Ｈ０４Ｌ　12/28		Ｈ０４Ｌ　11/00	３１０Ｚ	５Ｋ０３３

審査請求　未請求　請求項の数5　ＯＬ　（全 6 頁）

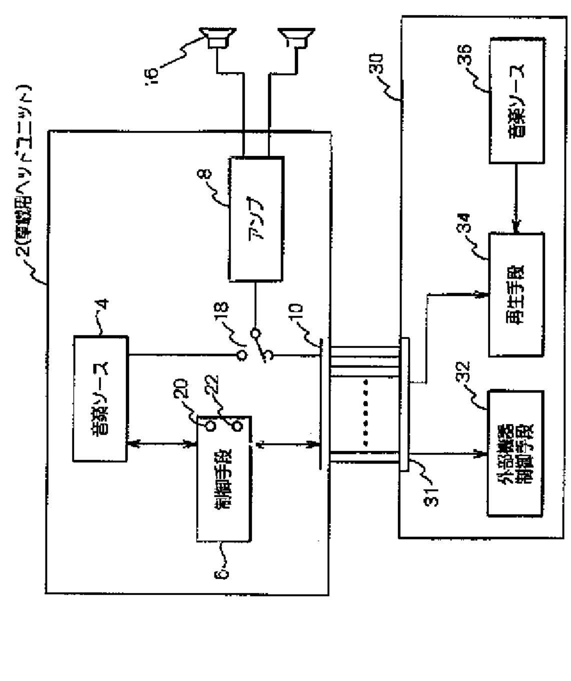
(21)出願番号　特願平11－90570
(22)出願日　平成11年３月31日(1999.3.31)

(71)出願人　000002082
スズキ株式会社
静岡県浜松市高塚町300番地
(72)発明者　植村　宏
静岡県浜松市高塚町300番地　スズキ株式会社内
(74)代理人　100079164
弁理士　高橋　勇

Ｆターム(参考)　3D020 BA02 BA05 BA09 BA10 BA13 BB01 BC03 BE03
5K032 BA06 BA08 DB03 DB04
5K033 BA06 BA08 DB03 DB04

(54)【発明の名称】　車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器

(57)【要約】
【課題】　車載用オーディオの外部機器を低コストでかつ利用しやすいものとすること。
【解決手段】　内部音楽ソース４からの音声信号を増幅するアンプ８と、外部機器を接続する外部機器コネクタ１０と、この外部機器コネクタ１０にケーブルを介して接続される外部機器から入力される音声信号と前記内部音楽ソースから入力される音声信号とを切替える切替スイッチ１８と、前記内部音楽ソース４と前記外部機器３０との切替えを制御する制御手段６とを備えている。しかも、外部機器コネクタ３１が、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン１２を接続するバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する２つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する１本のケーブルを係合するコネクタ本体１１とを備えた。



【特許請求の範囲】

【請求項１】　内部音楽ソースからの音声信号を増幅するアンプと、外部機器を接続する外部機器コネクタと、この外部機器コネクタにケーブルを介して接続される外部機器から入力される音声信号と前記内部音楽ソースから入力される音声信号とを切替える切替スイッチと、前記内部音楽ソースと前記外部機器との切替えを制御する制御手段とを備えた車載用ヘッドユニットにおいて、

前記外部機器コネクタが、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する２つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する１本のケーブルを係合するコネクタ本体とを備えたことを特徴とする車載用ヘッドユニット。

【請求項２】　前記制御手段が、前記始動時に前記バス用ピンと前記コントロールピンとに接続チェック信号をそれぞれ送信すると共に当該接続チェック信号に応答があった側のピン接続端子を有効と設定する第１の接続開始制御部を備えたことを特徴とする請求項１記載の車載用ヘッドユニット。

【請求項３】　前記制御手段が、前記始動時に前記２つのコントロール用ピン接続端子のうち一方を予め定められた一定期間中ハイにすると共に当該一定期間経過後は当該２つのコントロール用ピン接続端子への出力を前記始動時前の状態に戻す第２の接続開始制御部を備えたことを特徴とする請求項１記載の車載用ヘッドユニット。

【請求項４】　ヘッドユニットに対して外部機器となるＴＶ，ＣＤ又はＭＤ等の外部音楽ソースを再生する再生手段と、この再生手段によって再生される音声信号を前記ヘッドユニットヘケーブルを介して伝達するためのヘッドユニット用コネクタと、このヘッドユニット用コネクタから入力される制御信号に応じて前記再生手段を制御する外部機器制御手段とを備えた車載用外部機器において、

前記ヘッドユニット用コネクタが、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する２つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する１本のケーブルを係合するコネクタ本体とを備えると共に、

前記再生手段に、前記ヘッドユニット用コネクタから入力される接続チェック信号に応じて前記コントロール用ピン接続端子又は前記バス用ピン接続端子の一方を選択する接続切替手段を備えたことを特徴とする車載用外部機器。

【請求項５】　ヘッドユニットに対して外部機器となるＴＶ，ＣＤ又はＭＤ等の外部音楽ソースを再生する再生手段と、前記ヘッドユニットから入力される制御信号に応じて前記再生手段を制御する外部機器制御手段とを備えた車載用外部機器において、

前記外部機器制御手段に、前記ヘッドユニット又は他の外部機器と接続する２以上の拡張コネクタを併設し、

前記拡張コネクタが、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する２つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する１本のケーブルを係合するコネクタ本体とを備え、

前記外部機器制御手段が、前記ヘッドユニットが接続されたコネクタに対して前記コントロール用ピン接続端子を有効と設定すると共に前記他の外部機器が接続されたコネクタに対して前記バス用ピン接続端子を有効に設定する複数接続制御部を備えたことを特徴とする車載用外部機器。

【発明の詳細な説明】

【０００１】

【発明の属する技術分野】本発明は、車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器に係り、特に、車載用ヘッドユニットに車載用外部機器を増設する際の接続方式に特徴のある車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器に関する。

【０００２】

【従来の技術】従来、車載用オーディオのヘッドユニットと外部機器の接続方式は、デッキ接続とバス接続の２通がある。一般的には、ヘッドユニットは例えばＦＭ／ＡＭラジオ付きカセットであり、一方、外部機器はＣＤプレーヤ、ＭＤプレーヤまたはＴＶ等である。

【０００３】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】しかしながら、上記従来例では、デッキ接続とバス接続の接続方式は互換性がないため、ＣＤプレーヤはデッキ接続用とバス接続用の二種類を用意しなければならない、という不都合があった。このため、ユーザは、外部機器を選定する時に、自分のヘッドユニットがデッキ接続用であるのか、それともバス接続用であるのかを確認しなければならなかった。

【０００４】

【発明の目的】本発明は、係る従来例の有する不都合を改善し、特に、車載用オーディオの外部機器を低コストでかつ利用しやすいものとすることのできる車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器を提供することを、その目的とする。

【０００５】

【課題を解決するための手段】そこで、本発明による車載用ヘッドユニットでは、内部音楽ソースからの音声信号を増幅するアンプと、外部機器を接続する外部機器コネクタと、この外部機器コネクタにケーブルを介して接続される外部機器から入力される音声信号と前記内部音楽ソースから入力される音声信号とを切替える切替スイ

ッチと、前記内部音楽ソースと前記外部機器との切替えを制御する制御手段とを備えている。そして、外部機器コネクタが、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン接続端子と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する1本のケーブルを係合するコネクタ本体とを備えた、という構成を採っている。これにより前述した目的を達成しようとするものである。

【0006】ここでは、外部機器コネクタが、バス接続用のバス用ピン接続端子と、デッキ接続用のコントロール用ピン接続端子とを備えたため、いずれの接続形式の外部機器であっても、同一のケーブルで接続される。このため、外部機器の購入に際して、ヘッドユニットのコネクタ形状に応じて外部機器を選択する必要がない。

【0007】

【発明の実施の形態】以下、本発明の実施の形態を図面を参照して説明する。図1は本発明による車載用ヘッドユニットと当該車載用ヘッドユニットに接続した車載用外部機器との構成を示すブロック図である。図1に示すように、車載用ヘッドユニット2は、内部音楽ソース4からの音声信号を増幅するアンプ8と、外部機器を接続する外部機器コネクタ10と、この外部機器コネクタ10にケーブルを介して接続される外部機器から入力される音声信号と前記内部音楽ソースから入力される音声信号とを切替える切替スイッチ18と、前記内部音楽ソース4と前記外部機器30との切替えを制御する制御手段6とを備えている。

【0008】しかも、図2に示すように、外部機器コネクタ31が、バス接続用の複数のバス用ピン12を接続するバス用ピン接続端子(図2のピン番号1，2のBUS+と-)と、このバス用ピンに併設されコントロール信号を送受する2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子(図2のピン番号5，13のCONT1及び2)と、前記外部機器と接続される前記バス用ピンおよび前記コントロールピンとを有する1本のケーブルを係合するコネクタ本体11とを備えている。

【0009】図2に示すように、本実施形態ではヘッドユニット2と外部機器30とを接続するコネクタ及び信号ラインをデッキ接続用とバス接続用の両方を含む形態としている。デッキ接続Dは、図3(A)に示すように、外部機器を1台のみ接続する方式である。その長所は低コストで製造できる点にあり、対処は、1台のみの接続であることと、CDチェンジャーなどをヘッドユニットの操作により制御することができない点にある。デッキ接続では、例えば、ヘッドユニットの内部音楽ソース(ラジオ、テープ)が動作中はCONT1を”Hi”とし、外部機器が動作中は、CONT2を”Hi”とする。外部機器が動作中にヘッドユニットが動作すると、CONT1を”Hi”とする。これに応じて外部機器は再生を停止し、CONT2を”Lo”とする。

【0010】一方、バス接続は複数台の外部機器の接続が可能であり、また、CDチェンジャッーなどの制御をヘッドユニットで行うことができる。バス接続では、各機器にアドレスを割り当ててバスにより接続し、動作、停止等の要求をやりとりすることで連携する。バス接続では、通信用ICが必要となり、マイコン処理が増えるため、コストが高くなってしまう。一般的に、デッキ接続は廉価品に、バス接続は高級品に使用されている。

【0011】本実施形態では、図1に示すように、図2に示した方式の13ピンを用いることで、ヘッドユニットがバス接続であるのかまたはデッキ接続であるのかに関わらず、同一の外部機器を接続することができる。図1に示す例では、外部機器は、ヘッドユニットに対して外部機器となるTV，CD又はMD等の外部音楽ソースを再生する再生手段34と、この再生手段34によって再生される音声信号を前記ヘッドユニットへケーブルを介して伝達するためのヘッドユニット用コネクタ31と、このヘッドユニット用コネクタ31から入力される制御信号に応じて前記再生手段34を制御する外部機器制御手段32とを備えている。そして、ヘッドユニット用コネクタ31は、上述した外部機器コネクタと同一の形状、構造を採っている。そして、ヘッドユニット用コネクタから入力される接続チェック信号に応じて再生手段を前記コントロール用ピン接続端子又は前記バス用ピン接続端子の一方を選択する接続方式切替手段を備えている。この接続方式切替手段が、ヘッドユニットの採用する接続方式に応じて、バス接続またはデッキ接続を選択するため、ユーザがヘッドユニットの接続方式を確認する必要がなくなる。これは、ヘッドユニット側がデッキ接続またはバス接続のみに対応している場合に好適である。

【0012】また、ヘッドユニット側が両方の接続方式に対応していて、外部機器が一方の接続方式にのみ対応している場合には、図1に示したヘッドユニット2の制御手段6が、始動時(ACC　ON時)にバス用ピンと前記コントロールピンとに接続チェック信号それぞれ送信すると共に当該接続チェック信号に応答があった側のピン接続端子を有効と設定する第1の接続開始制御部20を備えるとよい。

【0013】さらに、ヘッドユニットがデッキ接続のみに対応している場合には、第1の接続開始制御部20に代えて、始動時に前記2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子のうち一方を予め定められた一定期間中ハイにすると共に当該一定期間経過後は当該2つのコントロール用ピン接続端子への出力を前記始動時前の状態に戻す第2の接続開始制御部を備えるとよい。この場合、デッキ接続にのみ対応した外部機器や、または両方の接続方式に対応した外部機器との間でデッキ接続を確立する。

【0014】図4は本実施形態による13ピンの接続方

式を使用して複数台の外部機器を接続した例を示すブロック図である。図4に示す例では、ヘッドユニットを低コストとするためにデッキ接続専用としつつ、図2に示すコネクタを採用する。そして、外部機器として操作パネルを有するTVを設け、このTVから2台の他の外部機器をバス接続する。そして、TVの操作パネルを操作することで、デッキ接続を介してヘッドユニットに送信する音楽ソースを選択する。図4に示す他の外部機器30，38は、図2に示すコネクタを有しつつ、さらにデッキ接続とバス接続の両方に対応したものとすると、当該他の外部機器を直接ヘッドユニット2に接続することもでき、接続の形態に応じて外部機器の接続方式及びコネクタを選択する必要がなくなる。

【0015】図4に示す外部機器40は、ヘッドユニット又は他の外部機器と接続する2以上の拡張コネクタ41を備えている。そして、当該拡張コネクタは、図1に示す外部機器コネクタと同様の形式、構造を採っている。そして、この外部機器40のコントローラとなる外部機器制御手段は、ヘッドユニット2が接続されたコネクタ41に対して前記コントロール用ピン接続端子を有効と設定することでデッキ接続を行い、さらに、他の外部機器が接続されたコネクタ41に対して前記バス用ピン接続端子を有効に設定することでバス接続する複数接続制御部を備えている。これにより、ヘッドユニット2を低コストとしつつ、複数台の外部機器を接続でき、そして、すべて同一のケーブルを利用して接続できるため、接続及び機器の選定が容易となる。

【0016】図5は本発明による車載用ヘッドユニットの実施例の構成を示すブロック図である。図5に示す車載用ヘッドユニットは、FM／AMラジオ付カセットである。図5に示すように、FM／AMラジオ付カセット（ヘッドユニット）は、車両アンテナで受信する電波に同調するチューナー回路52と、カセットテープを再生するテープヘッド54からの再生信号を増幅するテープイコライザアンプ53と、外部機器30から入力される音声信号を増幅するグランドアイソレーションアンプ55と、これらの音楽ソースからの音声信号を切替信号に応じて切り替える音声信号切替スイッチ18とを備えている。

【0017】FM／AMラジオ付カセット2はさらに、切替スイッチから入力される音声信号の増幅を調整するボリウム回路7と、このボリウム回路の出力を増幅するパワーアンプ8とを備えている。また、このパワーアンプ8は、スピーカー16に接続されている。そして、外部機器30とデッキ接続される制御手段としての制御用マイコン6を備えている。

【0018】図6に示すように、FM／AMラジオ付カセット2と外部機器との接続の確立は、AccON時の接続チェック信号の送受信により行う。図6（A）はデッキ接続を確立するための接続チェック信号の一例を示す波形図であり、FM／AMラジオ付カセット2は、AccON時に500〔ms〕CONT1を”Hi”とする。これにより、FM／AMラジオ付カセット2がデッキ接続を要求していることを外部機器に伝達する。また、FM／AMラジオ付カセット2がバス接続を外部機器に要求するには、図6（B）に示すように、AccON時直後に接続チェック信号となるパルス信号を各機器に送信し、返事を待つ。外部機器から当該接続チェック信号に応じた信号が入力されると、当該外部機器とバス接続を確立する。

【0019】図7に示すように、外部機器30は、AccON時に、バス信号とCONT1信号とをチェックして現在接続されているヘッドユニットがどちらの方式かを判断する。すなわち、AccONとなると、バス接続用の接続チェック信号が入力されたか否かを確認し（ステップS1）、図6（B）に示す信号が入力された場合にはバス接続を確立する（ステップS2）。一方、バス接続用の接続チェック信号が入力されない場合には、図6（A）に示すCONT1が”Hi”であるか否かを判定する（ステップS3）。そして、CONT1が”Hi”であれば、デッキ接続を確立する（ステップS4）。

【0020】また、AccONから2秒間バス信号、CONT1も入力されないときには、外部機器はヘッドユニットに対して接続要求のバス信号を送信する。

【0021】上述したように本実施形態によると、1つの接続コネクタの中にデッキ接続とバス接続の2つの方式の配線を入れ、そして、外部機器は、接続されたヘッドユニットがどちらの方式のものであるかを識別するため、外部機器は1機種で対応できるため、品種を少なくすることができ、そして、ユーザが外部機器を選定するときに自分のヘッドユニットがどちらの接続方式であるかを考慮する必要がなくなる。

【0022】

【発明の効果】本発明は以上のように構成され機能するので、これによると、外部機器コネクタが、バス接続用のバス用ピン接続端子と、デッキ接続用のコントロール用ピン接続端子とを備えたため、いずれの接続形式の外部機器であっても、同一のケーブルで接続することができ、従って、同一の機能の外部機器についてコネクタ形状別に外部機器の製造を行う必要がなく、また、ユーザは、外部機器の購入に際して、ヘッドユニットのコネクタ形状に応じて外部機器を選択する必要がなく、このため、外部機器の増設作業を簡単に行うことができる、という従来にない優れた車載用ヘッドユニット及び車載用外部機器を提供することができる。

【図面の簡単な説明】

【図1】本発明の一実施形態の構成を示すブロック図である。

【図2】図1に示した外部機器コネクタ等の形式及び構

造の一例を示す説明図である。

【図3】ヘッドユニットと外部機器の接続の例を示すブロック図であり、図3（A）はデッキ接続の一例を示し、図3（B）はバス接続の一例を示す図である。

【図4】デッキ接続形式のヘッドユニットに複数の外部機器を接続する例を示すブロック図である。

【図5】本発明の一実施例の構成を示すブロック図である。

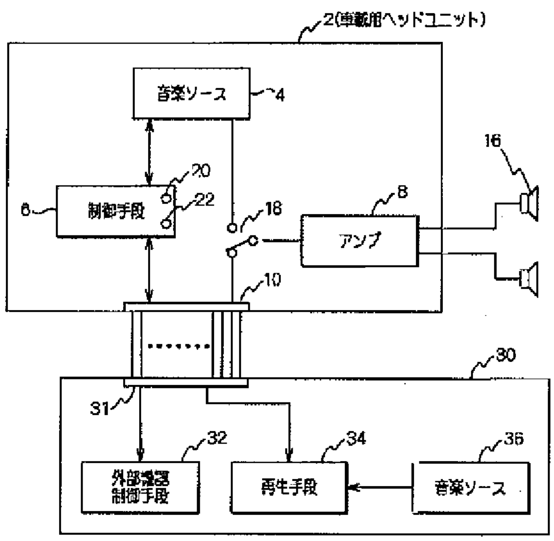
【図6】接続チェック信号の一例を示す波形図であり、図6（A）はデッキ接続での接続チェック信号の一例を示す図で、図6（B）はバス接続での接続チェック信号の一例を示す図である。

【図7】図6に示す接続チェック信号を用いた外部機器側の接続確立処理の一例を示すフローチャートである。

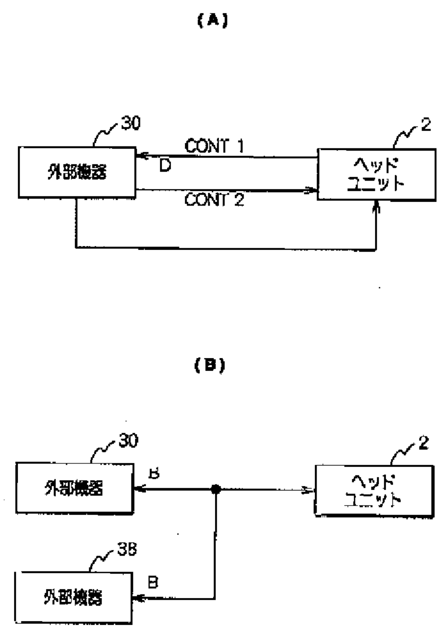
【符号の説明】

2　ヘッドユニット（例えば、FM／AMラジオ付カセット）
4　ヘッドユニットの音楽ソース（例えば、カセット）
6　制御手段（制御用マイコン）
8　アンプ
10　外部機器用コネクタ
16　スピーカ
30　外部機器（例えば、CDプレーヤ）
31　ヘッドユニット用コネクタ
32　外部機器接続制御手段（制御用マイコン及び通信用IC）

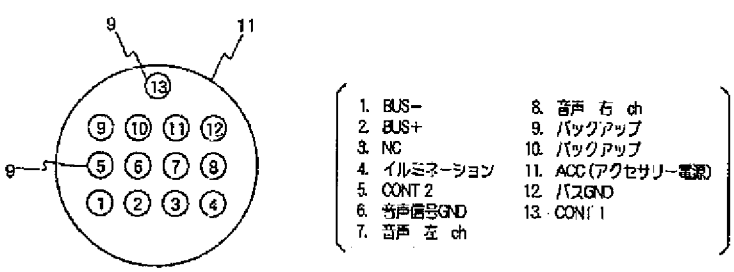
【図1】



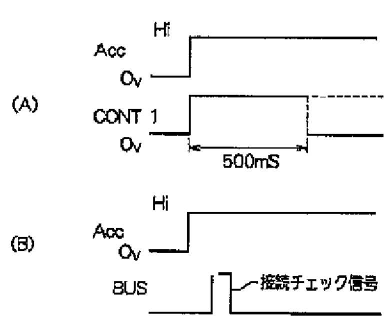
【図3】



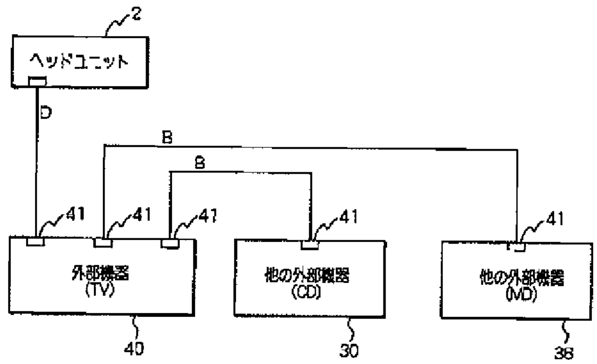
【図2】



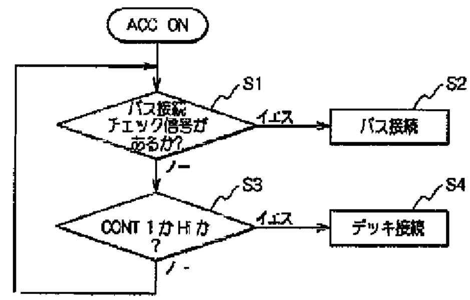
【図6】



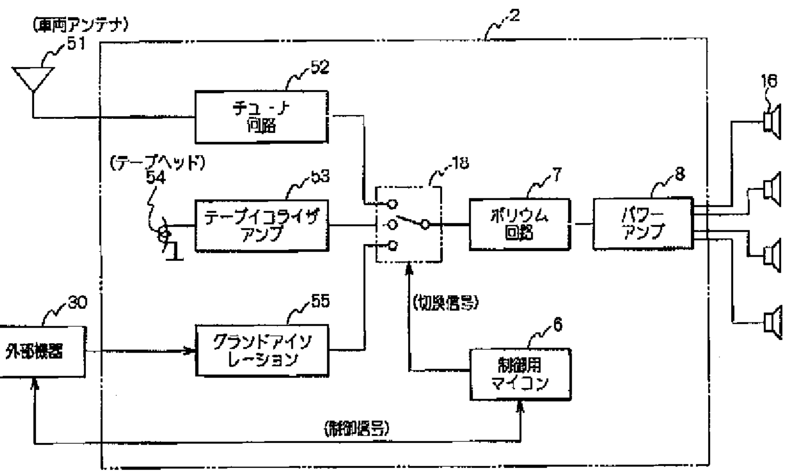
【図4】


2
ヘッドユニット
D
B
B
41
41
41
41
41
外部機器
(TV)
他の外部機器
(CD)
他の外部機器
(MD)
40
30
38

【図7】


ACC ON
S1
S2
パス接続
チェック信号が
あるか?
イエス
パス接続
ノー
S3
S4
CONT 1 が Hi か
?
イエス
デッキ接続
ノー

【図5】


(車両アンテナ)
51
2
52
チューナ
回路
16
(テープヘッド)
54
53
テープイコライザ
アンプ
18
7
ボリウム
回路
8
パワー
アンプ
30
外部機器
55
グランドアイソ
レーション
(切換信号)
6
制御用
マイコン
(制御信号)

PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN

(11)Publication number : 2000-286874

(43)Date of publication of application : 13.10.2000

(51)Int.Cl. H04L 12/40
B60R 11/02
H04L 12/28

(21)Application number : 11-090570

(22)Date of filing : 31.03.1999

(71)Applicant : SUZUKI MOTOR CORP

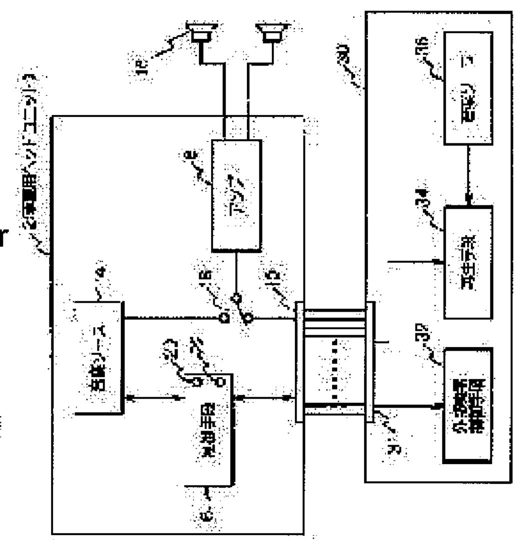
(72)Inventor : UEMURA HIROSHI

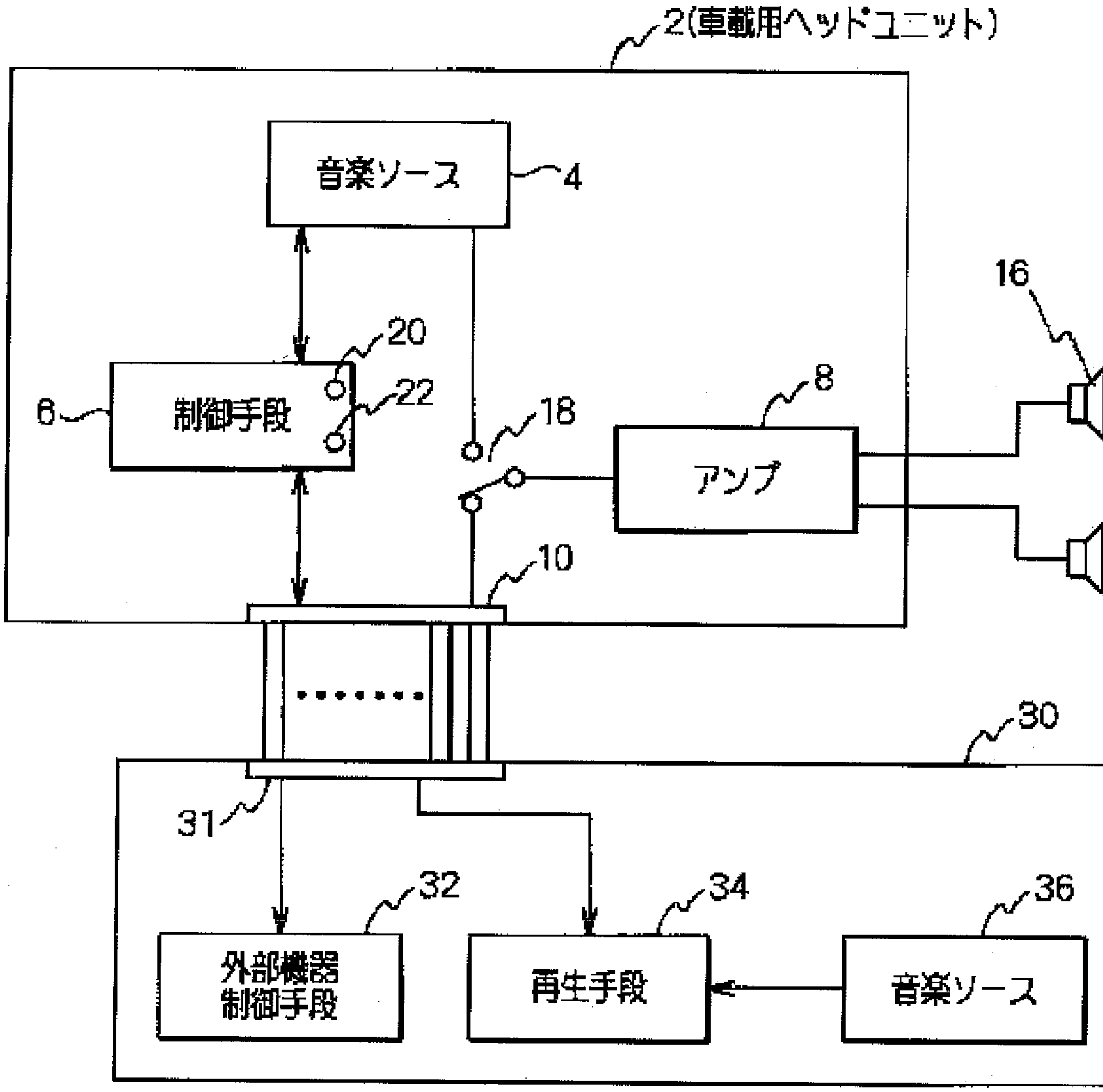
(54) ON-VEHICLE HEAD UNIT AND ON-VEHICLE EXTERNAL DEVICE

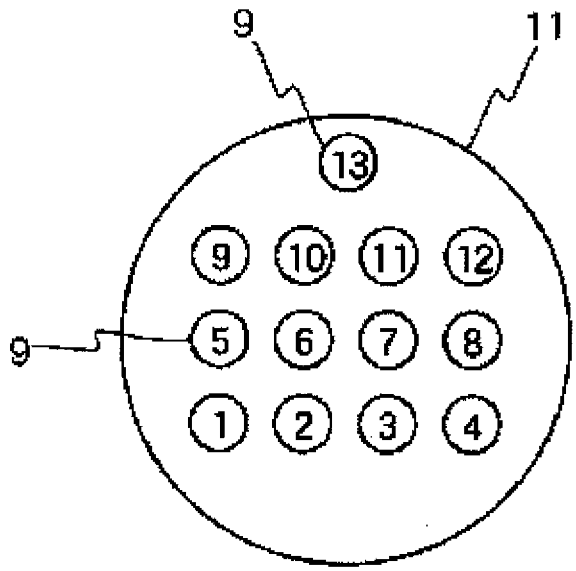
(57)Abstract:

PROBLEM TO BE SOLVED: To provide an external device for an on-vehicle audio unit which device is inexpensive and easily used.

SOLUTION: An on-vehicle head unit 2 is provided with an amplifier 8 that amplifies an audio signal from an internal music source 4, an external unit connector 10 for connecting the head unit 2 to an external device, a changeover switch 18 that selects an audio signal received from the external device connected to the external unit connector 10 via a cable or the audio signal received from the internal music source, and a control means 6 that controls switching between the internal music source 4 and the external device 30. Furthermore, an external device connector 31 is provided with bus use pin connection terminals connected to a plurality of bus pins for bus connection, two control pin connection terminals provided along the bus pins to send/receive a control signal, and a connector main body engaging one cable connected to the external device and having the bus pins and the control pins.

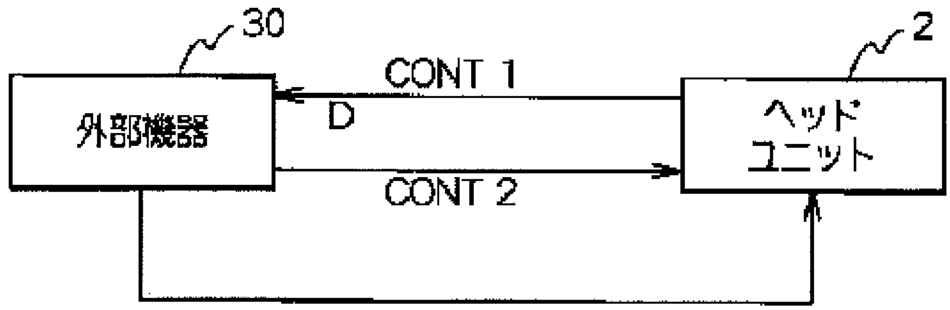



2(車載用ヘッドユニット)
音楽ソース
4
16
20
22
8
6
制御手段
18
アンプ
10
30
31
32
34
36
外部機器
制御手段
再生手段
音楽ソース

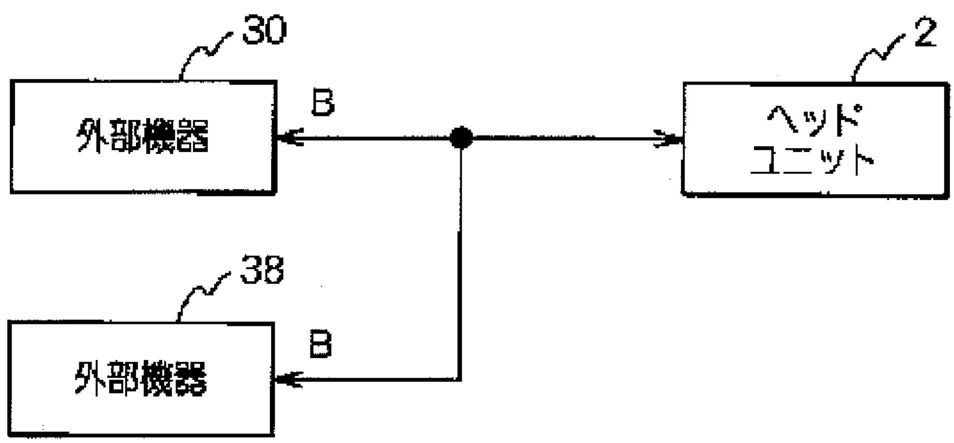


1. BUS−
2. BUS+
3. NC
4. イルミネーション
5. CONT 2
6. 音声信号GND
7. 音声 左 ch
8. 音声
9. バック
10. バック
11. ACC (
12. バスGN
13. CONT 1

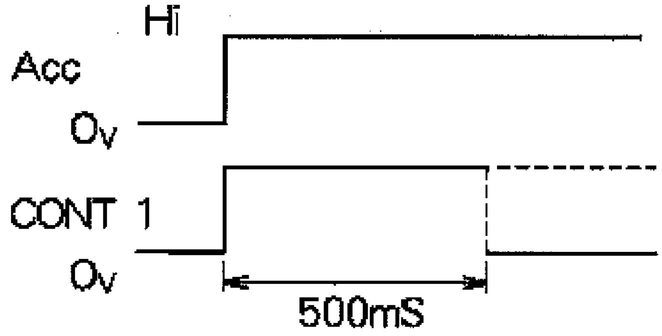
(A)



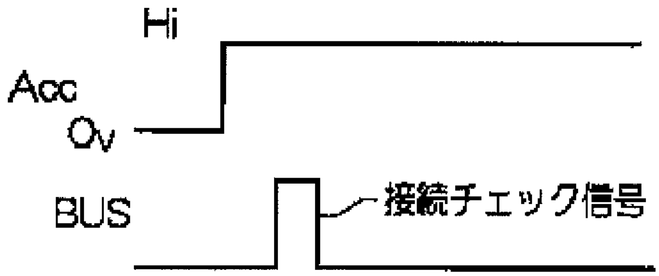
(B)

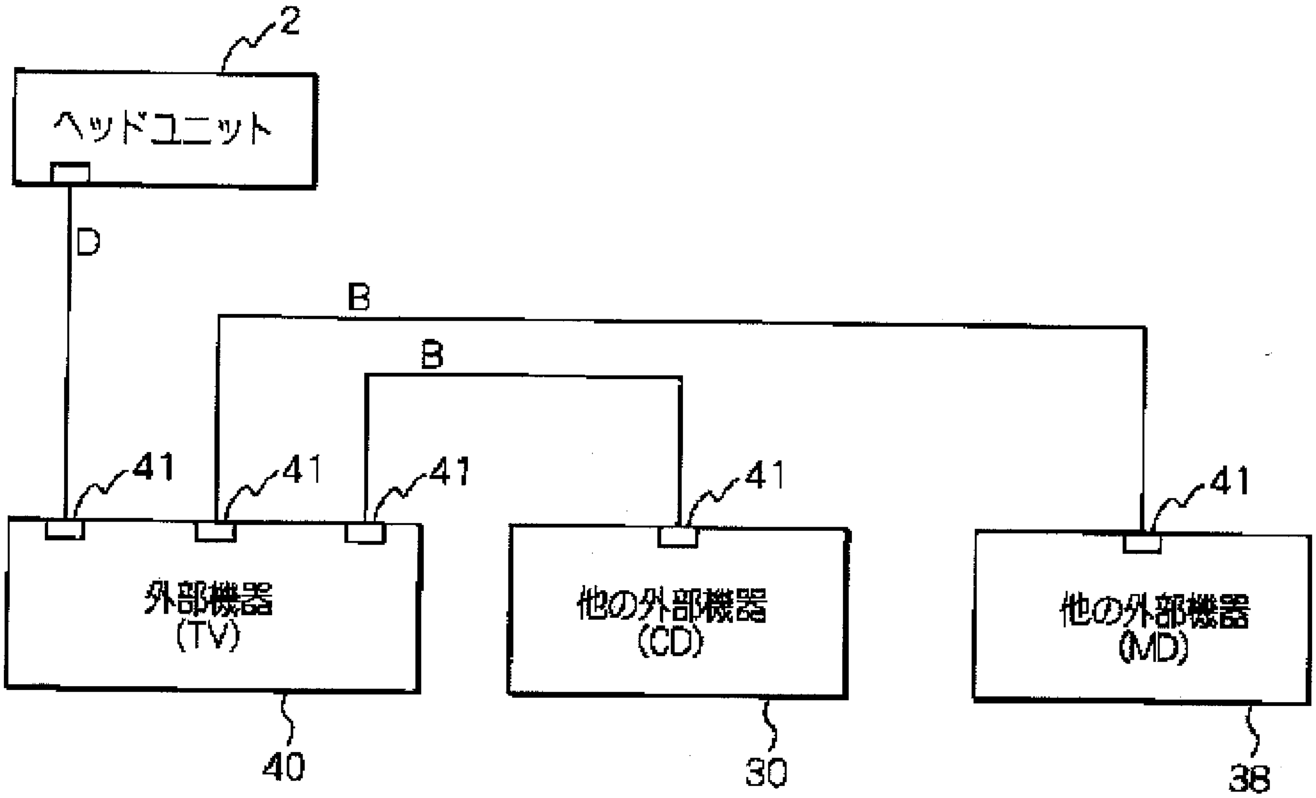


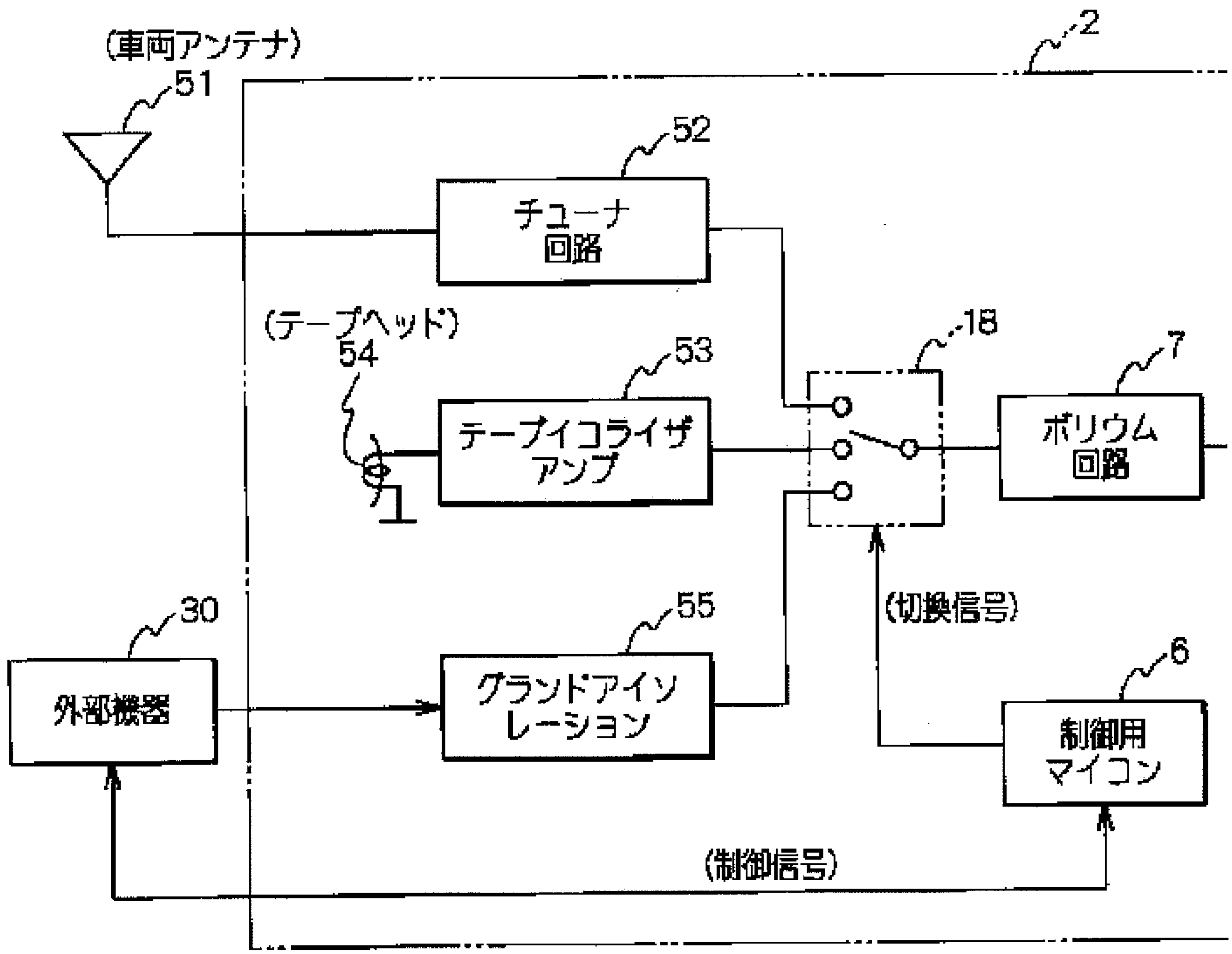
(A)



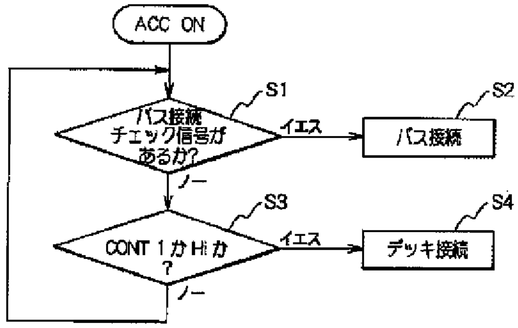
(B)




2
ヘッドユニット
D
B
B
41
41
41
41
41
外部機器
(TV)
他の外部機器
(CD)
他の外部機器
(MD)
40
30
38


2
(車両アンテナ)
51
52
チューナ
回路
(テープヘッド)
54
53
テープイコライザ
アンプ
18
7
ボリウム
回路
(切換信号)
30
外部機器
55
グランドアイソ
レーション
6
制御用
マイコン
(制御信号)

Drawing selection Drawing 7



[Translation done.]

CLAIMS

[Claim(s)]

[Claim 1]Amplifier which amplifies an audio signal characterized by comprising the following from an internal music source, A changeover switch which changes an external device connector which connects an external instrument, and an audio signal inputted from an external instrument connected to this external device connector via a cable and an audio signal inputted from said internal music source, A head unit for mount provided with a control means which controls a change to said internal music source and said external instrument.
A pin connection terminal for buses of plurality [external device connector / said] for bus connections.
Two pin connection terminals for control which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal.
Said pin for buses connected with said external instrument, and said control pin.

[Claim 2]Said control means, the time of said start up -- said pin for buses, and said control pin -- a connection check signal -- the head unit for mount according to claim 1 provided with the 1st starting connection control section that sets up a pin connection terminal of a side which it each transmitted and had a response in the connection check signal concerned as it is effective.

[Claim 3]Said control means, Make one side into a high in fixed time which was able to be defined beforehand between said two pin connection terminals for control at the time of said start up, and. The head unit for mount according to claim 1, wherein after the fixed time progress concerned is provided with the 2nd starting connection control section that returns an output to the two pin connection terminals for control concerned to a front state at the time of said start up.

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any
damages caused by the use of this translation.

1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

[Detailed Description of the Invention]
[0001]
[Field of the Invention]This invention relates to the head unit for mount, and the external instrument for mount, and relates to the head unit for mount and the external instrument for mount which have the feature in the connection type at the time of extending the external instrument for mount to the head unit for mount especially.
[0002]
[Description of the Prior Art]Conventionally, the head unit of the audio for mount and the connection type of an external instrument have two copies, deck connection and a bus connection. Generally, a head unit is for example, a cassette with FM/AM radio, and, on the other hand, an external instrument is a CD player, an MD player, or TV.
[0003]
[Problem(s) to be Solved by the Invention]However, in the above-mentioned conventional example, since the connection type of deck connection and a bus connection was incompatible, there was inconvenience that the CD player had to prepare two kinds, the object for deck connection and the object for bus connections. for this reason, when a user selects an external instrument, its head unit is an object for deck connection -- or it had to be checked whether it was an object for bus connections.
[0004]
[Objects of the Invention]This invention improves the inconvenience which the starting conventional example has, and sets it as the purpose to provide the head unit for mount which shall be low cost and shall be especially easy to use the external instrument of the audio for mount, and the external instrument for mount.
[0005]
[Means for Solving the Problem]So, in a head unit for mount by this invention. Amplifier which

amplifies an audio signal from an internal music source, and an external device connector which connects an external instrument, It has a changeover switch which changes an audio signal inputted from an external instrument connected to this external device connector via a cable, and an audio signal inputted from said internal music source, and a control means which controls a change to said internal music source and said external instrument. And a pin connection terminal for buses of plurality [external device connector] for bus connections, Composition of having had a connector body engaged in one cable which has two pin connection terminals for control which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal, and said pins for buses connected with said external instrument and said control pins is taken. It is going to attain the purpose which this mentioned above.

[0006]Here, since an external device connector was provided with a pin connection terminal for buses for bus connections, and a pin connection terminal for control for deck connection, even if it is an external instrument of which connection form, it is connected by the same cable. For this reason, it is not necessary when purchasing an external instrument to choose an external instrument according to connector shape of a head unit.

[0007]

[Embodiment of the Invention]Hereafter, an embodiment of the invention is described with reference to drawings. Drawing 1 is a block diagram showing composition with the external instrument for mount linked to the head unit for mount by this invention, and the head unit for mount concerned. As shown in drawing 1, the head unit 2 for mount is provided with the following.

Amplifier 8 which amplifies the audio signal from the internal music source 4.

The external device connector 10 which connects an external instrument.

The changeover switch 18 which changes the audio signal inputted from the external instrument connected to this external device connector 10 via a cable, and the audio signal inputted from said internal music source.

The control means 6 which controls the change to said internal music source 4 and said external instrument 30.

[0008]And the pin connection terminal for buses (BUS+ and - of the pin numbers 1 and 2 of drawing 2) to which the external device connector 31 connects two or more pins 12 for buses for bus connections as shown in drawing 2, Two pin connection terminals for control (CONT1 of the pin numbers 5 and 13 of drawing 2, and 2) which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal, It has the connector body 11 engaged in one cable which has said pin for buses connected with said external instrument, and said control pin.

[0009]As shown in drawing 2, in this embodiment, the connector and signal line which connect the head unit 2 and the external instrument 30 are made into the gestalt containing both the object for deck connection, and for bus connections. The deck connection D is a method which accepts one external instrument and connects, as shown in drawing 3 (A). The strong point is in the point which can be manufactured by low cost, and it being only one set of connection and the point which cannot control a CD changer etc. by operation of a head unit have management. In deck connection, while the internal music source (radio, tape) of a head unit operates, CONT1 is made into "Hi", and while the external instrument operates, CONT2 is made into "Hi", for example. An external instrument will make CONT1 "Hi", if the head unit operates working. According to this, an external instrument suspends reproduction and makes CONT2 "Lo".

[0010]On the other hand, connection of two or more sets of external instruments is possible for a bus connection, and it can control CD changer y- etc. by a head unit. At a bus connection, an address is assigned to each apparatus, and it connects by bus, and cooperates by exchanging the demand of operation, a stop, etc. In a bus connection, since IC for communication is needed and microcomputer processing increases, cost will become high. Generally, deck connection is used for low-priced goods, and the bus connection is used for quality articles.

[0011]a head unit is a bus connection in using 13 pins of the method shown in drawing 2 in this embodiment, as shown in drawing 1 -- or although it is deck connection, it cannot be concerned, but the same external instrument can be connected. The reproduction means 34 which plays the alien-frequencies easy sauce in which an external instrument turns into an external instrument to a head unit, such as TV, CD, or MD, in the example shown in drawing 1, The connector 31 for head units for transmitting the audio signal reproduced by this reproduction means 34 to said head unit via a cable, It has the external instrument control means 32 which controls said reproduction means 34 according to the control signal inputted from this connector 31 for head units. And the connector 31 for head units has taken the same shape as the external device connector mentioned above, and structure. And it has the connection type switching means which chooses either said pin connection terminal for control, or said pin connection terminal for buses for a reproduction means according to the connection check signal inputted from the connector for head units. In order that this connection type switching means may choose a bus connection or deck connection according to the connection type which a head unit adopts, it becomes unnecessary for a user to check the connection type of a head unit. This is preferred when the head unit side supports only deck connection or a bus connection.

[0012]When the head unit side supports both connection types and the external instrument supports only one connection type, The control means 6 of the head unit 2 shown in drawing 1, the time of start up (at the time of ACC ON) -- the pin for buses, and said control pin -- a connection check signal -- it each transmits and it is good to have the 1st starting connection control section 20 that sets up the pin connection terminal of the side which had a response in the connection check signal concerned as it is effective.

[0013]When the head unit supports only deck connection, It replaces with the 1st starting connection control section 20, One side is made into the high in fixed time which was able to be defined beforehand between said two pin connection terminals for control at the time of start up, and after the fixed time progress concerned is good to have the 2nd starting connection control section that returns the output to the two pin connection terminals for control concerned to a front state at the time of said start up. In this case, deck connection is established between the external instrument only corresponding to deck connection, or the external instrument corresponding to both connection types.

[0014]Drawing 4 is a block diagram showing the example which connected two or more sets of external instruments using the connection type of 13 pins by this embodiment. The connector shown in drawing 2 is adopted in the example shown in drawing 4, being only for deck connection, in order to make a head unit into low cost. And TV which has a navigational panel as an external instrument is formed, and the bus connection of two sets of other external instruments is carried out from this TV. And the music source which transmits to a head unit via deck connection by operating the navigational panel of TV is chosen. If other external instruments 30 and 38 shown in drawing 4 should correspond to both deck connection and a bus connection further, having a connector shown in drawing 2, being concerned -- others -- it becomes unnecessary to be also able to connect an external instrument to the head unit 2 directly, and to choose the connection type and connector of an external instrument according to the gestalt of connection

[0015]The external instrument 40 shown in drawing 4 is provided with the two or more expansion connectors 41 linked to a head unit or other external instruments. And the expansion connector concerned has taken the same form as the external device connector shown in drawing 1, and structure. And the external instrument control means used as the controller of this external instrument 40, Deck connection is made by setting up said pin connection terminal for control to the connector 41 to which the head unit 2 was connected, as it is effective, It has two or more connect control part which carries out a bus connection by setting up said pin connection terminal for buses effectively to the connector 41 to which other external instruments were connected. Thereby, making the head unit 2 into low cost, two or more sets of external instruments are connectable, and since it is altogether connectable using the same cable, connection and selection of apparatus become easy.

[0016]Drawing 5 is a block diagram showing the composition of the example of the head unit for mount by this invention. The head unit for mount shown in drawing 5 is a cassette with FM/AM radio. As shown in drawing 5, the cassette with FM/AM radio (head unit) is provided with the following.

The tuner circuit 52 which sides with the electric wave received with a vehicular antenna.
Tape equalizer amplifier 53 which amplifies the regenerative signal from the tape head 54 which plays a cassette tape.
Grand isolation amplifier 55 which amplifies the audio signal inputted from the external instrument 30.
The audio signal changeover switch 18 which changes the audio signal from these music sources according to a switching signal.

[0017]The cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is provided with the BORIUMU circuit 7 which adjusts further amplification of the audio signal inputted from a changeover switch, and the power amplification 8 which amplifies the output of this BORIUMU circuit. This power amplification 8 is connected to the speaker 16. And it has the control oriented microcomputer 6 as a control means by which deck connection is made with the external instrument 30.
[0018]As shown in drawing 6, transmission and reception of the connection check signal at the time of AccON perform establishment of connection between the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio, and an external instrument. Drawing 6 (A) is a wave form chart showing an example of the connection check signal for establishing deck connection, and the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is 500 at the time of AccON. [ms] CONT1 is made into "Hi". This transmits to an external instrument that the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is demanding deck connection. In order for the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio to require a bus connection of an external instrument, as shown in drawing 6 (B), he transmits the pulse signal which turns into a connection check signal immediately after at the time of AccON to each apparatus, and waits for the reply. If the signal according to the connection check signal concerned is inputted from an external instrument, the external instrument concerned and bus connection will be established.
[0019]As shown in drawing 7, the head unit which the external instrument 30 checks a bus signal and CONT1 signal at the time of AccON, and is connected now judges which method it is. That is, when it comes to AccON, it checks whether the connection check signal for bus connections has been inputted (Step S1), and a bus connection is established when the signal shown in drawing 6 (B) is inputted (Step S2). On the other hand, when the connection check signal for bus connections is not inputted, it is judged whether CONT1 shown in drawing 6 (A) is "Hi" (Step S3). And deck connection will be established if CONT1 is "Hi" (step S4).
[0020]When a bus signal and CONT1 are not inputted for 2 seconds from AccON, an external instrument transmits the bus signal of a connection request to a head unit.
[0021]According to this embodiment, as mentioned above, put wiring of two methods, deck connection and a bus connection, in one connection connector, and and an external instrument, Variety can be lessened, and when a user selects an external instrument, it becomes unnecessary for its head unit to take into consideration which connection type it is,

since the external instrument can respond by 1 model in order to identify of which method the connected head unit is a thing.

[0022]

[Effect of the Invention]Since this invention was constituted as mentioned above, and functioned and the external device connector was provided with the pin connection terminal for buses for bus connections, and the pin connection terminal for control for deck connection according to this, Even if it is an external instrument of which connection form, can connect by the same cable, therefore it is not necessary to manufacture an external instrument according to connector shape about the external instrument of the same function and, and a user faces the purchase of an external instrument, It is not necessary to choose an external instrument according to the connector shape of a head unit, and, for this reason, the outstanding head unit for mount and the external instrument for mount which are not in the former that the extension work of an external instrument can be done easily can be provided.

[Translation done.]

TECHNICAL FIELD

[Field of the Invention]This invention relates to the head unit for mount, and the external instrument for mount, and relates to the head unit for mount and the external instrument for mount which have the feature in the connection type at the time of extending the external instrument for mount to the head unit for mount especially.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any
damages caused by the use of this translation.

1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

PRIOR ART

[Description of the Prior Art]Conventionally, the head unit of the audio for mount and the connection type of an external instrument have two copies, deck connection and a bus connection. Generally, a head unit is for example, a cassette with FM/AM radio, and, on the other hand, an external instrument is a CD player, an MD player, or TV.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

JPO and INPIT are not responsible for any
damages caused by the use of this translation.

1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

EFFECT OF THE INVENTION

[Effect of the Invention]Since this invention was constituted as mentioned above, and functioned and the external device connector was provided with the pin connection terminal for buses for bus connections, and the pin connection terminal for control for deck connection according to this, Even if it is an external instrument of which connection form, can connect by the same cable, therefore it is not necessary to manufacture an external instrument according to connector shape about the external instrument of the same function and, and a user faces the purchase of an external instrument, It is not necessary to choose an external instrument according to the connector shape of a head unit, and, for this reason, the outstanding head unit for mount and the external instrument for mount which are not in the former that the extension work of an external instrument can be done easily can be provided.

[Translation done.]

TECHNICAL PROBLEM

[Problem(s) to be Solved by the Invention]However, in the above-mentioned conventional example, since the connection type of deck connection and a bus connection was incompatible, there was inconvenience that the CD player had to prepare two kinds, the object for deck connection and the object for bus connections. for this reason, when a user selects an external instrument, its head unit is an object for deck connection -- or it had to be checked whether it was an object for bus connections.

[0004]

[Objects of the Invention]This invention improves the inconvenience which the starting conventional example has, and sets it as the purpose to provide the head unit for mount which shall be low cost and shall be especially easy to use the external instrument of the audio for mount, and the external instrument for mount.

[Translation done.]

* NOTICES *

1.This document has been translated by computer. So the translation may not reflect the original precisely.
2.**** shows the word which can not be translated.
3.In the drawings, any words are not translated.

MEANS

[Means for Solving the Problem]So, in a head unit for mount by this invention. Amplifier which amplifies an audio signal from an internal music source, and an external device connector which connects an external instrument, It has a changeover switch which changes an audio signal inputted from an external instrument connected to this external device connector via a cable, and an audio signal inputted from said internal music source, and a control means which controls a change to said internal music source and said external instrument. And a pin connection terminal for buses of plurality [external device connector] for bus connections, Composition of having had a connector body engaged in one cable which has two pin connection terminals for control which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal, and said pins for buses connected with said external instrument and said control pins is taken. It is going to attain the purpose which this mentioned above.
[0006]Here, since an external device connector was provided with a pin connection terminal for buses for bus connections, and a pin connection terminal for control for deck connection, even if it is an external instrument of which connection form, it is connected by the same cable. For this reason, it is not necessary when purchasing an external instrument to choose an external instrument according to connector shape of a head unit.
[0007]
[Embodiment of the Invention]Hereafter, an embodiment of the invention is described with reference to drawings. Drawing 1 is a block diagram showing composition with the external instrument for mount linked to the head unit for mount by this invention, and the head unit for mount concerned. As shown in drawing 1, the head unit 2 for mount is provided with the following.
Amplifier 8 which amplifies the audio signal from the internal music source 4.
The external device connector 10 which connects an external instrument.
The changeover switch 18 which changes the audio signal inputted from the external

instrument connected to this external device connector 10 via a cable, and the audio signal inputted from said internal music source.
The control means 6 which controls the change to said internal music source 4 and said external instrument 30.

[0008]And the pin connection terminal for buses (BUS+ and - of the pin numbers 1 and 2 of drawing 2) to which the external device connector 31 connects two or more pins 12 for buses for bus connections as shown in drawing 2, Two pin connection terminals for control (CONT1 of the pin numbers 5 and 13 of drawing 2, and 2) which are put side by side at this pin for buses, and send and receive a control signal, It has the connector body 11 engaged in one cable which has said pin for buses connected with said external instrument, and said control pin.
[0009]As shown in drawing 2, in this embodiment, the connector and signal line which connect the head unit 2 and the external instrument 30 are made into the gestalt containing both the object for deck connection, and for bus connections. The deck connection D is a method which accepts one external instrument and connects, as shown in drawing 3 (A). The strong point is in the point which can be manufactured by low cost, and it being only one set of connection and the point which cannot control a CD changer etc. by operation of a head unit have management. In deck connection, while the internal music source (radio, tape) of a head unit operates, CONT1 is made into "Hi", and while the external instrument operates, CONT2 is made into "Hi", for example. An external instrument will make CONT1 "Hi", if the head unit operates working. According to this, an external instrument suspends reproduction and makes CONT2 "Lo".
[0010]On the other hand, connection of two or more sets of external instruments is possible for a bus connection, and it can control CD changer y- etc. by a head unit. At a bus connection, an address is assigned to each apparatus, and it connects by bus, and cooperates by exchanging the demand of operation, a stop, etc. In a bus connection, since IC for communication is needed and microcomputer processing increases, cost will become high. Generally, deck connection is used for low-priced goods, and the bus connection is used for quality articles.
[0011]a head unit is a bus connection in using 13 pins of the method shown in drawing 2 in this embodiment, as shown in drawing 1 -- or although it is deck connection, it cannot be concerned, but the same external instrument can be connected. The reproduction means 34 which plays the alien-frequencies easy sauce in which an external instrument turns into an external instrument to a head unit, such as TV, CD, or MD, in the example shown in drawing 1, The connector 31 for head units for transmitting the audio signal reproduced by this reproduction means 34 to said head unit via a cable, It has the external instrument control means 32 which controls said reproduction means 34 according to the control signal inputted

from this connector 31 for head units. And the connector 31 for head units has taken the same shape as the external device connector mentioned above, and structure. And it has the connection type switching means which chooses either said pin connection terminal for control, or said pin connection terminal for buses for a reproduction means according to the connection check signal inputted from the connector for head units. In order that this connection type switching means may choose a bus connection or deck connection according to the connection type which a head unit adopts, it becomes unnecessary for a user to check the connection type of a head unit. This is preferred when the head unit side supports only deck connection or a bus connection.

[0012]When the head unit side supports both connection types and the external instrument supports only one connection type, The control means 6 of the head unit 2 shown in drawing 1, the time of start up (at the time of ACC ON) -- the pin for buses, and said control pin -- a connection check signal -- it each transmits and it is good to have the 1st starting connection control section 20 that sets up the pin connection terminal of the side which had a response in the connection check signal concerned as it is effective.

[0013]When the head unit supports only deck connection, It replaces with the 1st starting connection control section 20, One side is made into the high in fixed time which was able to be defined beforehand between said two pin connection terminals for control at the time of start up, and after the fixed time progress concerned is good to have the 2nd starting connection control section that returns the output to the two pin connection terminals for control concerned to a front state at the time of said start up. In this case, deck connection is established between the external instrument only corresponding to deck connection, or the external instrument corresponding to both connection types.

[0014]Drawing 4 is a block diagram showing the example which connected two or more sets of external instruments using the connection type of 13 pins by this embodiment. The connector shown in drawing 2 is adopted in the example shown in drawing 4, being only for deck connection, in order to make a head unit into low cost. And TV which has a navigational panel as an external instrument is formed, and the bus connection of two sets of other external instruments is carried out from this TV. And the music source which transmits to a head unit via deck connection by operating the navigational panel of TV is chosen. If other external instruments 30 and 38 shown in drawing 4 should correspond to both deck connection and a bus connection further, having a connector shown in drawing 2, being concerned -- others -- it becomes unnecessary to be also able to connect an external instrument to the head unit 2 directly, and to choose the connection type and connector of an external instrument according to the gestalt of connection

[0015]The external instrument 40 shown in drawing 4 is provided with the two or more expansion connectors 41 linked to a head unit or other external instruments. And the expansion connector concerned has taken the same form as the external device connector shown in drawing 1, and structure. And the external instrument control means used as the controller of this external instrument 40, Deck connection is made by setting up said pin connection terminal for control to the connector 41 to which the head unit 2 was connected, as it is effective, It has two or more connect control part which carries out a bus connection by setting up said pin connection terminal for buses effectively to the connector 41 to which other external instruments were connected. Thereby, making the head unit 2 into low cost, two or more sets of external instruments are connectable, and since it is altogether connectable using the same cable, connection and selection of apparatus become easy.

[0016]Drawing 5 is a block diagram showing the composition of the example of the head unit for mount by this invention. The head unit for mount shown in drawing 5 is a cassette with FM/AM radio. As shown in drawing 5, the cassette with FM/AM radio (head unit) is provided with the following.

The tuner circuit 52 which sides with the electric wave received with a vehicular antenna.

Tape equalizer amplifier 53 which amplifies the regenerative signal from the tape head 54 which plays a cassette tape.

Grand isolation amplifier 55 which amplifies the audio signal inputted from the external instrument 30.

The audio signal changeover switch 18 which changes the audio signal from these music sources according to a switching signal.

[0017]The cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is provided with the BORIUMU circuit 7 which adjusts further amplification of the audio signal inputted from a changeover switch, and the power amplification 8 which amplifies the output of this BORIUMU circuit. This power amplification 8 is connected to the speaker 16. And it has the control oriented microcomputer 6 as a control means by which deck connection is made with the external instrument 30.

[0018]As shown in drawing 6, transmission and reception of the connection check signal at the time of AccON perform establishment of connection between the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio, and an external instrument. Drawing 6 (A) is a wave form chart showing an example of the connection check signal for establishing deck connection, and the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is 500 at the time of AccON. [ms] CONT1 is made into "Hi". This transmits to an external instrument that the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio is demanding deck connection. In order for the cassette 2 with FM/AM radio to require a bus connection of an external instrument, as shown in drawing 6 (B), he transmits the pulse signal which turns into a connection check signal immediately after at the time of AccON to each apparatus, and waits for the reply. If the signal according to the connection check signal concerned is inputted from an external instrument, the external instrument concerned and bus connection will be established.

[0019]As shown in drawing 7, the head unit which the external instrument 30 checks a bus signal and CONT1 signal at the time of AccON, and is connected now judges which method it is. That is, when it comes to AccON, it checks whether the connection check signal for bus connections has been inputted (Step S1), and a bus connection is established when the signal shown in drawing 6 (B) is inputted (Step S2). On the other hand, when the connection check signal for bus connections is not inputted, it is judged whether CONT1 shown in drawing 6 (A) is "Hi" (Step S3). And deck connection will be established if CONT1 is "Hi" (step S4).
[0020]When a bus signal and CONT1 are not inputted for 2 seconds from AccON, an external instrument transmits the bus signal of a connection request to a head unit.
[0021]According to this embodiment, as mentioned above, put wiring of two methods, deck connection and a bus connection, in one connection connector, and and an external instrument, Variety can be lessened, and when a user selects an external instrument, it becomes unnecessary for its head unit to take into consideration which connection type it is, since the external instrument can respond by 1 model in order to identify of which method the connected head unit is a thing.

[Translation done.]

(19)日本国特許庁（ＪＰ）　(12) 公開特許公報（Ａ）　(11)特許出願公開番号

特開平11－273321

(43)公開日　平成11年(1999)10月８日

(51)Int.Cl.^{6}	識別記号	ＦＩ	
Ｇ１１Ｂ　31/00		Ｇ１１Ｂ　31/00	Ｎ
Ｂ６０Ｒ　11/02		Ｂ６０Ｒ　11/02	Ｂ

審査請求　未請求　請求項の数12　ＯＬ　（全 14 頁）

(21)出願番号	特願平10－76115	(71)出願人	000001487 クラリオン株式会社 東京都文京区白山５丁目35番２号
(22)出願日	平成10年(1998)３月24日	(72)発明者	井戸　和弘 東京都文京区白山５丁目35番２号　クラリオン株式会社内
		(72)発明者	中鉢　善樹 東京都文京区白山５丁目35番２号　クラリオン株式会社内
		(72)発明者	上原　永敏 東京都文京区白山５丁目35番２号　クラリオン株式会社内
		(74)代理人	弁理士　木内　光春

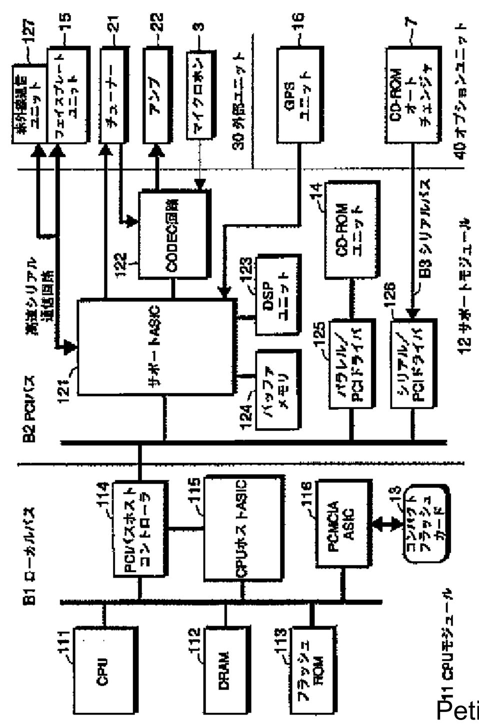
最終頁に続く

(54)【発明の名称】　カーオーディオシステム、車載用コンピュータ及びカーオーディオシステムの制御方法

(57)【要約】

【課題】　汎用的なＯＳを持つ小形コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムとを組み合わせることで、互いの利点を活かす。

【解決手段】　コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵ１１１の形式に対応したローカルバスＢ１と、カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器１５，２１，２２，３，１６，７を接続するためのＰＣＩバスＢ２と、それぞれのバスＢ１，Ｂ２の間でデータの形式を変換するＰＣＩバスホストコントローラ１１４と、を備える。フラッシュＲＯＭ１１３にはＣＰＵ１１１のためのＯＳを格納する。ＣＰＵはメモリ１１２などを効率よくアクセスすることで複雑な処理を高速に行う。コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムの両方の動作をスムースに行う。音の信号を再生しながら別のバスで別の処理を行うといったマルチタスクが容易になる。ＣＰＵの形式を変える場合もＣＰＵの形式に対応したバスだけを変えればよい。



【特許請求の範囲】
【請求項１】　制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、
前記コンピュータはオペレーティングシステムを備え、このオペレーティングシステムは、
コンピュータ上の資源を管理する手段と、
ユーザインタフェースを含む入出力を制御する手段と、
予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行する手段と、
を備えたことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステム。
【請求項２】　制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、
前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵの形式に対応した第１のバスと、
前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するための第２のバスと、
を備えたことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステム。
【請求項３】　制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、
前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵの形式に対応したローカルバスと、
前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するためのＰＣＩバスと、
を備えたことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステム。
【請求項４】　それぞれの前記バスの間でデータの形式を変換する手段を備えたことを特徴とする請求項２又は３記載のカーオーディオシステム。
【請求項５】　前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる複数の機器をデイジーチェイン形式で接続するための第３のバスを備えたことを特徴とする請求項１から４のいずれか１つに記載のカーオーディオシステム。
【請求項６】　予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行するために必要な環境を実現するオペレーティングシステムと、
カーオーディオシステムと、
前記カーオーディオシステムを制御する手段と、
を備えたことを特徴とする車載用コンピュータ。
【請求項７】　カーオーディオシステムを備えた車載用コンピュータにおいて、
前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵの形式に対応した第１のバスと、
前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するための第２のバスと、
を備えたことを特徴とする車載用コンピュータ。
【請求項８】　カーオーディオシステムを備えた車載用コンピュータにおいて、
前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵの形式に対応したローカルバスと、
前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するためのＰＣＩバスと、
を備えたことを特徴とする車載用コンピュータ。
【請求項９】　それぞれの前記バスの間でデータの形式を変換する手段を備えたことを特徴とする請求項７又は８記載の車載用コンピュータ。
【請求項１０】　前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる複数の機器をデイジーチェイン形式で接続するための第３のバスを備えたことを特徴とする請求項６から９のいずれか１つに記載の車載用コンピュータ。
【請求項１１】　オペレーティングシステムを備えたコンピュータを使ってカーオーディオシステムを制御するカーオーディオシステムの制御方法において、
前記オペレーティングシステムが、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行するために必要な環境を実現するステップと、
前記プログラムが前記カーオーディオシステムを制御するステップと、
を含むことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステムの制御方法。
【請求項１２】　コンピュータを使ってカーオーディオシステムを制御するカーオーディオシステムの制御方法において、
前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵが、このＣＰＵの形式に対応した第１のバスを通してデータをやり取りするステップと、
前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器が、機器を接続するための第２のバスを通してデータをやり取りするステップと、
を含むことを特徴とするカーオーディオシステムの制御方法。
【発明の詳細な説明】
【０００１】
【発明の属する技術分野】本発明は、汎用的なＯＳを持つ小形コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムとを組み合わせることで、互いの利点を活かす技術に関するものである。
【０００２】
【従来の技術】近年、半導体の技術がめざましい進歩をとげており、いろいろな分野の電子機器が、半導体を使うことによって小型化・高性能化している。このように半導体を使うことで小型化・高性能化している電子機器の１つに、パーソナルコンピュータ（以下「パソコン」という）がある。
【０００３】特に最近では、ハンドヘルド（持ち運び型）やパームトップなどと呼ばれる小型のパソコン（以下「ハンドヘルドパソコン」と総称する）も増えている。このようなハンドヘルドパソコンに適した基本ソフトウェア、すなわちオペレーティングシステム（Operating System：以下「ＯＳ」という）として、例えばＷｉｎｄｏｗｓ（マイクロソフト株式会社の登録商標）ＣＥなどが知られている。
【０００４】このような汎用的なＯＳは、コンピュータ

の持っているＣＰＵの処理能力やメモリなどをきめ細かく管理することで高度な処理能力を実現したり、プログラムに依存しない統一的で使いやすいユーザインタフェースを提供したり、予め決められた形式のプログラムであれば、自由に追加変更することでコンピュータの機能を追加変更できるといった利点を持っている。

【０００５】同じように、半導体を使うことで小型化・高性能化している別の電子機器としては、自動車に搭載するカーオーディオシステムやカーナビゲーションシステムが挙げられる。このうちカーオーディオシステムは、俗にカーステレオなどと呼ばれ、ＣＤプレーヤやＡＭやＦＭのチューナーなどを、アンプやスピーカなどと組み合わせたものである。また、カーナビゲーションシステムは、方位磁石、走行距離計、ＧＰＳなどを使って車の現在位置を特定しながら、指定された目的地まで、地図を画面表示したり道案内をするシステムである。

【０００６】なお、最近では、カーオーディオシステムに、カーナビゲーションシステム、ハンズフリーの携帯電話、盗難防止用の警報システムなどを組み合わせることも多いので、以下、これら車載用の電子機器を「カーオーディオシステム」と総称する。

【０００７】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】上に述べたような、ＯＳを備えたハンドヘルドパソコンと、カーオーディオシステムとは、従来では互いに全く別々のものであった。つまり、広い意味でのコンピュータを、制御用に備えたカーオーディオシステムは存在したが、この場合のコンピュータは特定の目的だけのために働く組み込みシステムと呼ばれるものである。

【０００８】この組み込みシステムは、必要最小限の能力を持ったＣＰＵを使い、スイッチ操作を受け付けたりディスク再生機構を作動させる、といったハードウェアに対する必要最小限の処理を、アセンブラなどを使った小さなプログラムで実現したものである。このため、パソコンのようにデータの加工や保存をしたり、プログラムを変更追加することで機能を変更追加するといった使い方はできない。

【０００９】一方、ハンドヘルドパソコンは、自ら音楽を鳴らしたり、カーオーディオシステムを制御する機能は持っていなかった。このため、ユーザは、ハンドヘルドパソコンを事実上車内に持ち込むことはあったが、カーオーディオシステムと関係付けて使うことはなかった。

【００１０】ところで、最近のカーオーディオシステムは、ラジオのチューナー、カセットテープデッキやＣＤプレーヤといった従来の機器だけでなく、ＭＤプレーヤ、ＣＤやＭＤのオートチェンジャ、カーナビゲーションシステム、ユーザの命令を認識する音声認識装置、ハンズフリーの携帯電話、盗難防止用の警報システムという具合に、ますます多くの機器が組み込まれるようになってきている。そして、このように複雑になってゆくカーオーディオシステムを、個々の装置に設けられたスイッチだけで使いこなすことは非常に難しい。

【００１１】つまり、このようにカーオーディオシステムが複雑になると、操作キーやダイヤルといった多くのスイッチが車内のいろいろな場所にあることになる。このため、どれが何の操作キーなのかを覚えるのが大変である。

【００１２】すなわち、複雑になってゆくカーオーディオシステムを使いこなすためには、複雑なシステムを制御する高度な処理能力、使いやすいユーザインタフェース、制御に関する機能を追加変更できるような柔軟性を持った小形コンピュータ、とりわけ汎用的なＯＳを備えたハンドヘルドパソコンと同等の情報処理装置を制御に使うことが望まれる。

【００１３】また、ハンドヘルドパソコンの側から考えても、現代のように自動車を使うことが多く、渋滞も多い社会では、車内でも活用の幅を広げることが望まれる。特に、カーオーディオシステムと組み合わせることで、操作キーやメモリを兼用したり、ユーザが車内で知りたい情報をコンピュータを使った合成音声で読み上げさせ、その声をカーオーディオシステムのスピーカから聞いたり、カーオーディオシステムに組み込まれた携帯電話の回線で外部のコンピュータネットワークにアクセスしたり、といった使い方ができれば、今までよりも活用の幅を広げることができる。

【００１４】なお、汎用的なＯＳを使うような高速なＣＰＵと、カーオーディオシステムに含まれるような機器を組み合わせるときは、両者の動作速度の違いなどから、それぞれに合った別々のバスを備えることが望まれる。さらに、いくつもの機器を組み合わせたカーオーディオシステムでは、複数の機器を、単純なすっきりした配線で容易に接続できることが望まれる。

【００１５】本発明は、上に述べたような従来技術の問題点を解決するために提案されたもので、その目的は、汎用的なＯＳを持つ小形コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムとを組み合わせることで、互いの利点を活かすことである。また、本発明の別の目的は、複数のバスを使うことで、高速なＣＰＵとその他の機器の両方を、無駄なくスムースに働かせることである。また、本発明の別の目的は、いろいろな機器をデイジーチェイン方式で芋づる式につなげるようにすることである。

【００１６】

【課題を解決するための手段】上に述べた目的を達成するため、請求項１の発明は、制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、前記コンピュータはオペレーティングシステムを備え、このオペレーティングシステムは、コンピュータ上の資源を管理する手段と、ユーザインタフェースを含む入出力を制御する手段と、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行する手段

と、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項6の車載用コンピュータは、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行するために必要な環境を実現するオペレーティングシステムと、カーオーディオシステムと、前記カーオーディオシステムを制御する手段と、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項11の発明は、請求項1の発明を方法という見方からとらえたもので、オペレーティングシステムを備えたコンピュータを使ってカーオーディオシステムを制御するカーオーディオシステムの制御方法において、前記オペレーティングシステムが、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行するために必要な環境を実現するステップと、前記プログラムが前記カーオーディオシステムを制御するステップと、を含むことを特徴とする。請求項1，6，11の発明では、カーオーディオシステムを制御するコンピュータが汎用的なＯＳを備えていて、この汎用的なＯＳは、ＣＰＵやメモリといった資源を管理することでコンピュータの能力を最大限発揮させ、また、プログラムに依存しない統一的で使いやすいユーザインタフェースを提供し、さらに、予め決められた形式のプログラムを追加したり変更することで機能の追加や変更を容易にする。このため、複雑なカーオーディオシステムの制御が容易になる。また、車内でもいろいろなプログラムを使ったり、カーオーディオシステムの機器を利用して情報処理をすることが可能になる。

【0017】請求項2の発明は、制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵの形式に対応した第1のバスと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するための第2のバスと、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項7の発明は、カーオーディオシステムを備えた車載用コンピュータにおいて、前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵの形式に対応した第1のバスと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するための第2のバスと、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項12の発明は、請求項2の発明を方法という見方からとらえたもので、コンピュータを使ってカーオーディオシステムを制御するカーオーディオシステムの制御方法において、前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵが、このＣＰＵの形式に対応した第1のバスを通してデータをやり取りするステップと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器が、機器を接続するための第2のバスを通してデータをやり取りするステップと、を含むことを特徴とする。請求項3の発明は、制御用のコンピュータを備えたカーオーディオシステムにおいて、前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵの形式に対応したローカルバスと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するためのＰＣＩバスと、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項8の発明は、カーオーディオシステムを備えた車載用コンピュータにおいて、前記コンピュータに含まれるＣＰＵの形式に対応したローカルバスと、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる機器を接続するためのＰＣＩバスと、を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項4の発明は、請求項2又は3記載のカーオーディオシステムにおいて、それぞれの前記バスの間でデータの形式を変換する手段を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項9の発明は、請求項7又は8記載の車載用コンピュータにおいて、それぞれの前記バスの間でデータの形式を変換する手段を備えたことを特徴とする。請求項2，3，7，8，12の発明では、コンピュータのＣＰＵと、カーオーディオシステムの機器とが、互いの形式に対応した違ったバスを使ってデータをやり取りし、データは、2つのバスの間では必要に応じて形式を変換して受け渡される（請求項4，9）。このため、各機器の動作よりＣＰＵの動作が速くても、ＣＰＵは各機器の動作サイクルに合わせる必要がなく、メモリなどを効率よくアクセスすることで複雑な処理を高速に行うことができる。また、ＣＰＵがやり取りするデータと、機器がやり取りするデータとが、同じバスの伝達能力を奪い合うことがないので、コンピュータとカーオーディオシステムの両方の動作をスムースに行うことができる。また、機器を接続するためのバスを使って音の信号を再生しながら、同時に、ＣＰＵの形式に対応したバスを使って別の処理を行うといったマルチタスクが容易になる。また、ＣＰＵを別の形式のものに変える場合も、各機器と、それら機器を接続するためのバスはそのままで、ＣＰＵの形式に対応したバスだけを新しいＣＰＵの形式に合わせて変えればよいので、ＣＰＵの変更にも容易に対応することができる。

【0018】請求項5の発明は、請求項1から4のいずれか1つに記載のカーオーディオシステムにおいて、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる複数の機器をデイジーチェイン形式で接続するための第3のバスを備えたことを特徴とする。請求項10の発明は、請求項6から9のいずれか1つに記載の車載用コンピュータにおいて、前記カーオーディオシステムに含まれる複数の機器をデイジーチェイン形式で接続するための第3のバスを備えたことを特徴とする。請求項5，10の発明では、複数の機器を芋づる式に次々と、デイジーチェイン形式でつないでゆくことができる。このため、機器の数が増えたり車内のあちこちに機器を分散設置するときも、スター方式のように長い配線が1箇所に集中することがなく、設置が容易になる。また、配線がすっきりわかりやすくなるので、構成を変えたり保守や修理をすることも容易になる。

【0019】

【発明の実施の形態】次に、本発明の実施の形態（以下「実施形態」という）について、図面を参照して具体的に説明する。この実施形態は、ＣＤプレーヤなどのいろいろな機器を備えたカーオーディオシステムであるが、ハンドヘルドパソコンで使うような汎用的なＯＳを備えたコンピュータを備えていて、カーオーディオシステム

の制御もこのコンピュータで行うものである。なお、以下の説明で使うそれぞれの図について、それより前で説明した図と同じ部材や同じ種類の部材については同じ符号をつけ、説明は省略する。

【0020】〔1．構成〕

〔1－1．全体の構成〕まず、図1は、この実施形態の全体構成を示すブロック図である。この実施形態は、この図に示すように、メインユニット1の他に、カーオーディオシステムを構成する各機器として、チューナーアンプユニット2と、マイクロホン3と、GPSアンテナ4と、セキュリティコントロールユニット5と、電話ユニット6と、CD－ROMオートチェンジャ7と、電源バックアップ用の補助バッテリ9と、を備えている。

【0021】このうちメインユニット1は、制御用のコンピュータを内蔵していて、このコンピュータによってシステム全体を制御する部分である。また、チューナーアンプユニット2は、AMとFMのアンテナ2aの他に、図示はしないが、ラジオチューナーと、スピーカを鳴らすためのアンプを備えた部分である。また、マイクロホン3は、音声認識による操作ができるように、ユーザの声を入力するためのものである。この音声認識の機能は、上に述べたコンピュータのプログラムによって実現される。

【0022】〔1－1－1．メインユニット〕また、メインユニット1は、コンパクトフラッシュカード13を差し込むためのソケット13Sと、付け外しできるフェイスプレートユニット15と、を備えている（図1）。コンパクトフラッシュカード13は、フラッシュメモリを使った記憶媒体で、メインユニット1に設けられたソケット13Sに差し込むことで、メインユニット1からデータを読み書きすることができる。このコンパクトフラッシュカード13は、データやプログラムなどを他のコンピュータとやり取りしたり、このカーオーディオシステムでのいろいろな設定データをバックアップしておくために使う。

【0023】また、付け外しできるフェイスプレートユニット15は、ユーザにいろいろな情報を表示する表示部と、ユーザがいろいろな操作をするための操作キーなどを設けた操作部と、を備えていて、DCP(Detachable Control Panel)とも呼ばれるものである。このフェイスプレートユニット15の表示部は、例えば横256ドット縦64ドットといった大型のカラーLCD（液晶表示装置）などである。

【0024】このフェイスプレートユニット15は、車を降りるときに取り外して持ち出せば、盗人がカーオーディオシステムを物色しても、肝心の表示部も操作部のないのを見て利用も転売もできないことをさとり、盗むことをあきらめるという盗難防止効果がある。取り外したフェイスプレートユニット15は、ケース15aに入れて持ち歩けば、それ自体や周りのものなどを傷つけることがない。

【0025】また、このフェイスプレートユニット15は、図1には示さないが、ハンドヘルドパソコン8とIrDAなどの形式でデータをやり取りするための赤外線通信ユニットを備えている。

【0026】〔1－1－2．他の機器〕また、GPSアンテナ4は、GPS衛星から電波を受け取るためのアンテナである。このGPSアンテナ4からの信号は、GPS受信機4aを経てメインユニット1内のGPSユニットに送られる。このGPSユニットは、図1には示さないが、受信機のある地球上の位置を電波から計算するものである。また、上に述べたコンピュータ上では、プログラムによってカーナビゲーションシステムの機能が実現され、計算結果はこのカーナビゲーションシステムの機能に渡される。

【0027】また、セキュリティコントロールユニット5は、振動や衝撃を検出するセンサ5aで、盗難やいたずらなどを検出すると、サイレン5bを鳴らすといった対応をする部分である。また、電話ユニット6は、自動車電話の機能を制御するユニットであり、電話アンテナ6aやハンドセット6bを使った通話を実現する部分である。また、CD－ROMオートチェンジャ7は、予めセットされた何枚かのCDを自動的に掛け替えることで、ユーザの選んだディスクや曲を再生するユニットである。

【0028】〔1－1－3．デイジーチェイン接続〕ここで、これらセキュリティコントロールユニット5、電話ユニット6及びCD－ROMオートチェンジャ7は、USB(Universal Serial Bus)によってメインユニット1に接続されている。このUSBは、複数の機器をデイジーチェイン形式で接続するためのシリアルバス（第3のバス）である。

【0029】この実施形態では、このようにUSBによって接続される機器は、外部とのデータのやり取りを、このUSBの形式で行うように構成されている。例えば、CD－ROMオートチェンジャ7は、アップストリーム用とダウンストリーム用のハブ（HUB）を備え、このCD－ROMオートチェンジャ7の内部では、音楽CDやCD－ROMからデジタルデータが一旦ATAPI形式（パラレル形式）で読み出されるが、読み出されたデータは、内蔵されているデータコンバータによって、シリアル形式であるUSB(Universal Serial Bus)形式に変換されたうえでUSBに送り出される。

【0030】この様な構成により、ユニット5，6、CD－ROMオートチェンジャ7の結線がシリアル結線となるので、それらユニット5，6，7をメインユニット1から離れた場所に設置する場合、その設置が容易となる。なお、図1ではユニット5、ユニット6、オートチェンジャ7の順で接続されているが、接続順は任意であり、また、必要なもののみの接続としても良い

【００３１】〔１－２．メインユニットの内部構成〕次に、図２は、上に述べた各部分のうち主なものを示したブロック図であり、特に、メインユニット１内部の具体的な構成を中心に説明するものである。この図の全体は、破線で４つに区切ってあり、左寄りがＣＰＵモジュール１１、中央がサポートモジュール１２、右上が外部ユニット３０、右下がオプションユニット４０になっている。このうち、ＣＰＵモジュール１１とサポートモジュール１２は、メインユニット１の内部に設けられている。

【００３２】また、外部ユニット３０とオプションユニット４０は、メインユニット１に接続されているいくつかずつの機器をまとめて指しているものである。なお、図２では、説明の都合で、コンパクトフラッシュカード１３はＣＰＵモジュール１１の下の方に、フェイスプレートユニット１５は、外部ユニット３０の上の方に示している。

【００３３】このうちＣＰＵモジュール１１とサポートモジュール１２は、カーオーディオシステム全体を制御する制御用コンピュータを構成している。このうちＣＰＵモジュール１１は、ＣＰＵ１１１を中心とした論理的な演算処理をする部分であり、サポートモジュール１２は、カーオーディオシステムに含まれる他の機器との入出力を行う部分である。

【００３４】ＣＰＵモジュール１１でデータの主な通り道になっているのは、ＣＰＵ１１１を中心として形成されたローカルバスＢ１（第１のバス）である。一方、サポートモジュール１２でデータの主な通り道になっているのは、各機器を接続するためのＰＣＩ(Peripheral Component Interconnect) バスＢ２（第２のバス）である。

【００３５】〔１－２－１．ＣＰＵモジュールの構成〕ＣＰＵモジュール１１のローカルバスＢ１は、ＣＰＵ１１１の形式に合わせたもので、このローカルバスＢ１には、ＤＲＡＭ１１２と、フラッシュＲＯＭ１１３と、ＰＣＩバスホストコントローラ１１４と、ＣＰＵホストＡＳＩＣ１１５と、ＰＣＭＣＩＡ・ＡＳＩＣ１１６が接続されている。このうちＤＲＡＭ１１２は、ＣＰＵ１１１がカーオーディオシステムの制御などの情報処理を行うときに、変数領域などのワークエリアを提供する部分である。

【００３６】また、フラッシュＲＯＭ１１３は、書き換え可能なＲＯＭで、ここでは、ＯＳ、ＢＩＯＳ、アプリケーションプログラムといった広い意味でのソフトウェアを格納している部分である。ここに格納されているＯＳの機能は、コンピュータ上の資源を管理すること、ユーザインタフェースを含む入出力を制御すること、予め決められた形式のプログラムを実行することなどであり、例えば、従来技術のところで述べたＷｉｎｄｏｗｓ　ＣＥをベースにしたものなどが考えられる。

【００３７】また、ＰＣＩバスホストコントローラ１１４は、ローカルバスＢ１とＰＣＩバスＢ２とを接続し、これら２つのバスの間でやり取りするデータの形式を変換する手段である。

【００３８】また、ＣＰＵホストＡＳＩＣ１１５などの「ＡＳＩＣ」は、Application Specific Integrated Circuit の略で、ＲＯＭやＲＡＭ、ＣＰＵといった汎用的な集積回路に対して、特定の用途向けに作られたＩＣやＬＳＩを指す。具体的には、このＣＰＵホストＡＳＩＣ１１５は、ローカルバスＢ１とＰＣＩバスホストコントローラ１１４とのインタフェース用のＡＳＩＣである。つまり、このＣＰＵホストＡＳＩＣ１１５は、ＰＣＩバスＢ２とＣＰＵモジュール１１との間でやり取りされるデータの窓口になる部分であり、具体的には、ＣＰＵモジュール１１と外部との入出力をＣＰＵ１１１に代わって行うほか、ＰＣＩバスＢ２から送られてきたデータについて、ＣＰＵ１１１に渡す種類のものかどうかを見分ける。

【００３９】そして、ＣＰＵホストＡＳＩＣ１１５は、ＣＰＵ１１１に渡すべきものはローカルバスＢ１を通じてＣＰＵ１１１に送るが、それ以外のもの、例えば送られてきたデータに対してＣＰＵ１１１が演算をするまでもなく、予め決められた反応を機械的に返せば足りるものについては、そのような反応を返す。

【００４０】また、ＰＣＭＣＩＡ・ＡＳＩＣ１１６は、コンパクトフラッシュカード１３が、いわゆるＰＣカードとしてＰＣＭＣＩＡ(Personal Computer Memory Card International Association) の規格に基づいているのに対応したインタフェース用の部分であり、コンパクトフラッシュカード１３に対するデータの読み書きを制御する部分である。

【００４１】〔１－２－２．サポートモジュールにかかわる構成〕次に、サポートモジュール１２のＰＣＩバスＢ２は、カーオーディオシステムを構成するいろいろな機器との間でデータをやり取りするためのバスである。ここで、このＰＣＩバスＢ２に接続される機器としては、外部ユニット３０とオプションユニット４０があり、これらはそれぞれ、いくつかの機器をまとめて指しているものである。

【００４２】つまり、外部ユニット３０は、図１に示したメインユニット１とは別のユニットになっているもので、この例では具体的には、メインユニット１から付け外しできるフェイスプレートユニット１５、チューナーアンプユニット２内に設けられたチューナー２１とアンプ２２、マイクロホン３である。このうちフェイスプレートユニット１５は、赤外線通信ユニット１２７を備えている。

【００４３】また、オプションユニット４０は、このカーオーディオシステムに組み込むかどうかをオプションとして選べるユニットであり、この例では具体的には

ＧＰＳユニット１６とＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７である。さらに、メインユニット１の内部にはＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４があり、このＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４もＰＣＩバスＢ２に接続されている。このＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４は、１枚のＣＤやＣＤ－ＲＯＭからデジタルデータを読み出すためのプレーヤである。これらＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７とＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４はどちらも、いわゆる音楽ＣＤからデータを読み出す事もできるし、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭからデータを読み出す事もできるという互換性のある（コンパチブルな）ものである。

【００４４】サポートモジュール１２において、ＰＣＩバスＢ２がこれらの機器との間でデータをやり取りするためには、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１、ＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２、ＤＳＰユニット１２３、バッファメモリ１２４、パラレル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２５、シリアル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２６が使われる。

【００４５】このうちサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１は、サポートモジュール１２と各機器との間で、どこから来たデータをどこへ送るかというデータの交通整理をする部分である。また、ＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２の「ＣＯＤＥＣ」とは"Coder/Decoder" つまりデータの符号化復号化技術の略語であり、このＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２は、例えば、与えられたデジタルデータをアナログ信号に変換するＤ／Ａ変換をしたり、逆に、アナログ信号をデジタルデータに変換するＡ／Ｄ変換などを行う部分である。

【００４６】また、ＤＳＰユニット１２３の「ＤＳＰ」はデジタルサウンドプロセッサ、つまりデジタル形式の音の信号を専門に処理する回路を意味する略語で、このＤＳＰユニット１２３は、音楽などを表わすデジタルデータを与えられると、システムに設定されている左右のバランス、ボリューム、フェイダー、サラウンド、イコライザといった項目が音の内容に反映されるように、デジタルデータを処理する部分である。

【００４７】また、バッファメモリ１２４は、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニットなどの音響機器とＰＣＩバスＢ２とではデータを読み書きするサイクルが違うことから、データを蓄えて少しずつ取り出すことでこの違いを埋めるためのバッファであり、ＳＲＡＭなどで構成されている。

【００４８】また、パラレル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２５は、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４から送られてくるパラレル形式のデジタルデータを、ＰＣＩバスＢ２のデータ形式に変換する部分である。また、シリアル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２６は、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７から送られてくるシリアル形式のデジタルデータを、ＰＣＩバスＢ２のデータ形式に変換する部分である。

【００４９】なお、赤外線通信ユニット１２７を含むフェイスプレートユニット１５は、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に高速シリアル通信回路で接続され、ＧＰＳユニット１６はサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に、ＵＡＲＴ(Universal Asynchronous Receiver-Transitter)などの調歩同期シリアル通信回路で接続されている。また、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４はパラレル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２５に、ＡＴＡＰＩ(AT Attachment Packet Interface)などのパラレル通信回路で接続されている。また、図示はしないが、赤外線通信ユニット１２７には、赤外線によるデータのやり取りを司るＡＳＩＣが設けられている。

【００５０】〔２．作用〕上に述べたように構成されたこの実施形態は次のように働く。

〔２－１．全体的な作用〕

〔２－１－１．データの入力〕この実施形態では、各機器から入力されてくるデータのうち、デジタルデータは、サポートモジュール１２のサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に直接入力される。例えば、フェイスプレートユニット１５からは、どのキーが押されたかというデータが送られてくる。また、ＧＰＳユニット１６からは、ＧＰＳ衛星からの電波を使って計算した緯度、経度といったデジタルデータが送られてくる。また、フェイスプレートユニット１５に設けられた赤外線通信ユニット１２７からは、ハンドヘルドパソコン８から赤外線で転送されたデジタルデータが送られてくる。

【００５１】また、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４及びＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７からは、音楽ＣＤから読み出した音のデータ、すなわちオーディオデータや、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭから読み出したデジタルデータ、すなわちＣＤ－ＲＯＭデータが、パラレル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２５やシリアル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２６によってＰＣＩバスＢ２のデータ形式に変換されたうえで、ＰＣＩバスＢ２経由でサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に送られてくる。

【００５２】さらに、図２には示さないが、図１に示したセキュリティコントロールユニット５からは異常の発生を知らせるデジタルデータが送られてくる。同様に、図１に示した電話ユニット６からは、通話の着信や発信元の電話番号などを知らせるデジタルデータ、すなわち文字データが送られてくるし、通話中には、相手の話し声を伝えるデジタルデータ、すなわち音声データがサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に送られてくる。

【００５３】なお、これらセキュリティコントロールユニット５や電話ユニット６は、シリアルバスＢ３にデイジーチェイン接続されているので、セキュリティコントロールユニット５や電話ユニット６から送られてくる情報は、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７からのデジタルデータと同じように、シリアル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２６によってＰＣＩバスＢ２のデータ形式に変換されたうえで、ＰＣＩバスＢ２経由で送られてくる。

【００５４】一方、各機器から入力されてくるデータのうち、アナログ信号は、一旦ＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２に入力され、このＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２によってデジタルデータに変換（Ａ／Ｄ変換）されたうえで、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に渡される。例えば、マイクロホン３からは

ユーザの声がアナログ信号で入力され、チューナー21からは、チューニングの結果受信されたラジオの放送内容がアナログ信号で入力されてくる。

【0055】〔2－1－2．入力されたデータの行き先〕このように集まってくる情報に対して、サポートASIC121はどの情報をどこに送るかという交通整理の役割を果たす。すなわち、サポートASIC121は、大まかには、音のデータはDSPユニット123で処理したうえCODEC回路122を通してアンプ22に送り、音以外のデータはCPUモジュール11に送る。但し、音のデータのなかでもマイクロホン3から入力されたデータは音声認識のためにCPUモジュール11に送る。

【0056】アンプ22に送られる音のデータとしては、例えば、チューナー21でチューニングされたラジオ放送の内容、CD－ROMユニット14やCD－ROMオートチェンジャ7で音楽CDから読み出された録音内容、電話ユニット6から送られてきた通話相手の話し声などが考えられる。

【0057】また、音以外のデータとしては、例えば、フェイスプレートユニット15でどの操作キーが押されたかのデータ、赤外線通信ユニット127から送られてきたファイルなどのデータ、GPSユニット16から送られてきた緯度、経度といったデジタルデータ、CD－ROMユニット14やCD－ROMオートチェンジャ7で、CD－ROMから読み出されたカーナビゲーションシステム用の地図の内容や地域ごとの情報の内容、セキュリティコントロールユニット5から送られてくる異常発生を知らせるデータ、電話ユニット6から送られてくる通話着信や発信元の電話番号などを知らせるデータなどが考えられる。

【0058】〔2－1－3．CPUモジュールでの情報処理〕CPUモジュール11では、サポートASIC121からデジタルデータが送られてくると、PCIバスホストコントローラ114が、送られてきたデータをローカルバスB1のデータ形式に変換したうえでCPUホストASIC115に渡す。このCPUホストASIC115は、CPU111に代わって入出力を司り、データを渡されると、そのデータがCPU111に渡すべきものかそうでないかを、データの形式などから判断する。

【0059】つまり、CPUホストASIC115は、機械的に一定の反応を返せば足りるデータに対しては、予め決められた反応を、PCIバスホストコントローラ114を通してサポートモジュール12に返すが、それ以外のデータはCPU111に渡す。

【0060】CPU111は、フラッシュROM113に記録されているOSやプログラムのコードにしたがって、渡されたデータを処理し、この処理の際に必要なワークエリアなどの記憶領域としてはDRAM112を利用する。例えば、マイクロホン3から入力されたユーザの声が送られてくると、CPU111は、予め用意している命令語の特徴を表わすパラメータや波形などと、受け取ったユーザの声とを比較し、一番似ている命令語をユーザが言ったものと推定し、その命令語にしたがって動作を行う。

【0061】また、コンパクトフラッシュカード13の読み書きは、CPUモジュール11において、CPU111からの依頼にしたがって、CPUホストASIC115がPCMCIA・ASIC116を制御することによって行われる。

【0062】そして、CPU111による情報処理の結果は、PCIバスホストコントローラ114によってPCIバスB2のデータ形式に変換されたうえで、サポートモジュール12に送られる。情報処理の結果としてサポートモジュール12に送られるデータとしては、サポートモジュール12の各部分や各機器に対する動作の指令などであり、サポートモジュール12では、このように送られてきたデータにしたがって入出力などの処理が行われる。

【0063】〔2－1－4．サポートモジュールでの入出力などの処理〕例えば、CDからのデータ読み出しやラジオのチューニングをさせる指令がCPUモジュール11から届くと、CD－ROMユニット14、CD－ROMオートチェンジャ7やチューナー21がそれにしたがった動作を行う。また、スピーカから出ている音の音源を現在とは別の機器に切り替える指令がCPUモジュール11から届くと、サポートASIC121はCODEC回路122に送り出すデジタルデータを、それまでの機器のものから、新しく指定された機器によるものに切り替える。

【0064】なお、デジタルデータをアンプ22に出力する場合、アンプ22はアナログ信号しか受け付けないので、CODEC回路122は、デジタルデータをアナログ信号に変換（D／A変換）したうえでアンプ22に出力する。

【0065】また、例えばユーザに対する表示データが、CPUモジュール11やその他の機器からサポートASIC121に送られてくると、サポートASIC121は、この表示データを高速シリアル通信回路を通してフェイスプレートユニット15に転送する。この場合、フェイスプレートユニット15では、転送されてきた表示データにしたがって、ユーザに対する情報が表示部に表示される。

【0066】続いて、上に述べたような各部分の働きによって、ユーザがこの実施形態のカーオーディオシステムをどのように使うことができるのかを具体的に説明する。

【0067】〔2－2．操作と情報の表示〕この実施形態のカーオーディオシステムを操作するときは、ユーザ

は、フェイスプレートユニット１５に設けられている操作キーを押してもよいし、操作の内用ごとに予め決められている語句を発話してもよい。例えば、ユーザがＣＤやＦＭチューナーを利用したいときは、ＣＤに切り替える操作キーを押してもよいし、予め決められた語句として例えば「しーでぃー」や「えふえむ」などとマイクロホン３に向かって発話すればよい。

【００６８】ユーザが操作キーを押したときは、そのデータがサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１からＣＰＵモジュール１１に転送され、ＣＰＵ１１１が新たな表示データをサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に送り、フェイスプレートユニット１５の表示部は、この表示データを使って、ラジオを操作するための画面表示やＣＤを操作するための画面表示などに切り替わる。

【００６９】また、例えば、ユーザが「しーでぃー」といった語句を発話すると、マイクロホン３からアナログ信号がＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２によってデジタルデータに変換され、このデジタルデータが、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１からＰＣＩバスホストコントローラとＣＰＵホストＡＳＩＣ１１５を経てＣＰＵ１１１に送られ、ＣＰＵ１１１は、このデジタルデータに基づいて、ユーザがどの言葉を言ったのかを認識し、認識結果に応じて、操作キーが押されたときと同じような対応をする。

【００７０】なお、例えば、フェイスプレートユニット１５の表示部をタッチパネルにしておき、コンピュータのグラフィカルユーザインタフェースとして、例えばその時点で使える機能をアイコンで表示部に表示し、ユーザが使いたい機能のアイコンを指で触るとその機能が働くようにすることもできる。さらに、例えば、そのようなアイコンによる表示と音声認識を合わせて使えば、一度にいくつかのアイコンが表示され、ユーザが「つぎ」と発話すれば画面が切り替わって次のいくつかのアイコンが表示され、ユーザが「もどる」と発話すれば画面が１つ前の状態に戻る、といった使い方も可能である。

【００７１】〔２－３．ラジオを聞く場合〕上に述べたような操作で、例えばユーザが「えふえむ」と発話してラジオのＦＭ放送を選び、ＣＰＵ１１１がそれを認識すると、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１はＣＰＵ１１１からの命令にしたがってチューナー２１をＦＭの受信状態に切り替え、また、アンプ２２に送り出すデータのソースをチューナー２１からの音声のデータに切り替える。この場合、チューナー２１は、前回選局した周波数を受信してもよいし、また、例えば、ユーザが「シークアップ」といった語句を発話することで、周波数を少しずつ変えながら受信状態のよい次の周波数を自動的に探す（自動掃引）ようにしてもよい。

【００７２】このようにラジオを聞く場合は、チューナー２１から送られてくる受信内容はアナログ信号なので、このアナログ信号はＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２に入力され、デジタルデータに変換されたうえでサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に送られる。サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１は、ＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２から受け取ったデジタルデータをＤＳＰユニット１２３に渡し、ＤＳＰユニット１２３は、予めシステムの上で設定されているバランスやボリュームといった設定項目にしたがってこのデジタルデータを処理し、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に送り返す。

【００７３】そして、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１は、このように返ってきたデジタルデータをＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２に再び送り返し、ＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２はこのデジタルデータを再びアナログ信号に変換して戻したうえで、今度はアンプ２２に送ってスピーカから流れるようにする。

【００７４】〔２－４．ＣＤの再生〕また、ユーザは、音楽ＣＤを聞きたいときは、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４やＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７に聞きたい音楽ＣＤをセットし、「すたーと」となどと音声などで再生を指示したり、次の曲へ飛ぶといった指示をすればよい。例えば、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４内の音楽ＣＤを再生するときは、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１からの指令によってＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４が作動し、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４からはデジタルデータであるオーディオデータが送られてくる。

【００７５】そして、パラレル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２５は、このオーディオデータをＰＣＩバスＢ２のデータ形式に変換してサポートＡＳＩＣ１２１に送り、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１は、ＰＣＩバスＢ２からオーディオデータを受け取ると、このオーディオデータを一旦ＤＳＰユニット１２３に渡して処理させ、処理されたオーディオデータを再びＤＳＰユニット１２３から受け取ると、処理されたオーディオデータをデジタル入出力ポートからＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２に渡し、アナログ信号の形でアンプ２２に出力させる。

【００７６】音楽ＣＤを再生するのがＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７のときは、シリアルバスＢ３から送られてくるシリアル形式のオーディオデータを、シリアル／ＰＣＩドライバ１２６がＰＣＩバスＢ２のデータ形式に変換するが、それ以降の処理はＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４の場合と同じように行われる。

【００７７】なお、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４やＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７と、ＣＯＤＥＣ回路１２２やＤＳＰユニット１２３とを相対的に比べると、前者は長い時間のサイクルでまとまった量のデータを送ってくるのに対して、後者は短い時間のサイクルでデータを少しずつ処理するため、両者の間にサイクルにずれがある。このため、サポートＡＳＩＣ１２１は、ＣＤ－ＲＯＭユニット１４又はＣＤ－ＲＯＭオートチェンジャ７がまとめて送ってきたデジタルデータをバッファメモリ１２４に格納し、一番古い部分から次々と取り出してはＤＳＰユニット１２３に渡して処理させることで、上に述べたようなずれを埋めて再生が滑らかに行われるようにす

る。

【0078】〔2－5．CD－ROMとカーナビゲーションの利用〕また、ユーザが例えばカーナビゲーションシステムの機能を使いたいときは、例えばCD－ROMユニット14に、カーナビゲーションシステム用のデータ（アプリケーションソフト、地図等）が記録されたCD－ROMをセットしたうえで、カーナビゲーションシステムの機能を起動する。このようなカーナビゲーションシステムの機能は、例えばコンピュータのプログラムとしてCPUモジュール11のフラッシュROM113に記録しておき、CPU111にこのようなプログラムを実行させることによって実現することができる。

【0079】このようなカーナビゲーションシステムが、CD－ROMに記録された地図のデータや地域ごとのいろいろな情報などを読み出そうとするときは、例えばCD－ROMユニット14から読み出されたデジタルデータがパラレル／PCIドライバ125、PCIバスホストコントローラ114、CPUホストASIC115を経てCPU111に渡される。CPU111は、このように受け取った地図などのデータに基づいてフェイスプレートユニット15の表示部に表示するためのビットマップイメージをDRAM112上に作成したうえ、サポートモジュール12に送り出す。

【0080】また、このようにカーナビゲーションシステムを使うときは、図1に示したGPSアンテナ4でGPS衛星からの電波を受信し、図2のGPSユニット16がこの電波から緯度や経度などを計算し、このデータがCPU111に送られてくる。すると、CPU111は、これらの緯度や経度などのデータから、このカーオーディオシステムを積んだ車が現在どこを走っているのかを地図上で特定する事ができる。この結果、ユーザが入力しなくても出発地点として現在地を設定したり、現在の地点が中心となるような大まかな地図を表示したり、次の右折や左折を指示する図形を表示したりすることができる。

【0081】なお、ナビゲーション用のデータは、コンパクトフラッシュカード13（又はDRAM112）、又はフラッシュROM113に記憶しておいても良い。

【0082】また、すでに説明したような音声認識による操作の仕方は、このようにカーナビゲーションシステムの機能を使うときにも利用することができ、例えば、曲がり角ごとに右折や左折といった指示を出すカーナビゲーションシステムを使う場合、1つ前の指示や1つ先の指示をユーザが見たいときは、「つぎ」とか「もどる」といった語句を発話することで次々と表示を切り替えることもできる。

【0083】さらに、このような道案内はアンプ22を通して合成音声を出力することでユーザに知らせることもでき、このようにすれば、次にどこを曲がるか知るために表示部に視線を移す必要がなくなる。

【0084】〔2－6．電話の利用〕また、ユーザは、電話ユニット6を使って通話するとき、次のようにコンピュータの利点とカーオーディオシステムの利点を活かすことができる。例えば、ユーザは、コンピュータのプログラムを使って、自分の知っている人の電話番号と名前をシステムの、例えばDRAM112、コンパクトフラッシュカード13に予め登録しておく。

【0085】電話が着信すると、図2には図示しないが、電話ユニット6からシリアルバスB3とシリアル／PCIドライバ126を通じて、電話が着信したことを知らせるデジタルデータと、発信元の電話番号を表わすデジタルデータがサポートASIC121に送られる。これらのデータはさらに、CPUモジュール11のCPU111に送られ、CPU111は、予め登録された電話番号の中に、今かかってきている発信元の電話番号が登録されているかどうか検索する。

【0086】予め登録された電話番号の中に、今かかってきている発信元の電話番号があったときは、CPU111はその電話番号に対応する名前をサポートモジュール12に送り返すことで、フェイスプレートユニット15に電話をかけてきている人の名前を表示させたり、合成音声による「○○さんからです」といった案内を車載スピーカから流すことで、誰が電話をかけてきているのかをユーザに知らせることができる。

【0087】このような表示や案内、また呼び出し音などで電話がかかってきていることを知ったユーザが、予め決められた語句を発話して電話をつなぐように指示すると、相手の声がスピーカから流れると同時に、マイクロホン3から入力されるユーザの声がCODEC回路122によってデジタルデータに変換され、サポートASIC121、シリアル／PCIドライバ126、シリアルバスB3を経て電話ユニット6に送られ、ユーザは手を使わずにいわゆるハンズフリーの状態で通話を行うことができる。

【0088】なお、呼び出し音が一定の回数だけ鳴ったところで、例えば電話ユニット6やCPUモジュール11に用意された留守番電話機能などが電話に応答する。

【0089】また、ユーザの側から発信しようとするときも、例えば、予め登録してある電話番号と名前を表示画面の上でつぎつぎに表示させ、電話を掛けたい相手が表示されたところで発信のアイコンなどを指でタッチすると、その電話番号がCPUモジュール11からデジタルデータとして電話ユニット6に転送されて自動的に電話がかかり、相手が出ればそのまま話すことができる。

【0090】また、ユーザが登録した名前を発話し、CPUモジュール11がこれを認識することでその名前に対応する電話番号に自動的に発信したり、掛けたい電話番号を1桁ずつ発話して認識させたり、ユーザが「りだいやる」と発話したことを認識して電話を掛ける先を決めるようにすることもできる。

【0091】〔2－7．セキュリティコントロールユニットの利用〕また、セキュリティコントロールユニット5は、単独で使うこともできるし、上に述べた電話ユニット6と連動させて使うこともできる。例えば（図1）、ユーザは車を離れるときに、セキュリティコントロールユニット5を作動させ、送信機5ｃを持って降りる。車両のユーザと何ら関係のない第三者がドアノブに触れたり、鍵穴をいじったり、ドアやトランクをこじ開けようとしたり、車を無断で移動させようとすると、それによる衝撃や振動をセンサ5ａが感じ取り、センサ5ａからの信号を受けたセキュリティコントロールユニット5は、例えばサイレン5ｂを大音量で鳴らす。これにより車外の環境に対し警報の効果がもたらされる。

【0092】ユーザ自身は、車に戻ってきたとき、持っている送信機5ｃを操作すれば、予め決められた暗号がセキュリティコントロールユニット5に送られ、セキュリティコントロールユニット5の機能は解除されるので、鍵を使ったり車を動かしてもサイレンが鳴ったりすることはない。

【0093】このようなセキュリティコントロールユニット5は、電話ユニット6と連動させて使えばさらに効果がある。つまり、センサ5ａが異常を感知したとき、セキュリティコントロールユニット5は、サイレンを鳴らすだけでなく、割り込み信号を送ってＣＰＵモジュール11及びサポートモジュール12を含むカーオーディオシステムを起動させる。このような起動を可能にするためには、カーオーディオシステムの電源と起動スイッチに接続した電子回路を用意し、割り込み信号が来ていないかをこの電子回路に常に監視させておき、割り込み信号が来るとただちに電源と起動スイッチをオンにしてカーオーディオシステムを起動させればよい。

【0094】このように起動されたＣＰＵ111は、セキュリティコントロールユニット5から異常発生を知らせるデータを受け取ると、電話ユニット6に指令を送ることで電話を掛けさせる。このときに電話を掛ける先は、異常時の通報先として予め設定しておけばよく、例えば、警察、ユーザの持っている携帯電話、警備会社などとすればよい。そして、掛けた先に電話がつながると、合成音声や予め録音したアナウンスを相手に聞かせることで異常を知らせる。このようにすれば、知らせを受けた者が現場に急行できる。

【0095】〔2－8．ユーティリティプログラムの利用〕また、通常のハンドヘルドパソコンと同じように、ＯＳやアプリケーションプログラムの機能として、アドレス帳、カレンダー、スケジュール管理、音声録音、時計、電卓、ゲームといった機能を利用すれば、車の中でもいろいろな情報処理を行うことが可能となる。さらに、これらの機能を実現するアプリケーションプログラムを削除したり、新しいものに入れ替えたり、追加することで、個々のユーザが自分にあった情報処理の環境を整えることができる。

【0096】〔2－9．コンパクトフラッシュカードの利用〕また、この実施形態のカーオーディオシステムでは、コンパクトフラッシュカード13を使うことで、他のハンドヘルドパソコンや他のカーオーディオシステムなどとの間で情報をやり取りすることができる。

【0097】例えば、コンパクトフラッシュカード13から新しいアプリケーションプログラムやＯＳをフラッシュＲＯＭ113に読み込ませることで、新しい機能を追加するしたりＯＳを更新することが容易になる。特に、汎用のＯＳを使うことによって、一般のソフトウェアメーカーがアプリケーションプログラムやＯＳの機能モジュールなどを作りやすくなるので、それを記録したコンパクトフラッシュカード13も出回って手に入れやすくなり、ユーザはこのカーオーディオシステムを、コンピュータとしても、より便利に使えるようになる。

【0098】また、他のパソコンやハンドヘルドパソコンで作ったアドレス帳のような個人的なデータを、コンパクトフラッシュカード13でこのカーオーディオシステムに持ち込めば、それまでの作業をこのカーオーディオシステム上で続けることができる。さらに、これとは逆に、このカーオーディオシステムで作ったデータをコンパクトフラッシュカード13で他のパソコンやハンドヘルドパソコンに移して作業を続けることもできる。

【0099】また、上に述べたようなユーティリティプログラムを使って自分が作ったデータを、コンパクトフラッシュカード13にバックアップコピーしておけば、カーオーディオシステムの不調や他人が使ったためにデータが消えたような場合でも、コンパクトフラッシュカード13からデータを再びメインユニット1に読み込ませて情報処理を続けることができる。

【0100】また、自分に合ったカーオーディオシステムのいろいろな設定をコンパクトフラッシュカード13にバックアップコピーしておけば、たとえ家族の他の誰かが設定を変えても、自分が車を使うときは自分の持っていたコンパクトフラッシュカード13をメインユニット1に差し込んで内容を読み込ませることで、自分にとって使い勝手のよい元通りの設定でカーオーディオシステムを使うことができる。

【0101】〔2－10．ハンドヘルドパソコンとの通信〕さらに、この実施形態では、赤外線通信ユニット127を使うことで、ハンドヘルドパソコン8との間で、コンパクトフラッシュカード13を抜き差ししたりケーブルなどで接続するといった手間をかけずに、容易にデータをやり取りすることができる。このため、ハンドヘルドパソコン8内に記録しておいたファイルなどを使ってＯＳやアプリケーションプログラムを更新したり、カーオーディオシステム上で作った個人的なデータをハンドヘルドパソコン8に直接移し替えたり、そのような個人的なデータのバックアップを、ハンドヘルドパソコン